



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

PI630.
S63
1895

43
287

T. T. Waterman.



UTHER & REICHARD, PUBLISHERS, BERLIN.

**CHRESTOMATHY
OF
ARABIC PROSE-PIECES**

BY

DR. R. BRÜNNOW.

Crown 8°. Cloth pp. 334, price 8 s. 6 d.

**DELECTUS VETERUM
ARMINUM ARABICORUM**

Carmina selegit et edidit

THEOD. NOELDEKE.

Glossarium confecit

AUG. MUELLER.

Crown 8°. Cloth pp. 256, price 7 s. 6 d.

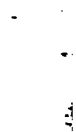
**AN
ARABIC BIBLE-CHRESTOMATHY
WITH A GLOSSARY**

Edited by

DR. GEORGE JACOB.

Crown 8°. Cloth pp. 64, price 2 s. 6 d.

**LONDON: WILLIAMS & NORGALÉ, 14, Henrietta Street.
NEW YORK: B. WESTERMANN & Co., 812, Broadway.**





PORTA LINGUARUM ORIENTALIUM

INCHOAVIT

J. H. PETERMANN

CONTINUAVIT

HERM. L. STRACK.

ELEMENTA LINGUARUM

Hebraicae, Phoeniciae, Biblico-Aramaicae,
Samaritanae, Targumicae, Syriacae, Arabicae,
Aethiopicae, Assyriacae, Aegyptiacae, Copticae,
Armeniacae, Persicae, Turcicae, aliarum

studitis academicis accommodaverunt

*J. H. Petermann, H. L. Strack, E. Nestle, A. Socin, F. Praetori
A. Merx, Aug. Mueller, Friedr. Delitzsch, C. Salemann,
Ad. Erman, V. Shukovski, Th. Noeldeke,
G. Steindorff, R. Bruennow, Dav. H. Mueller, G. Jacob, &*

PARS IV.

ARABIC GRAMMAR

BY

A. SOCIN.

SECOND EDITION.

BERLIN,

REUTHER & REICHARD

LONDON

WILLIAMS & NORGATE

14, HENRIETTA STREET

NEW YORK

B. WESTERMANN & Co.

812, BROADWAY.

1895.

ARABIC GRAMMAR

PARADIGMS, LITERATURE, EXERCISES

AND

GLOSSARY

BY

DR. A. SOCIN

PROFESSOR ORDINARIUS IN THE UNIVERSITY OF LEIPZIG.

SECOND ENGLISH EDITION

TRANSLATED FROM THE THIRD GERMAN EDITION

BY THE

REV. ARCH. R. S. KENNEDY D. D.

PROFESSOR OF HEBREW ETC. IN THE UNIVERSITY OF EDINBURGH.



BERLIN,

REUTHER & REICHARD

LONDON

WILLIAMS & NORGATE

14, HENRIETTA STREET.

NEW YORK

B. WESTERMANN & Co.

812, BROADWAY.

1895.




**All rights reserved,
including that of translation into other languages.**

PREFACE

TO THE

SECOND ENGLISH EDITION.

The aim of the following pages is to furnish intending students of classical Arabic with the most important rules both of the Accidence and of the Syntax in the briefest possible form. The present edition, the second in English, is a translation of the third German edition of 1894, to which, save for a few corrections and additions, it in all respects corresponds. Its German counterpart has been considerably altered compared with the second edition because of the publishers' intention to issue a separate chrestomathy of Arabic prose. Professor R. Bruennow, a scholar of approved ability, was entrusted with the preparation of this work which appeared in the year 1894. The connected narratives which formerly composed the chrestomathy of the grammar were, according to arrangement, incorporated in Bruennow's work, and consequently had to be dropped from the new edition




of the grammar. On the other hand the latter was now extended, more particularly in the part dealing with the syntax, with the result that it will now be found, with few exceptions, to be sufficient for the understanding of the new chrestomathy. At the same time, the fact must again be emphasised that the present work does not pretend to take the place of any of the larger treatises; the English student who wishes to advance beyond the elements of Arabic must have recourse to the latest edition (the third) of Wright's excellent grammar. For this reason the author has deemed it his duty to adhere to his former view and to decline, in a book intended for beginners, to enter into the technical terminology of the Arab grammarians—which may safely be left to the larger grammars; still the Arabic specialist will easily discover that their views have been taken into account even in the present elementary work. The best introduction to this department of study will be found to be the reading of the Aġrumiye, which Bruennow has printed in his Chrestomathy.

In order to lighten the first lessons in grammar, the exercises consisting of short sentences and anecdotes have been increased by the addition of a few short stories, by means of which a sort of stepping stone is provided to the prose chrestomathy.

The passages for translation into Arabic have been retained unchanged along with the appropriate glossary. Experience has shown that this part of the chrestomathy has unquestionably been of service; and although I am strongly of opinion that this class of exercises is of real value in such systematic instruction as is necessary at first, I am in no wise blind to the difficulties which the correction of such exercises entails even on the teacher of Arabic. In order to meet such difficulties, I have selected single sentences and anecdotes from Arabic authors, and have so arranged both notes and glossary that the student, who in any case will have to make diligent use of grammar and dictionary, is so to say compelled to reproduce exactly the Arabic original. From what has just been said, it is clear that this part of the book, at least, presupposes a teacher, for I am convinced that the grammar of Arabic as a whole, and the syntax in particular, can only be mastered with extreme difficulty by self-instruction. I would add, however, that translation from English should be taken at first in the smallest possible doses, and even in this way only after the student has read a part of the Arabic texts.

The synopsis of Arabic literature has also been extended. Strictly speaking, this section is out of place in an elementary work; still it may afford a



stimulus to a beginner here and there, and supply an occasional hint to those pursuing the study of Arabic by themselves, or at a distance from the larger seats of learning.

The present English edition is [an entirely new translation. This difficult and tedious work has been undertaken by Professor Archd. R. S. KENNEDY of Edinburgh University. To him and to his late assistant, Mr. W. B. STEVENSON B. D., Vans Dunlop Scholar in Semitic Languages of the same University, who has rendered us great assistance in the reading of the proofs, I cannot omit to express here my warmest thanks for their co-operation.

A. SOCIN.

NOTE BY THE TRANSLATOR.

I have¹ only to add to the foregoing, that my responsibility as translator does not extend to the English-Arabic exercises and the relative glossary. A few verbal changes excepted—chiefly where the “violence done to the Queen’s English” (p. 57*) was greater than seemed absolutely necessary—these have been reprinted from the first edition. I have also inserted an additional reference here and there, and in the bibliographical section I am responsible for one or two additional entries.

I wish also to express my personal indebtedness to Mr. Stevenson, without whose generous co-operation, owing to my absence in the East, the book would not have been ready in time for this winter’s work.

20th September 1895.

A. R. S. K.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

GRAMMAR.

I. ORTHOGRAPHY AND PHONOLOGY (§§ 1—11).

	Page
§ 1. Consonants	1
§ 2. Long Vowels	6
§ 3. Short Vowels, Nunation, Gezma	8
§ 4. Hamza	9
§ 5. Tešdid	11
§ 6. Waşla	12
§ 7. Medda	15
§ 8. The Syllable	16
§ 9. The Tone	17
§ 10. Pause	18
§ 11. The Arabic Cyphers and Contractions	18

II. ACCIDENCE (§§ 12—96).

Chap. I. The Pronoun (§§ 12—15).

§ 12. Personal Pronouns	19
§ 13. Demonstrative Pronouns	21
§ 14. Relative Pronouns	23
§ 15. Interrogative Pronouns	24

Chap. II. The Verb (§§ 16—54).

§ 16. Groundform	24
§ 17. Conspectus of the derived Stems	24
§ 18. I. Stem	25
§ 19. II. Stem	26
§ 20. III. Stem	26
§ 21. IV. Stem	27

CONTENTS.

XI

Page

§ 22. V. Stem	27
§ 23. VI. Stem	28
§ 24. VII. Stem	28
§ 25. VIII. Stem	28
§ 26. IX. and XI. Stems	29
§ 27. X. Stem	29
§ 28. The Stems of the quadriliteral Verb	30
§ 29. The Passive	30
§ 30. The Tenses	30
§ 31. The Moods	31
§ 32. Imperative	32
§ 33. Inflection for Person and Number	33
§§ 34—36. Verbs mediae geminatae	34
§§ 37—38. Verba hamzata	36
§ 39. Weak Verbs	38
§ 40. Verba primae و et ي	38
§§ 41—44. Verba mediae و et ي	39
§§ 45—48. Verba ultimae و et ي	41
§ 49. Doubly weak Verbs	44
§ 50. The Verb كَيْسَ	45
§ 51. Verbs of Praise and Blame	46
§ 52. Forms of Admiration	46
§ 53. The Verb with Pronominal Suffixes	46
§ 54. Sign of the Accusative	47

Chap. III. The Noun (§§ 55—90).

a. Formation of Nouns.

§ 55. Primitive and derived Nouns	48
§ 56. Summary of the simple Nouns	49
§ 57. Nouns with Preformatives	49
§ 58. Nouns with Afformatives	50
§ 59. Quadriliteral Nouns	50
§ 60. Participles	50
§ 61. Infinitives	51
§ 62. Verbal Adjectives	53

XII

CONTENTS.

	Page
§ 63. Intensive Forms	54
§ 64. Nomina loci, instrumenti, speciei	55
§ 65. Nomina relativa	56
§ 66. Nomina deminutiva	57
§ 67. Nouns from Stems mediae geminatae	57
§ 68. Nouns from Stems with Hamza	58
§ 69. Nouns from Stems primae و	58
§ 70. Nouns from Stems med. و and ی	59
§ 71. Nouns from Stems ultimae و and ی	60
b. Gender of Nouns.	
§ 72. Masculine and Feminine Gender	62
§§ 73—74. Formation of the Feminine	63
c. Inflection of Nouns.	
§ 75. Number and Case	65
§ 76. Formation of the Dual and Plural	66
§ 77. Case-endings of Singular. Triptote and Diptote Nouns	67
§ 78. Diptotes	68
§ 79. Inflection of the Determined Noun	68
§ 80. Shortening of Dual and Plural in the Construct State	69
§ 81. Inflection of Nouns in <i>in</i> and <i>an</i> from ult. و and ی	70
§ 82. The Noun with the Pronominal Suffixes	71
§ 83. Vowel Changes in the Pluralis Sanus	72
§ 84. Proper Names compounded with ابن	73
§ 85. Vocative	73
§ 86. Collective Nouns	74
§ 87. Broken Plurals	75
§ 88. List of the principal varieties of the Broken Plural	76
§ 89. Broken Plurals from Quadriliteral Nouns	78
§ 90. Nouns of irregular Formation	80
<i>Chap. IV. The Numerals (§§ 91—93).</i>	
§ 91. The Cardinal Numbers	83
§ 92. The Connection of the numeral with the thing numbered	85
§ 93. Ordinal Numbers and Fractions	86

CONTENTS.

XIII

Page

Chap. V. Particles (§§ 94—96).

§ 94. Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions	88
§ 95. Inseparable Particles	88
§ 96. Prepositions and Particles with Suffixes	89

III. SYNTAX (§§ 97—160).

Chap. I. Tenses and Moods (§§ 97—104).

§ 97. Perfect and Imperfect	90
§ 98. Use of the Perfect	91
§ 99. Use of the Imperfect	92
§ 100. Subjunctive	94
§ 101. Modus apocopatus	95
§ 102. Modus energicus	95
§ 103. Passive	96
§ 104. Participles	96

Chap. II. Government of the Verb (§§ 105—117).

§ 105. The Verb and its Compliment	97
§ 106. Accusative	97
§ 107. Accusative after verbs of coming &c.	97
§ 108. Verbs with two Accusatives	97
§ 109. The Absolute Object	98
§ 110. The Accusative as Predicate	99
§ 111. Accusative with √	100
§ 112. Accusative with ∫ of Concomitance	101
§ 113. Accusative of nearer Definition	101
§ 114* Accusative in Exclamations	102
§§ 114—116. The Verb with Prepositions	103
§ 117. ∫ in Dates	104

Chap. III. Government of the Noun (§§ 118—134).

§ 118. The Noun with the Article (Determination)	105
§ 119. Apposition	106
§§ 120—122. Qualifying Adjuncts	107
§§ 123—130. The Genitive Relation	109

XIV

CONTENTS.

	Page
§ 131. The Construction of the Infinitive	112
§ 132. The Participle and its Object	113
§ 133. The Nomen Regens undetermined	114
§ 134. Improper Annexation	114

Chap. IV. The Simple Sentence (§§ 135—151).

§ 135. Distinction bet. Nominal and Verbal Sentences	115
§ 136. The Verb in the Verbal Sentence	115
§§ 137—138. Indefinite Subject	11
§ 139. The Predicate in the Nominal Sentence	118
§§ 140—146. Connection bet. Subject and Predicate	119
§ 147. The Particles 'inna and 'anna	123
§ 148. Subordinate Sentences	123
§ 149. More than one Predicate	125
§ 150. Negative Sentences	125
§ 151. The Particle of Exception	126

Chap. V. Compound Sentences (§§ 152—161).

§ 152. Co-ordinate Sentences	127
§§ 153—156. The Relative Clause	128
§ 157. The Circumstantial Clause	131
§ 158. The Temporal Clause	132
§ 159. The Conditional Clause with the Perfect	133
§ 160. The Conditional Clause with the Apoc. Impf.	134
§ 161. The Particle <i>ف</i> in the Apodosis	134

APPENDIX.

Computation of Time (Names of the Days of the Week, the Months &c.)	136
---	-----

LITERATURE.

A. Bibliography	139
B. Introduction and general	144
C. Chrestomathies	144
D. Grammars	145

CONTENTS.

XV

Page

Lexicography	147
Koran, Islam, Life of Muhammed, Bible &c.	150
Jurisprudence	153
Philosophy	154
Natural Sciences and Medicine	156
History, Biographies	157
Cosmography, Geography, Ethnography, Travels	163
Poetry	166
Belles Lettres, Ethics, Romances	169

PARADIGMS.

I. Suffixes and Prefixes for the Conjugation of the Verb	3*
II. Strong triliteral Verb Act. I.	4*
III. Strong triliteral Verb Pass. I.	6*
IV. Quadriliteral Verb, derived Stems	7*
V. Strong triliteral Verb, derived Stems	8*
VI. Verbum mediae geminatae Act. I.	10*
VII. Verbum mediae geminatae Pass. I.	11*
VIII. Verbum mediae geminatae, derived Stems	12*
IX. Verba hamzata	13*
X. Verbum primae radicalis و et ی	14*
XI. Verbum mediae radicalis و Act. I.	15*
XII. Verbum mediae radicalis ی Act. I.	16*
XIII. Verbum mediae radicalis و vel ی Pass.	17*
XIV. Verbum med. radicalis و et ی, derived Stems	18*
XV. Verbum tertiae radicalis و (فَعَلَ) Act. I.	19*
XVI. Verbum tertiae radicalis ی (فَعَلَ) Act. I.	20*
XVII. Verbum tertiae radicalis و vel ی (فَعَلَ) Act. I.	21*
XVIII. Verbum tertiae radicalis و vel ی Pass. I.	24*
XIX. Verbum tertiae radicalis و vel ی, derived Stems	22*
XX. Nomen generis masculini	25*
XXI. Nomen generis feminini	26*
XXII. Nouns in "in" and "an".	27*
XXIII. The Noun with Pronominal Suffixes	28*

EXERCISES AND TEXTS.

I. Exercises on the Grammar	
A. For practice in Reading	30*
B. Exercises on the Accidence	32*
C. Exercises on the Syntax	35*
II. Connected Extracts	48*
III. For Translation into Arabic	57*

GLOSSARIES.

A. English-Arabic	79*
B. Arabic-English	104*



PART I.

G R A M M A R

AND

BIBLIOGRAPHY.

GRAMMAR.

I. THE ARABIC CHARACTERS. PHONOLOGY (§§ 1—11).

The Consonants. The Arabs at first used the Syriac characters and the Syriac alphabet, in which the order of the characters is the same as in Hebrew. A relic of this earlier order is still preserved, in the employment—afterwards seldom resorted to—of the letters of the alphabet as cyphers (cf. pages 4—5). At an early period, however, the Arabs distinguished by means of diacritical points a number of sounds which were not so distinguished in the older alphabet. By a process of curtailment, moreover, a number of characters became so like each other that they had to be distinguished by similar diacritical signs. The next step was to group together in the alphabet the characters which in this way had come to resemble each other. Hence the Arabic alphabet now consists of twenty-eight consonantal signs, the usual order and

	Names	Form				Value			
		Not joined.	Joined only to preceding cons.	Joined to precedg. and folg. cons.	Joined only to following cons.	Pronunciation	Transcription.	Numerical Value.	Hebrew.
1	ا ⁶ Alif*	ا	ا	—	—	cf. §§ 2 and 4		1	א
2	ب ⁶ Bā	ب	ب	ب	ب	b	b	2	ב
3	ت ⁶ Tā	ت	ت	ت	ت	t	t	400	ת
4	ث ⁶ Thā	ث	ث	ث	ث	English hard th as in <i>thing</i>	t	500	ת
5	ج ⁶ Jīm	ج	ج	ج	ج	orig. g hard; later g in Italian <i>giorno</i> ; English j	ġ	3	ג
6	ح ⁶ Hhā	ح	ح	ح	ح	strong h with friction of larynx as if wheezing	h	8	ה
7	خ ⁶ Khā	خ	خ	خ	خ	ch in Scotch <i>loch</i>	h	600	ח
8	د ⁶ Dāl	د	د	—	—	d	d	4	ד
9	ذ ⁶ Dhāl	ذ	ذ	—	—	soft th, as in <i>this</i>	d	700	ז
10	ر ⁶ Rā	ر	ر	—	—	r	r	200	ר
11	ز ⁶ Zāi	ز	ز	—	—	Z as in <i>zeal</i> ; soft s as in <i>rose</i>	z	7	ז
12	س ⁶ Sīn	س	س	س	س	hard s	s	60	ס
13	ش ⁶ Šīn	ش	ش	ش	ش	sh	š	300	ש

* The termination *s* i. e. *un* (see § 3 b) is neglected in the transliteration, as in the modern Arabic pronunciation.

	Names	Form				Value			
		Not joined.	Joined only to preceding cons.	Join to precedg. and follg. cons.	Joined only to following cons.	Pronunciation	Transcription.	Numerical Value.	Hebrew.
14	صَادٌ Ṣād	ص	ص	ص	ص	emphatic s	s	90	ז
15	ضَادٌ Ḍād	ض	ض	ض	ض	emphatic d (tongue pressed against the gum)	ḍ	800	
16	طَاءٌ Ṭā	ط	ط	ط	ط	emphatic t <i>gutr.</i>	ṭ	9	ט
17	ظَاءٌ Ḍā	ظ	ظ	ظ	ظ	emphatic z	ẓ	900	
18	عَيْنٌ ʿAin	ع	ع	ع	ع	produced by a tightening of the violently compressed glottis	ʿ	70	ע
19	غَيْنٌ Ghain	غ	غ	غ	غ	guttural r	ġ	1000	
20	فَاءٌ Fā	ف	ف	ف	ف	f	f	80	פ
21	كَافٌ Kāf	ك	ك	ك	ك	deep emphatic k	ḳ	100	כּ
22	كَافٌ Kāf	ك	ك	ك	ك	k	k	20	כ
23	لَامٌ Lām	ل	ل	ل	ل	l	l	30	ל
24	مِيمٌ Mīm	م	م	م	م	m	m	40	מ
25	نُونٌ Nūn	ن	ن	ن	ن	n	n	50	נ
26	هَاءٌ Hā	ه	ه	ه	ه	h	h	5	ה
27	وَاوٌ Wāw	و	و	—	—	w	w	6	ו
28	يَاءٌ Yā	ي	ي	ي	ي	y	y	10	י

forms of which are exhibited on pp. 4—5. These signs are written and read from right to left. Some are joined, to the letters preceding or following, others are not, as indicated in the table referred to.

- b. When \mathfrak{z} (No. 26), at the end of a word, indicates the feminine termination (§ 73), two dots are placed over it to show that it must be pronounced as t (Nr. 3); thus: \mathfrak{z} .
- c. Very frequently, especially at the beginning of words, certain letters, instead of being written alongside of each other, are placed one above the other this is particularly the case with the letters $\mathfrak{c} \mathfrak{c} \mathfrak{c}$ (Nos. 5—7), e. g. \mathfrak{z} for \mathfrak{z} (Nos. 2 and 6), \mathfrak{z} (Nos. 5 and 6) for \mathfrak{z} , \mathfrak{z} (Nos. 18 and 5) for \mathfrak{z} &c. Instead of \mathfrak{U} (Nos. 23 and 1) the Arabs write \mathfrak{U} or \mathfrak{U} (the Lām in the latter form beginning at the left of Alif).

2. *The vowels, how indicated.* In the earliest times
- a. the Arabs indicated only the long vowels \bar{a} , \bar{i} , \bar{u} , and the diphthongs au , ai (whose second element they regarded as a consonant); this was done by employing the sign \dagger (No. 1) for \bar{a} , \mathfrak{y} (No. 27) for \bar{u} and (with a) au , \mathfrak{y} (No. 28) for \bar{i} and (with a) ai . In cases where \mathfrak{y} and \mathfrak{y} indicate the sounds au and ai , which we pronounce as diphthongs, Sukūn (see § 3 c) is ordinarily placed

over these letters, to denote that they have no vowel of their own. Examples: قال *kāla*, سير *sira*, سوق *sūkun*, بيع *baʿun*, نوم *naumun*.

In the oldest writing, the long *ā* was not uniformly represented by ا, but was occasionally left unrepresented. This omission has continued to be observed in a series of very common words; in such cases, however, an upright stroke is usually placed over the consonant that is to be pronounced with the long *ā*, e. g. هذا (for هاءا) *hādā*, الله 'ilāhun (God), رحمن *rahmānu*. Frequently, however, in our printed editions, we find this long *ā* represented by a simple —, thus: هَذَا *hādā*.

In a few words ا, after an *a* does not indicate *e*. the pronunciation *au* but a long *ā*, originally no doubt an obscure *ā̇*; in this case, too, the upright stroke is the usual sign, e. g. حياة (alongside of حياءة) *hayātun* life (but ا with Suffixes: حياته *hayātuhu* his life).

At the end of many words ي is likewise employed *d*. to represent a long *ā*; in such cases (like the و in *c*) it does not receive the Sukūn (§ 3 *c*), e. g. رمى (or رمى) *ramā* (he has thrown); in the middle of a word, on the other hand, ا takes the place of this ي; thus with a suffix رماه *ramāhu* he has thrown it.

twice at the end of a word, they are to be pronounced with a final *n* (called by the Arabs ^{نُونٍ} *Tanwīn*, by us frequently Nunation, from the letter *nūn*), e. g. ^{شَمْسٍ} *šamsin*, ^{رَجُلٍ} *rağulun*. The Nunation *an* receives as an additional indication the letter *l*, but the pronunciation remains unaffected, e. g. ^{مَالًا} *mālan*. This *l* is omitted only when the Nunation accompanies the feminine termination *ā* (see above § 1 *b*), e. g. ^{مَرْكُوبَةً} *markūbatan*, or in cases where the word already has a final *l*, or in its place a ^ي quiescing in *a*, e. g. ^{رِبَا} *riban*, ^{هُدًى} *hudan* (§ 2 *d*). The same holds good in most cases after Hamza (§ 4). The vowel of the Nunation is always short.

When a consonant has no vowel of its own, this *c.* is indicated by the sign ^{جَزْمَةٍ} *Gezma* (also called ^{سُكُونٍ} *Sukūn* [Rest]) e. g. ^{سَافَرْتُ} *sāfartu*, ^{مَشَيْتَ} *mašaita* (cf. § 2). On the omission of this sign see § 5. A consonant which is thus pronounced without a vowel following is said to be “resting”.

✍ *Hamza*. In order to distinguish the cases in which *h* was employed to denote *ā* (§ 2), from those in which it had (as originally in Hebrew) its proper force as a consonant, the Arabs gave it the additional sign

4. *a.* 

هَمْزَة Hamza ء (in form a modified ع 'Ain). ا accordingly denotes the closure of the larynx by which the breath, engaged in voice production, is turned on or off, according as the Hamza precedes or follows a vowel. It is best heard in English before the second of such pairs of words as "sea eagle", "mine eyes". Its effect may also be noted by comparing the two following pronunciations of Kurān, viz: Ku-rān and Kur-'ān (the latter with Hamza). In the transliteration we indicate ا by ' except at the beginning of a word where no indication is required. The sign ء is placed under the ا, when followed by an *i*-sound. Examples اَمْرٌ 'amrun, اِبلٌ 'ibilun, اُمٌّ 'umamun; سَأَلَ sa'ala, رَأَسٌ ra'-sun; اِقْرَأْ ik-ra'. In the last two examples Hamza closes the syllable.

- b. Before or after an *i*- or *u*-sound, the signs و and ي are generally employed instead of ا as the bearers of the Hamza, in which case ي is written without the two dots: e. g. بَوْسٌ ba'usa, يُوْتَرُ yu'taru, يُوَاتَرُ yu'ātaru; جِئْتُ ḡi'ta, صَائِبٌ ṣa'iba, يُبَارِئُ yubār'ū.

- c. After a long vowel, and in most cases after Sukūn, Hamza as a rule has no bearer, but is written on or above the line, thus: اِرْدَا'un, بَرَّ (or بَرًّا) bar'un. After a vowelless consonant in the middle of

a word, Hamza with its vowel is placed over the connecting stroke (except, of course, when no such connection is possible, as after و in مَمْلُوءَةٌ ^smamlū'atun), thus: حَاطِيَّةٌ ^sḥaṭī'atun; in the same way شَيْبَا ^sšai'an; On the other hand, in cases like اِمْدَاءٌ ^simḍā'an no Alif is written at the end, cf. § 3 b.

Tešdīd. That a consonant is to be sounded twice 5. is indicated by the sign of doubling ّ, named تَشْدِيدٌ ^a. Tešdīd or شَدُّ Šedd (from the initial ش of this word the sign ّ has been derived), e. g. سَبَّ ^ssabba, تَرَحَّلُ ^starahḥulun. This doubling of a consonant is either due—as in the examples just given—to the essential nature of the form, nominal or verbal (as for example the verbal forms corresponding to the Hebrew *Pi^{ce}l* § 19), or is the result of assimilation.

When one consonant is assimilated to another, the 6. assimilation is further graphically represented by the removal of the Sukūn from the assimilated consonant. This applies to the *l* of the article اَلْ, when the latter precedes one of the following consonants: د, ث, ت, ذ, ن, ل, ط, ض, ص, ش, س, ز, ر, ز (that is, dentals, sibilants and *r, l, n*). Examples: اَلتَّاجِرُ ^sattāgīru, اَلتَّلْجُ ^sattalḡu, اَلشَّمْسُ ^saššamsu, (the sun), but اَلْقَمَرُ ^salkamaru (the moon). From the fact that the two last examples

are stereotyped those consonants that may be assimilated are technically called *solar* letters, those that do not admit of assimilation, *lunar* letters.

NOTE a. The word إِلَه ^{اِ}ilāhun, God, when joined to the article drops the first syllable and becomes اَللَّهُ (§ 2 b) *allāhu*.

NOTE b. The words مِنْ *min*, عَنْ *an*, اَنْ *'an* (and اِنْ *'in*), when followed by a few words beginning with م *m* or ل *l* are usually combined with them into one word, the final ن *n* being at the same time assimilated to the following consonant, e. g. مِمَّا *mimmā* from مِنْ مَّ *min mā*, اَلَّا *'allā* from اَنْ لَّا *'an lā*.

6. *Waṣla* ~. A word beginning with two consonants
 a. receives in Arabic either a full helping-vowel preceded by Hamza in accordance with § 4 a (e. g. أَفْلَاطُونُ Plato), or merely a vowel which is heard only when the word is standing *alone*, but which must be given up when the word in question comes to stand after another word in the sentence. Thus in the latter case we find أَقْتُلْ *uḡtul* instead of قَتُلْ *ḡtul*. The ا which is prefixed in this and similar cases is, however, still written although the helping vowel accompanying it is given up, and it then receives over it the sign وَصَلَةٌ *waṣla* ~ e. g. بِنْتُ الْوَزِيرِ *bintulwazīri*. The two words thus united together are also to be pronounced as if they formed a single word. Such an *Alif Waṣlatum* or *Waṣla*-bearing Alif is called a *connective* Alif in

contradistinction to a *disjunctive* Alif, that is, an *Alif hamzatum* or Hamza-bearing Alif (cf. § 4).

NOTE. The sign ʾ is a modification of ص; waṣla or ṣila denotes "close connection".

When a connective Alif has to be employed at *b.* the beginning of a sentence, a full vowel must be pronounced, but, as written, only the proper vowel sign may accompany the Alif, never a Hamza. Thus we have الرَّسُولُ *arrasūlu*, أَخْرَجَ *uḥruġ* but قَالَ أَخْرَجَ pronounce *kālahruġ*.

In the last example the division of the syllables *c.* is now *kā-laḥ-ruġ*. If the vowel preceding a connective Alif is long, it must now be pronounced as a short vowel, since it stands in a shut syllable (see § 8). Thus فِي الْفُلْكِ properly *fī-lfulki*, has now the following syllables *fīl-ful-ki*; so too رَضِيَ اللَّهُ *riḍa-llāhi* (§ 2*d*) = *ri-ḍal-lā-hi*, دَبَحُوا الْأَوَّارَ (§ 2*e*) *da-ba-ḥul-ʾiwazza*.

If the word before a connective Alif ends in a *d.* consonant which has no vowel of its own, the consonant receives a helping-vowel. The most natural vowel in such a case is *i*, e. g. دَارَابَتِ الْعَبْدَ *darabati-lʾabda* (for دَارَبَتْ); so اسْتَقْبَالَ *istikbālu* with the article اَلْ: اَلْاِسْتِقْبَالُ *alistikbālu*, in syllables thus: *a-lis-tik-bā-lu*. In certain cases original final vowels that

have been dropped reappear before the connective Alif, e. g. هُمُ الْكَافِرُونَ *hu-mul-kā-fi-rū-na*. The first word is otherwise uniformly هُمْ *hum* (§ 12 a). — The Nunation (§ 3 b) is also treated as if it ended in a consonant; the favourite vowel in this case is *i*, e. g. رَجُلٌ آسَمُهُ pronounced as if written رَجُلِنِ آسَمُهُ *rağū-lunismuhu*, in syllables: *ra-ğū-lu-nis-mu-hu*.

NOTE. Before a connective alif the preposition عَنْ “away from” becomes عَنِ, the preposition مِنْ “from” becomes مِنِ, but before the article مِنَ.

- e. The same rule applies to a word ending in a so-called diphthong (cf. § 2); the consonant (و or ي) forming the second part of the diphthong must receive a helping vowel before a connective Alif, which vowel is *u* or *i* according as the consonant in question is و or ي. Thus we have مُصْطَفَوُ اللَّهِ *muṣ-ṭa-fa-nul-lā-hi* in place of مُصْطَفَى اللَّهِ, رَجُلِي الْبَقَرَةِ *riğ-la-yil-ba-ḥa-ra-ti* for رَجُلَى الْبَقَرَةِ. (So, too, with the termination ى — § 2 c).

NOTE. The particles أَوْ “or” and لَوْ “would that!” take *i* as helping vowel.

- f. The connective Alif is altogether omitted in the following cases:

1) In the article *āl*, when it receives as prefixes the particles *l* *lī* or *lā*; e. g. *لِلْحَقِّ*, *līl-ḥaḳ-ḳi* for *لَا لَمَجْدُ*, *lāl-mağ-du* for *لَا لَمَجْدُ*.

2) In *ibn* son, in apposition to the proper name of the son and followed in the genitive by the name of the father; e. g. *مُسْلِمُ بْنُ الْوَلِيدِ* *mus-li-mub-nul-na-ti-di* Muslim, the son of al-Walīd. At the beginning of a line, however, even in this case we must write *آبْنِ*.

3) In the word *ism* *ismun*, name, after the preposition *bi* in the oft recurring formula *bismillāh* *bis-mil-lā-hi*, in the name of God.

Medda. Inasmuch as the Arabic orthography 7. cannot tolerate two Alifs side by side, in such a case ^{a.} only a single Alif is written, over which is placed a ⁹ *Medda* or *Medd* ~ (a sign derived from *مد*). At the beginning of a word or syllable the *Medda* carries with it the force of a *Hamza*; the vowel sign *Fath* is then also dropped, e. g. *أَكَلُ* *ā-ki-lun* for *أَكَلُ*, *كُرْ-ā-nun* for *قُرْآنُ*; so *آمَنُ* *ā-ma-na* for *آمَنُ*, since the *Hamza* of the second *Alif* disappears as explained § 38 a.

NOTE. ^{اَی} *ra'ā* may be taken as an example of the rule just given. With suffixes it ought to appear, according to § 2*d*, as ^{اَی} *ra'ā*, which, however, is written ^{اَی} *ra'ā-hū*.

- b. Since a ^{اَی} after a long *ā* ^{اَی} is written on the line (§ 4*c*) without receiving an Alif as bearer, the ^{اَی} preceding the Hamza in such cases likewise receives Medda, as a rule, although the latter has no effect on the pronunciation of the word, e. g. ^{اَی} *gā-'a* (for ^{اَی} *gā'*), ^{اَی} *ta-fā-'a-lū*; and the same where ^{اَی} or ^{اَی} appears as the bearer of Hamza ^{اَی} *a-ḥib-bā-'u-hu*, ^{اَی} *ḡā-'i-lun*.

NOTE. Arabic orthography has also an objection to two Waws appearing side by side, if the first has a Damma (even though the first may be only the bearer of a Hamza, as explained in § 4*c*).

Thus ^{اَی} *ru'ūsun* is often written ^{اَی}.

8. *The Syllable.* An *open* syllable ends in a vowel short or long; a *shut* syllable ends in a consonant. Every syllable begins with a single consonant, not with two or more (cf. § 6). A *short* syllable consists of a consonant with a short vowel, as in the second syllable of ^{اَی} *mā-tā* (with two open syllables); a *long* syllable consists either 1) of a consonant with a long vowel, like the open syllable *mā* in the above example, or 2) of a consonant, a short vowel and a consonant (shut syllable) e. g. both the syllables of

قَتْلٌ *kat-lun* (so too مَوْتُ *mau-tun* § 2a) شَرًّا *šar-ran*, or 3) of a shut syllable with a long vowel. This last variety, however, is only found (exclusive of pausal effects § 10) when the following consonant has been doubled (§ 5) and is preceded by a long *ā*, as in دَابَّةٌ *dāb-ba-tun* (rarely after *ai* as in دُوَيْبَةٌ *du-waib-ba-tun* which is derived according to § 66 from *dābbatun*). Such a syllable may be described as doubly long. Other syllables of this sort are shortened as يَقُلُّ *yaḡul* from يَقُولُ *yaḡūl*; رَمَتْ *ramat* from رَمَاتٌ *ramāt*.

NOTE. A word consisting of but one short syllable, if it stands alone, either receives an addition at the end (see § 49a b), or is joined to the following word. The latter method is adopted in a series of particles (see § 94), which notwithstanding the connection are still regarded as more or less independent words. The principal stress, however, rests on the words with which the particles are connected.

The Accent or Tone. The accent in Arabic is thrown 9. backwards towards the beginning of the word till it meets a *long* syllable, or if there is no such syllable, till it reaches the first syllable of the word. A simple long syllable at the end of a word, however, does not receive the accent. Examples of words with a final short syllable: ضَارَبَ *ḡaraba*, اِسْتَنَكَرَ *istānkara*; with a final long syllable: تَمَتَّتَا *taḡāmtumā*, فَردٌ *fārdun*, مَمْلَكَةٌ *maḡmlakatun*, فَرَبُوا *fārabū*, لِدَةٌ *līdatun*.

Exceptions: A syllable with a connective Alif (§ 6), as in أَقْتُلْ (see § 6*a*), cannot receive the accent; the pronunciation is therefore *uḡtúl*. In the same way monosyllabic inseparable particles, like وَ and فَ (cf. § 94), prefixed to words, do not affect the accentuation of the latter; e. g. فَمَشَى *famáša*.

10. In *pause* final short vowels are dropped. Also the Nunation *un* and *in*; the Nunation *an* is changed to *ā*, the feminine termination َـ to ِـ (with the *h* sounded): thus نَازِلُونَ *nāzilūn* for نَازِلُونَا *nāzilūna*; رَجُلٌ *raġul* for رَجُلُونٌ *raġulun*; مَرْحَبًا *marḥabā* for مَرْحَبَانِ *marḥaban*; فَاطِمَةُ *Fāṭimah* for فَاطِمَةٌ.
11. *Numerical Signs and Abbreviations.* The usual Arabic cyphers are the following:

٠, ١, ٢, ٣, ٤, ٥, ٦, ٧, ٨, ٩

0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9.

The tens, hundreds &c., are written to the left of the units &c. as ١٩ 19, ١٨٩٥ 1895.

The following are a few of the most frequently occurring abbreviations:

عَم = عَلَيْهِ السَّلَامُ *alaihi-ssalāmu* Peace be upon him!

صَلِّ عَلَى اللَّهِ وَسَلِّمْ = صَلَّى اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمَ *ṣalla-llāhu 'alaihi*

wasallama God bless him and give him peace (said of Mohammed).

II. ETYMOLOGY (§§ 12—96).

Chapter I. The Pronoun. (§§ 12—15.)

The personal pronouns are either independent or *suffixed*. The *independent* or *separate* personal pronouns have the following forms:

	Sing.	Plur.	Dual
I. Pers.	أَنَا	نَحْنُ	
II. Pers.	{ <div> masc. أَنْتَ </div> <div> fem. أَنْتِ </div>	{ <div> (أَنْتُمْ) </div> <div> أَنْتُنَّ </div>	{ <div> أَنْتُمَا </div> <div> <i>pronom.</i> </div>
III. Pers.	{ <div> masc. هُوَ </div> <div> fem. هِيَ </div>	{ <div> (هُمْ) </div> <div> هُنَّ </div>	{ <div> هُمَا </div>

NOTE 1. The second syllable of the pronoun of the first pers. singular, although written with *l*, is short. — The forms in parentheses (2nd and 3rd pers. plural) are used particularly before *Waşla* (§ 6*d*); these final vowels are originally long.

NOTE 2. When joined to *وَ* and *فَ* (see § 95) the pronouns of the 3rd pers. sing. may lose their first vowel *e*. g. *وَهُوَ*, *فَهُوَ*.

The *suffixed personal pronouns*, which joined to a *b*. noun indicate the genitive, joined to a verb, the accusative, are the following:

		Sing.	Plur.	Dual
I. Pers.	with nouns	—ي	—نَا	
	with verbs	—نِي		
II. Pers.	masc.	—كَ	—كُمْ	—كُمَا
	fem.	—كِ	—كُنَّ	
III. Pers.	masc.	—هُ	—هُمْ	—هُمَا
	fem.	—هَا	—هُنَّ	

- c. Before a connective Alif (§ 6 *d*) the suffix pron. of the 1. pers. singular may receive as helping-vowel the *a* which belonged to it originally; thus we may write أَعْطَانِي or أَعْطَانِي أَلِكِتَابَ. After *ā*, *i* and *ai* the nominal suffix of the 1. pers. sing. has the form يَ *ya*. Occasionally (in the *Qur'ān* particularly) the suffix of the 1. pers. sing. is indicated by a simple *i*, of which the sign is Kesr —, as رَبِّ my lord! In the same way the corresponding verbal suffix may be only نِ *ni*.

- * d. After an immediately preceding *i* or *ai* the suffixes هُ, هُمَا, هُمْ, هُنَّ substitute the vowel *i* for *u*, thus assuming the forms هِ, هِمَا, هِمْ, هِنَّ; e. g. مَالِهِ instead of مَالُهُ. Before the connective Alif هِمْ generally becomes هِمُ. — The suffixes كُمْ and هُنَّ resume

their original forms **كُم** and **هُم** before a connective Alif.

For further information regarding the affixing of these pronominal forms see § 82 and the table of paradigms No. XXIII.

The reflexive pronoun, when carrying a certain amount of emphasis with it, is generally expressed by the word **نَفْسٌ** *nafsun* soul, to which the proper suffixes are appended. In many cases, however, the personal pronoun suffices to express the reflexive.

The *demonstrative pronouns* are the following (with 13. their inflexion compare § 76 a).

The simple pronoun (rare)

a.

		Masc.	Fem.
Sing.		ذَا	ذَٰئِةٌ, ذِي, ذَا
Dual	Nom.	ذَانِ	تَانِ
	Gen. Acc.	ذَيْنِ	تَيْنِ
Plur.		أُولَٰئِ (ūlā) or أُولَٰئِ (ūlā'i)	

This simple pronoun combines:

b.

(1) with the demonstrative particle **هَـ**, generally written defectively (**ه** or less correctly **هـ** § 2 b). The result is the usual demonstrative pronoun to indicate that which is near at hand (*this, these*):

		Masc.	Fem.
Sing.		هَذَا	هَذِهِ (هَذِي)
Dual	Nom.	هَذَانِ	هَتَانِ
	Gen. Acc.	هَذَيْنِ	هَتَيْنِ
Plur.		هَؤُلَاءِ	هَئِذَا

- c. The simple demonstrative combines (2) with a suffix of the second person. Only in the older Arabic, particularly that of the *Qur'ān*, however, does the suffix vary according to the number of persons addressed (e. g. plur. ذَلِكُمْ, dual ذَلِكُمَا), elsewhere it appears uniformly as *كَ*. There is also a form with *لِ* before *كَ*. The result is two forms of the demonstrative pronoun to indicate that which is more remote (*that, those*):

		Masc.	Fem.
Sing.		ذَلِكَ, ذَاكَ, ذَاكَ	تِلْكَ (تِيكَ), تَاكَ
Dual	Nom.	ذَٰلِكَ, ذَٰلِكَ	تَٰلِكَ, تَٰلِكَ
	Gen. Acc.	ذَٰلِكَ, ذَٰلِكَ	تَٰلِكَ, تَٰلِكَ
Plur.		أُولَٰئِكَ (أُولَٰئِكَ), rarely	أُولَٰئِكَ

- d. Among the demonstratives we must also place the article *أَلْ* (see § 5b). When the noun, in the circumstances

detailed in § 6 f 1, begins with a **ج**, this letter has a **Tešdid** placed over it and the **ج** of the article is dropped. Thus we get **لَّذِيْ** for **لَّذِيْ**; so too **لَّهُ** for **لَّهُ** (§ 5 note).

The *relative pronouns* are the following: 14.

الَّذِيْ who, which, that,—originally a compound *a*. demonstrative with the article as one of its elements (hence the connective **Alif**)—declined as follows:

		Masc.	Fem.
Sing.		الَّذِيْ	الَّتِيْ
Dual	Nom.	الَّذَانِ	الَّتَانِ
	Gen. Acc.	الَّذَيْنِ	الَّتَيْنِ
Plur.		الَّذِيْنَ	الَّتَاتِيْ

مَنْ (indeclinable) one who, such (a one) as, he *b*. who, those who.

مَا (indeclinable) that which, something which.

Among the relative pronouns may also be included *c*. **أَيُّ**, fem. **أَيَّةٌ** he who, she who. This word is declinable in the sing., but the masc. often takes the place of the fem. It also combines with the prons. in *b* above to form **أَيُّمَنْ** every one who, whosoever; and **أَيُّمَا** whatsoever.

15. The *interrogative pronouns* are:

مَنْ who?

مَا what? Frequently strengthened by the addition of the demonstrative ذَا ذَا: مَا ذَا what then?

أَيُّ, fem. أَيَّةُ what sort of? which?

NOTE. مَا after prepositions is shortened to مَ e. g. لِمَ why? With this interrogative مَا is also connected the interrogative particle كَمْ how much?

Chapter II. The Verb. (§§ 16—54.)

16. The great majority of Arabic verbs have three radical letters; only a small minority have four radicals. The ground-form of verbs, according to which they are arranged in grammar and dictionary, is the third person singular of the perfect. The verb فَعَلَ (to do) is used as a model paradigm.

NOTE. Since all Arabic dictionaries give the verbal and nominal derivatives under their respective root-forms, it is necessary, in order to find the three radicals with ease, to note carefully what consonants are employed in the formation of verbs and nouns as prefixes and affixes to, and as infixes in, the stem.

17. From this ground-form or root, which is named by grammarians the first stem, other stems are derived by a series of uniform changes, represented by

modifications of the verb **فَعَلَ**, but usually referred to by their respective numbers in the series. Thus we speak of "the eighth stem", (indicated in the dictionary simply by VIII) not as in Hebrew and Syriac of the Piel, the Afel &c. The following stems, the order of which must be carefully noted, are those most frequently met with:

I	فَعَلَ	IV	أَفْعَلَ	VII	إِنْفَعَلَ	X	إِسْتَفْعَلَ
II	فَعَّلَ	V	تَفَعَّلَ	VIII	إِفْتَعَلَ	(XI)	إِفْعَالَ
III	فَاعَلَ	VI	تَفَاعَلَ	(IX)	أَفْعَلَّ		

NOTE a. Of these No. IX and especially No. XI are of less frequent occurrence; still more rare are XII **إِفْعَمَلَ**, XIII **إِفْعَمَلَّ**, XIV **إِفْعَمَّلَ**, XV **إِفْعَمَّلَّ**. Which of these derived stems are formed from any given verb, and to what extent the meaning of the ground-form is modified by them, will be found in the dictionary under each verb.

NOTE b. In many cases the verb is used to express the idea that some one wishes to do something or has something done; thus **قَتَلَهُ** "he killed him" may also signify "he wished to kill him", and **ضَرَبَ عُنُقَهُ** "he cut off his head (prop. neck)" may mean "he had (*curavit*) his head cut off."

The ground-form I, in the majority of verbs, takes 18. the form **فَعَلَ**, e. g. **قَتَلَ** to kill; there is also—mostly with intransitive verbs—a form **فَعِلَ** (cf. **جَدِجَ**), e. g. **حَزِنَ** to be sad, **عَمِلَ** to do (transitive), and also a

form **فَعَلَ** (cf. **فَعَلَ**), confined to intransitive verbs, as **حَسُنَ** to be beautiful. Sometimes both the transitive and intransitive forms, **فَعَّلَ** and **فَعِلَ** or **فَعَلَّ**, are found side by side in the same verb. One and the same verb, again, may have both the forms **فَعِلَ** and **فَعَلَّ**.

19. The II. stem **فَعَّلَ** (corresponding to the Hebrew Pi^{el}) usually denotes a greater intensity of the action expressed by the simple verb. This intensification may affect the subject, object or qualifying adjunct, as **قَتَّلَ** to kill many people, to massacre (intensification of the object). In the majority of verbs, however, the II. stem is causative as **عَلَّمَ** to know, **عَلَّمَ** cause to know, to teach. It is also declarative—as in **كَذَّبَ** to lie, **كَذَّبَ** to take one for, declare one to be, a liar—and denominative, as in **جَيَّشَ** to collect an army (**جَيْشٌ**).

20. The III. stem **فَاعَلَ** expresses an attempt or effort to perform the action of the simple verb on some person, to influence some person or thing. Thus **قَاتَلَ** to kill, but **قَاتَلَ** to try to kill, to fight with; **كَتَبَ** to write, **كَاتَبَ** to correspond with (with accusative of

the person corresponded with). This stem also means to exercise some abstract quality on a person or thing, e. g. لَانَ to be soft, gentle, لَايَنَ to exercise gentleness on some one, to treat one kindly.

The IV. stem أَفْعَلَ (the Hebrew Hiph'il) has a 21. causative signification, as صَلَّمَ to be in good condition, أَصْلَمَ to bring into good condition. Very frequently we find, with this stem, denominative verbs which appear to us as intransitive, but to the Arab as possessing an implicit transitive force, and which express the idea of action in a certain definite direction, as أَحْسَنَ to do good. Frequently, too, verbs of this stem convey the idea of going to a place, of entering upon a certain period or condition; e. g. أَغْرَبَ to go towards the West, أَصْبَحَ to enter upon the period of the morning, to be something in the morning, أَشْرَفَ to reach the top, to be high; أَقَامَ (from قَامَ rise up, stand) to halt, to stay.

The V. stem تَفَعَّلَ (Hebrew Hithpa'el), a sort of 22. middle voice is formed from the II. stem and has both a reflexive and a reciprocal meaning, e. g. تَكَبَّرَ to make one's self great, تَعَلَّمَ to let one's self be taught, to learn. Sometimes a verb in the V. stem conveys the

idea of giving one's self out as something, e. g. **تَبَّأَ** to give one's self out for, to conduct one's self as, a prophet.

23. The VI. stem **تَفَاعَلَ**, derived from the III. stem, is the reflexive form of the latter, and has a reflexive or reciprocal signification, as **تَجَاسَرَ** to show one's self bold; **تَقَاتَلَ** to fight one another (usually in the plural). Another signification is seen, for example, in **تَعَالَى**, VI form of **عَلَا** to be high, which means to exalt one's self and then simply: to be exalted.

24. The VII. stem **اِنْفَعَلَ** (the Hebrew Niph'al with the connective Alif acc. to § 6a), derived in most cases from the I. stem, is a middle or reflexive form of the latter. Its signification may also be described as quasi-passive, e. g. **كَسَرَ** to break **اِنْكَسَرَ**, to break or be broken in pieces.

25. The VIII. stem **اِفْتَعَلَ**, (with connective Alif § 6a) is likewise a middle and reflexive form, for the most part of the I. stem, as **اِعْتَرَضَ**, to oppose one's self, object to; sometimes also with reciprocal signification as **اِخْتَصَمَ**, to dispute, contend with each other.

NOTE. In the case of verbs whose first radical is ط, ض, ص, the ت of the VIII. stem is changed to the emphatic ط, and

is even assimilated to the first radical, when that letter is a dental as *اِصْطَبَعَ*, instead of *اِصْطَبَعَ* from *صَبَعَ*; *اِظْلَمَ* or *اِظْلَمَ* for *اِظْلَمَ* from *اَظْلَمَ*; *اَقْبَتَ* is sometimes assimilated also to a preceding *ث*, e. g. *اَقْبَتَ* or *اَتَبَتَ* from *اَقْبَتَ* properly *اَقْبَتَتَ*; after *د*, *ذ* and *ز* *ت* is changed into the soft *د*, e. g. *اَزْدَادَ* for *اَزْدَادَ* from *زَادَ*; *اَدْتَرَكَ* for *اَدْتَرَكَ*.

The **IX** stem **افْعَلَ** (as also the XI. stem **افْعَالٌ**, 26. both with connective Alif) is used of verbs which denote the possession of inherent qualities such as colours or bodily defects, e. g. from the stem **صَفَر**: **اعْوَرَ**: عور to be or become yellow; from the stem **عَمَرَ**: **اعْمَرَ**: عَمْر to be one-eyed; from the stem **حَمَرَ**: **احْمَرَ** to be red.

The X. stem **اِسْتَفْعَلَ**, (with connective Alif) is 27. primarily a reflexive of the IV. **افْعَلَ** (otherwise a reflexive, formed on the analogy of the VIII. stem, from a stem **سَفْعَلَ** with a prefixed s), as from the stem **وحش** IV. **اَوْحَشَ** to grieve: X. **اِسْتَوْحَشَ** to grieve (one's self). Very frequently the X. stem denotes also to wish or to beg something for one's self, e. g. from **اغفر** to pardon, X.: **اِسْتَغْفَرَ** to ask for pardon; or to think that something is so, as **وَجَبَ** to be necessary, IV.: **اَوْجَبَ** to make necessary, X.: **اِسْتَوْجَبَ** to consider something as necessary for one's self.

28. The quadriliteral stems are denoted, for the verbal and nominal forms, by the paradigm **فَعَّلَلَ** (that is by the addition of a fourth radical to **فَعَّلَ**), and consist for the most part of two stems, of which the first may be said to correspond to the second stem of the triliteral verb (for **فَعَّلَ** is in reality **فَعَّعَلَ**), and the second **تَفَعَّلَ** to the fifth, e. g. **كَبَّكَبَ** to overturn, cast down, **تَكَبَّكَبَ** fall down.

NOTE. The stems III **اِفْعَلَّلَ** and IV **اِفْعَلَّلَ** (the last corresponding to the IX. stem of the trilaterals) are rare e. g. **اِطْمَأَنَّ** to be quiet, from a stem **طَمَأَنَ**.

- oo
cc
ab 29. In addition to the *active*, the Arabic verb has a *passive* voice. This passive is formed in the perfect in such a way that in place of the *a*-vowels of the active we have the order *u-i-a* (*i* with the second, *a* with the third radical); thus the act. of stem I. is **فَعَّلَ**, the pass: **فُعِّلَ**. The additional formative syllables of the derived stems also receive the vowel *u*, e. g. pass. V. **تُفْعِلُ**, VIII **أُفْتَعِلُ** (with connective Alif).

30. The Arabic verb has two principal tenses, a *perfect* ^{a.} which, generally speaking, denotes a completed action, and an *imperfect* which in general denotes an uncompleted action.

The imperfect is formed by adding the prefix $\bar{y}a$ *b.* for the active of the I., V., VI., VII., VIII., IX. and X. stems, and the prefix $\bar{y}u$ for the active of the II., III. und IV. stems, and for the passive of all the stems without exception.

In the case of verbs of which فَعَلَ is the type, the *c.* second radical, in the impf. act. of stem I., may receive one or other of the vowels *u*, *i*, *a*. Which of the three must be used for a particular verb will be found indicated in the dictionary under that verb (e. g. قَتَلَ impf. *u*) and should be taken careful note of. Those verbs, on the other hand, of which فَعِلَ (with *i*-vowel) is the type, together with all passives point their second radical with *a* only, thus impf. act. I. يُفَعِّلُ ; pass. يُفَعَّلُ . Those verbs, finally, of which فُعِّلَ (with *u*-vowel) is the type, take *u* with the second radical for the imperfect. As regards the active imperfect of the derived stems, the second radical takes *i* throughout, with the exception of stems V. and VI. where it takes *a*; thus impf. II. يُفَعِّلُ but V. يَتَفَعَّلُ .

In the imperfect various *Moods* are distinguished, *31.* namely the ordinary mood which we call the *indicative*, the dependent mood or *subjunctive*, and a *modus apocopatus* (sometimes called the *jussive*). These are

distinguished as follows: in the indicative the last, radical, when final, always takes *u*, as impf. I **يَفْعَلُ**, III. **يُفَاعِلُ**; in the subjunctive always *a*, as **يَفْعَلْ**, while in the *apocopatus* the third radical is vowelless. In addition to the above there is a double modus energicus, which is formed by appending the syllables *anna* or *an* (in some forms only *n*) to the impf. as **يَفْعَلَنَّ** or **يَفْعَلَنَ**.

NOTE. As the modus energicus is of comparatively rare occurrence, it is given in the tables of paradigms only in the case of the ordinary strong verb. From the examples there given it may easily be formed for the other verbs.

32. The *imperative* agrees with the apocopated imperfect as regards vocalisation and termination, except that the prefixes *ya* or *yu* are wanting. In the imper. of the I. stem a helping vowel (therefore with connective Alif § 6*a*) is prefixed in all cases where the first consonant is without a vowel of its own. This vowel disappears, however, in pronunciation as soon as the word ceases to stand alone, e. g. **اِفْعَلْ** but **قَالَ اَخْرُجْ**. The same applies to stems VII.—X. The imperative has the same energetic bye-forms as the imperfect.

NOTE. In the imper. of stem I the prosthetic vowel is *u* when the second radical has *u*, as **اُقْتُلْ**, but *i* when it is pointed with *a* or *i*, as **اِزْبِ**, **اِزْبِ**.

NOTE b. In the imper. of the IV. stem the prosthetic *l*, which is characteristic of the stem, is retained, although it disappears after the prefixed *ʔ* of the impf. Hence impf. *يُفَعِّلُ* (for *يُفَاعِّلُ*), but imper. *اَفْعِلْ*.

In the perfect, imperfect and imperative, there 33. are, in addition to the singular and plural, dual forms for the second and third persons. Verbs are inflected by the addition of modified and abbreviated forms of the personal pronouns, and of the dual and plural terminations of nouns, to the ground-forms *فَعَّلَ* and *يَفْعَلُ* (for the terminations *āni* and *ūna* of the impf. indic. vid. § 76 a). The terminations just named, along with the ending *īna* of the 2. pers. fem. sing., drop the syllables *ni* and *na* in the subjunctive, the apocopated imperfect and the imperative. The *l*, which appears in the paradigm after the final *و* in the perf. and in these shortened forms of the impf. and imper., has no phonetic value (cf. § 2 e).

As to the *prefixes* of the impf., it is to be noted that in place of the prefix *ي* of the 3. pers. masc., we have *ي* as the prefix of the 2. pers. sing. and plur., and of the 3. pers. fem. of the sing., *ي* to indicate the 1. pers. sing., and *ي* the 1. pers. plur.

The *affixes* employed in the inflexion of the verb are given in paradigm I.

NOTE a. In the V. and VI. forms of verbs whose first letter is a dental or a sibilant, the formative prefix occasionally drops its vowel and is assimilated to the first radical of the verb, in which case the perf. and imper. have a helping vowel (§ 6) prefixed e. g. وَدَّكَ wrap one's self up, impf. يُدُّكَ .

NOTE b. In the impf. of these two stems, the prefix نَ may be treated in such a way that instead of the two syllables نَتَّ only نَ remains, e. g. from 2. pers. msc. impf. V. نَتَّتَلَّ for نَتَّتَلَّ .

NOTE c. In the impf. VII. and VIII. stems the tone remains on the same syllable on which it falls in the perf., contrary to the rule laid down in § 9; thus $\text{يَنْقَتِلُ يَنْقَتِلُ}$ *yankátilu, yaqtátilu*.

For the conjugation of the strong verb with three radicals see paradigms II, III and V, for that of the quadriliteral verbs see paradigm IV. In the paradigms the participles and infinitives are also given, although the discussion of these forms has been deferred to §§ 60 and 61.

34. Among the ordinary strong verbs must also be reckoned the so-called verbs *mediae geminatae*, i. e. verbs whose second and third radicals are identical.

A contraction of these last two radicals takes place in all those cases in which

- a. 1) the first, second and third radicals have each a short vowel; in this case the vowel of the second radical is always dropped, e. g. فَرَّ (to flee) contracted from فَرَر (which statement is not to be understood as implying that a form فَرَر once really existed in Arabic) 3. p. perf. pass. I. فُرِّ from فَرَر ; 3. p. impf. VII. يَنْفَرُّ from يَنْفَرَر ;

2) When the first two radicals have each a short, *b*, and the third a long, vowel, e. g. 3. p. dual masc. perf. **فَرَّأ** from **فَرَّرَا**;

3) Generally also when the first radical has a long *c*, *ā*, e. g. 3. s. m. perf. of the III. stem **فَارَّ** contracted from **فَارَّرَ** (which is also found), passive **فُورِرَ**.

When the first radical is vowelless and the second 35. has a short vowel, then contraction takes place and the vowel of the second radical passes over to the first. Thus 3. pers. impf. act. **يَفْرِزُ** for **يَفْرِزُ**; pass. **يُفَرَّ** from **يُفَرِّزُ**.

When the third radical is vowelless, there is no 36. contraction in the body of the word: e. g. 2. pers. sing. masc. perf. act. **فَرَزْتَ**; 3. pers. plur. fem. impf. act. **يَفْرِزْنَ**. But when the third radical stands at the end of a verbal form with no vowel following, as in various forms of the apocopated impf. and the 2. pers. sing. masc. of the imper., we find the full forms **اَفِرْزُ**, **يَفِرْزُ** only in the dialects. As a rule contraction takes place and an additional vowel is assumed at the end in order to preserve the doubling of the radical; thus we have **يَفِرَّ**, **فِرَّ**, from **رَدَّ** imper. **رُدَّ**.

NOTE. In the case of verbs of the forms *فَعِلَ* and *فَعَلَ* the vowel of the second radical appears only in the uncontracted form e. g. *مَلَّ* to loathe, 1. pers. perf. *مَلَلْتُ*; hence the vowel *a* of the impf. *يَمَلُّ*.

For the conjugation of verbs *mediae geminatae* see paradigms Nos. VI—VIII; model verb *قَرَّ* to flee.

37. Those verbs that have a Hamza *ء* as first, second or third radical are for the most part regular, as *اَثَرَ* to make an impression, impf. *يَاْثُرُ*; *قَرَأَ* to read, impf. *يَقْرَأُ*. In certain cases we find, according to § 4*b*, *و* or *ي* (without points) as bearers of the Hamza, or *ء* may stand without a bearer, thus 3. s. m. perf. act. *كَتَبَ* to be sad, *بَوَّسَ* to be brave; 3. s. m. impf. passive of *اَثَرَ*: *يُؤَثَّرُ*; 3. sing. masc. perf. act. *خَطِئَ* to err, fem. *خَطِئَتْ*; 3. s. m. impf. act. of *سَأَلَ* to ask: *يَسْأَلُ*. Occasionally an *آ* takes the place of two Alifs, according to § 7; e. g. 3. s. m. perf. III. of *اَثَرَ*: *اَثَرَ* for *اَاَثَرَ*; VI. of *لَامَ* (bind up a wound &c.) *تَلَامَ*.

38. While in all these cases the *ء* may easily be distinguished as the third radical of the verb, there are a few forms in which the verba hamzata are more difficult to distinguish, inasmuch as the *ء* sometimes entirely disappears; from this point of view these verbs ought rather to be reckoned among the weak

verbs (§ 39 ff.). The most important of such cases are the following:

1) After أَ , إَ , أُ (also after a connective Alif أَ , إَ , أُ *a.* at the beginning of a sentence) ء gives up its power as a consonant (cf. § 7); hence, in place of 'a', 'u', 'i' simply 'ā', 'ū', 'ī', e. g. 3. s. m. perf. IV. of أَثَرَ for أَثَرَ ; 3. s. m. perf. pass. IV. of أَثَرَ is أُثِرَ in place of أَثِرَ . So also imper. I. إِثْرُ for أِثْرُ .

2) In the imper. of the I. form the verbs أَخَذَ *b.* $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{mv:} \\ \text{zi:} \end{array} \right.$ take, أَكَلَ eat, أَمَرَ order, drop the ء altogether: خُذْ , كُلْ ; in the same way, from سَأَلَ to ask, the imperative is either إِسْأَلْ or سَلْ &c.

NOTE. Should و or ف come to stand as inseparable particles (§ 87) before one of the imperatives under *a*, the prosthetic Alif is dropped and the radical Hamza reappears, receiving, as its bearer, an Alif on account of the preceding Fath, as in فَأْتِرْ . The same holds good in the case of two separate words: thus أُوتِنِ 3. s. m. perf. pass. VIII of أَمِنَ connected with a preceding word becomes أَلَدِي أُوتِنِ *elladi-tumina*.

3) In the VI. form the ء of verbs primae ء is *c.* sometimes changed to و , as تَوَامَرَ in place of تَأَمَرَ (for تَأَامَرَ).

4) In the VIII. form the ء of the verb أَخَذَ is *d*

assimilated to the following z , the result being z , as اِتَّخَذَ instead of an original اِتَّخَذَ , impf. يَتَّخِذُ , but from أَمَرَ , to order, أَيْتَمَرَ .

For the conjugation of the verba hamzata see paradigm IX.

The Weak Verbs.

39. The weak verbal stems are those having a , or a ي as first, second or third radical; under inflection these semivowels in some cases resolve themselves into full vowels, in others they are treated as consonants.
40. The *Verbs primae* , and ي differ from the strong verbs in the following points:
 - a. 1) In the impf. and imper. of the I stem a number of verbs primae , surrender their first radical and take the vowel i with their second (cf. وَلَدَ), as وَلَدَ to bring forth, impf. يَلِدُ , imper. لِدْ .
 - b. 2) Under the influence of a guttural a few verbs take a in place of i with their second radical, dropping the , however, like the others, as وَضَعَ to lay, impf. يَضَعُ ; so وَقَعَ to fall, وَهَبَ to give and others (see the dictionaries).
 - c. 3) In verbs primae ي, يُ is changed to \bar{u} , e. g. the impf. IV of يَقِظُ to be awake, properly يُقِظُ , becomes يُوقِظُ .

4) In the VIII. stem the first radical of verbs *d. primae* و and ی is assimilated to the following ت, e. g. from وَعَدَ to promise, اَوْتَعَدَ for اِتَّعَدَ (cf. § 38 *d*).

NOTE. A few verbs of the form فَعِلَ also give up the first radical in the imperf. as وَرِثَ to inherit, imperf. يَرِثُ (cf. § 18).

For the conjugation of the verbs *primae* و and ی see paradigm X where will be found the principal forms of the verbs وَصَلَ to arrive, وَدَعَ to leave, وَسَخَ to be dirty, وَجَلَ to be anxious, وَسَنَ to be sleepy, يَسَرَ to be easy.

Verbs mediae و and ی. In the II., III., V., VI. 41. and IX. stems, و and ی are treated as consonants, and the inflexion is the same as that of the strong verb; thus 3. s. m. perf. II of قَالَ (to say) med. و: سَايَرَ, 3. s. m. perf. III of سَارَ (to travel) med. ی: سَايَرَ. In the other stems these verbs are inflected according to the following rules:

Long *ā* takes the place of the middle radical: 42.
in the perf. active of the I., IV., VII., VIII. and *a.*
X. stems, as قَالَ, أَقَالَ, اِنْقَالَ, اِفْتَالَ, اِسْتَقَالَ;
in the imperf. passive of the same stems, as يُقَالُ, يُقَالُ, b.
يُسْتَقَالُ, يُقْتَالُ, يُنْقَالُ;
in the imperf. active of VII. and VIII., as يَنْقَالُ, يُقْتَالُ; *c.*
in the imperf. active of the I. stem of verbs of the *d.*
form فَعَلَ e. g. خَافَ to fear, imperf. يَخَافُ.

43. Long \bar{i} takes the place of the middle radical:
- in the perf. passive of the I., IV., VII., VIII. and X. stems as اُتِّيلَ, اُنْقِيلَ, اُنْقِيلَ, اُنْقِيلَ; اُسْتَقِيلَ, اُسْتَقِيلَ;
 - in the impf. active of IV. und X., as يَسْتَقِيلُ, يَسْتَقِيلُ;
 - in the impf. active of verbs med. ی, as يَسِيرُ.

The corresponding form of verbs med. , on the other hand, takes long \bar{u} , as يَقُولُ.

NOTE. The nature of the phonetic changes just detailed will be more readily understood from the standpoint of the strong verb if it be noted that \bar{a} , \bar{e} , \bar{o} , \bar{u} , \bar{a} , \bar{e} , \bar{o} , \bar{u} pass into \bar{a} ; \bar{a} , \bar{e} , \bar{o} , \bar{u} , \bar{a} , \bar{e} , \bar{o} , \bar{u} into \bar{i} ; \bar{a} into \bar{u} . It is not meant by this that the corresponding strong forms were ever really found, in these verbs, at any period of the language.

44. The whole of the long vowels mentioned in §§ 42—43 are shortened (§ 8) in a shut syllable, e. g.:

2. s. m. perf. act. IV. of قَالَ and سَارَ: أَقَلْتُ and أَسَرْتُ;

3. sing. masc. apoc. impf. pass. I يَقْلُ, يُسِرُّ (with the tone on the last syllable as if contravening § 9).

2. pers. masc. sing. imper. I. of خَافَ (§ 42 d): خَفْ (but plur. خَافُوا);

2. pers. masc. sing. perf. pass. قُلْتُ;

3. pers. sing. masc. apoc. impf. act. IV. يَقْلُ;

2. pers. sing. masc. imper. I: قُلْ, سِرْ.

In the perf. active of I, verbs med. و take *ū* where we should expect *ā*, (cf. فَمَّطَ) as قُلْتَ, while verbs med. ی take *ī*, as سِرَّتْ; *ī* is also found in verbs of the form فَعِلَ, as خَفَّتْ from خَافَ (for a theoretical خَوَفَ).

NOTE a. Instead of the apocop. impf. يَكُنْ &c. from كَانَ, to be, we sometimes find the still shorter form يَكْ.

NOTE b. From a few verbs med. و and ی strong forms are found in stems I., IV., VIII., X.; e. g. IV. أَجَّجَ compel; X. اِسْتَصَوَّبَ to find correct, a denominative form from صَوَّابٌ correct.

For the conjugation of these verbs see paradigms XI—XIV.

Verbs ultimae و and ی. Verbs ultimae و pass into 45. ultimae ی in all the derived stems, and in the perf. and impf. passive of the I stem; thus from غَزَوْ we have 3 s. m. perf. II غَزَى. The same applies to the active of stem I of the form فَعِلَ; thus رَضَوْ becomes رَضِيَ (to have pleasure in).

If the second radical has *ā*, this vowel is changed 46. in every case into a long final *ā*. In order to distinguish ^a the stems ult. ی from those ult. و, this final *ā* is in the former case indicated by ی, in the latter by ا (this applies only to the 3. s. m. perf. act. I). Thus رَمَى to throw, غَرَا carry on a war; but II. رَمَى, غَزَى &c. Similarly

in the imperfects (cf. § 45), e. g. indic. and subj. pass. II (يُرْمَى) (in place of a theoretical يُرْمَى and يُرْمَى); impf. act. I of رَضِيَ, يَرْضَى; impf. act. V. يَتَرَمَّى.

NOTE. With the same reservation as under § 43c note, we would call attention to the fact that the combinations رَـ, يَـ, رُـ, يُـ all pass into long ā.

- b. In all the cases mentioned in the preceding subsection, a diphthong (§ 2a) appears before the inflectional additions that begin with a consonant. Thus:
2. sing. masc. perf. act. I رَمَيْتَ; from عَزَا: عَزَوْتَ; II رَمَيْتَ, عَزَيْتَ, &c.
- c. In the case also of the inflectional additions ū, ūna, īna (and its shortened form ī), the a of the second radical, (after the elision of the third radical) unites with their initial vowel to form a diphthong. Thus:
3. pers. masc. plur. perf. act. I. رَمَوْا, عَزَوْا, do. impf. pass. II. يُرْمَوْنَ, subj. يُرْمَوْا; do. act. I. يَرْضَوْنَ, V. يَتَرَمَّوْنَ; 2. pers. fem. sing. of the last يَتَرَمَّيْنِ, subj. يَتَرَمَّى.
- d. Before the dual terminations ā and āni the last radical of this class of verbs is treated as a strong letter, e. g. 3. pers. perf. act. I. رَمَيَا, عَزَوَا; impf. pass. II. يُرْمَيَانِ &c. By the addition of the termination at,

the 3. pers. fem. sing. of the perfect must originally have ended in *āt*; this ending, however, has now become *at* in accordance with § 8, as غَرَّتْ; رَمَتْ. According to the analogy of the above is also formed the 3. pers. fem. of the dual; thus we find غَرَّتَا, رَمَّتَا (where we should expect غَرَّتَا, رَمَّتَا).

In the impf. active of stem I, verbs ult. و of the 47. form فَعَلَ take an *u*, those ult. ی an *i*, the third^a radical quiescing in these vowels. The ending *u* of the imperf. is lost, e. g. يَغْزُو, يَرْمِي. The imperfections active of the derived forms (with the exception of V and VI) are formed on the model of the last mentioned forms, as II يُغْزِي, يُرْمِي and so on.

NOTE. With the same reservation as under § 43 c note, it may be pointed out that وُ passes into *ū*, يُ into *ī*.

Affixes beginning with a consonant are appended *b*. in every case to the *ī* or the *ū* just mentioned, as 3. pers. fem. plur. impf. I. يَغْزُون, يَرْمِين; similarly in the perf., e. g. 2. sing. masc. perf. pass. رُمِيتَ; do. from سَرَوْتُ I فَعِلَ; رَضِيتَ I فَعِلَ.

If the second radical has *i* or *u*, the third radical *c*. is dropped and the terminations *ū*, *ūna*, *ina* added to the second, e. g. 3. plur. masc. perf. pass. رُمُوا (not

يَغْزُونَ, يَرْمُونَ; 3. plur. masc. impf. act. (رُمُوا), (يَغْزُونَ, يَرْمُونَ); 2. pers. fem. sing. impf. تَغْزِينَ, تَرْمِينَ.

- d. Before the dual endings *ā* and *āni*, as also before the terminations *a* of the 3. sing. masc. perf., *at* of the 3. sing. fem. perf., *atā* of the 3. fem. dual perf., and *a* of the subjunctive, the third radical is treated as a strong letter, if the second has *i* or *u*. Exx: 3. pers. masc. perf. act. سَرَوْ, رَضِيَ; do. pass. رُمِيَ, غَرِيَ; 3. pers. fem. perf. رَضِيَتْ, سَرَوَتْ; 3. pers. masc. dual perf. رَضِيَا; 3. pers. subj. act. I رَضِيْنَا; 3. pers. dual impf. يَغْزَوَانِ, يَرْمِيَانِ.

48. In the apocopated impf. and in the imper. every final *ā*, *i* and *ū* is shortened, as 3. pers. sing. masc. apoc. impf. يَغْزُ, يَرْمُ; 2. imper. ارْضُ, ارْمُ.

For the conjugation of these verbs see paradigms XV—XIX where various forms are given of the verbs غَزَا to carry on war, رَمَى to throw, رَضِيَ to be content, قَضَى to carry out, accomplish.

49. Of verbs doubly weak the following are the principal varieties:

- a. Verbs primæ و and ultimæ ی, as وَقَى to take care of; impf. according to §§ 40 and 47 يَقِي, apoc. يَقِ.

The imper. is properly لِيْ, for which, however, when the word stands alone, i. e. in pause, we write لَيْ.

The verb لِيْ to see, which in the impf. elides *b*. the Hamza, throwing back its vowel *a* to the first radical. Thus يَرَى *yarā* for يَرَى *yar'ā*; 3. pers. pl. يَرَوْنَ; imper. رَ (acc. to *a* رَ), fem. رَى. The IV. form in the sense of 'to show' is similarly inflected: أَرَى for أَرَى, impf. يُرَى for يُرَى; perf. pass. أَرَى for أَرَى and so on.

The verb حَى to live, properly حَى; impf. يَحَى (cf. c. § 2 *d* note) like a verb ult. يَحَى or يَحَى like a verb mediae geminatae; perf. IV أَحَى, perf. X اسْتَحَى or اسْتَحَى also contracted اسْتَحَى (be ashamed).

The verb لَيْسَ 'there is not' (compounded of the 50. negative لَا and an obsolete Arabic noun corresponding to the Hebrew *לֹא*) is inflected as follows:

	Sing.	Dual	Plural
3. masc.	لَيْسَ	لَيْسَا	لَيْسُوا
3. fem.	لَيْسَتْ	لَيْسَتَا	لَيْسْنَ
2. masc.	لَيْسْتَ	لَيْسْتُمَا	لَيْسْتُمْ
2. fem.	لَيْسِيتِ		لَيْسْتُنَّ
1. com.	لَيْسْتُ		لَيْسْنَا

51. The verbs of praise and blame, نَعِمَ to be good and يَسَّ to be bad, which are rarely conjugated, are written as above.
52. The Arab grammarians adduce as special forms the so-called *admirative* forms, that is, forms expressive of admiration. These are strictly the 3. s. m. perf. and 2. pers. imper. of the IV. stem, but have assumed a special signification; so مَا أَفْضَلَ زَيْدًا properly 'what has made Zaid excellent', and أَفْضَلْ بِزَيْدٍ prop. 'make Zaid excellent' both mean: how excellent is Zaid! — The verbs mediæ و and ى may in these forms take the inflection of the strong stems (§ 44 note b) as مَا أَهْوَنُ هَذَا how easy this is!
53. The addition of the *pronominal suffixes* (§ 11 b) alters the form of the verb only to a slight extent.
- The 2. pers. fem. sing. perf. with a suffix receives a long final vowel as ضَرَبْتِنِي.
 - The ا, standing after و ū (§ 2 e), is dropped as قَتَلُوا from قَتَلُوا with the suff. of the 3. pers. sing. masc.
 - The ending تُمْ of the 2. pers. pl. perf. becomes تُمُو (cf. § 12 a, note 1), as قَتَلْتُمُونِي from قَتَلْتُمْ with the suff. of the 1. pers. sing.
 - Before the suffixes to the 1. pers. sing. and plur.,

نِي and نَا, the final *na* of the 2. fem. sing. and 3. and 2. masc. plur. impf. is sometimes dropped (so that these forms become identical with those of the subjunctive and apocopated moods). Ex.: تَضْرِبُنِي alongside of the more common تَضْرِبْنِي thou (fem.) strikest me; يَضْرِبُونَا alongside of the more common يَضْرِبُونَا they strike us.

When the object of an active verb consists of a personal pronoun, and this object is, for the sake of emphasis, made to precede the verb, then instead of the ordinary suffixes appended to the verb the sign of the accusative **إِيَّا** (أَيَّا, إِيَّا) is employed with the suffixes of the noun (with the suff. of 1. pers. sing. **إِيَّايَ**); e. g. **إِيَّاكَ تَعْبُدُ** to *thee* we pray.

The Arabic verb may have two suffixes appended *b.* at the same time, in which case the pronoun of the 1. person precedes those of the 2. and 3. persons, and the pronoun of the 2. person that of the third, as **أَعْطَانِيهِ** he gave it me; frequently, however, in place of the second suffix—more particularly when both pronouns are of the third person — we find the above mentioned periphrasis with **إِيَّاهَا** as **زَوَّجَهُ إِيَّاهَا** he married him to her.

Chapter III. The Noun. (§§ 55—90).

a. The Formation of Nouns.

55. Nouns in the wider sense comprise 1) substantives, 2) adjectives, 3) numerals (§§ 91—93), and 4) pronouns (§§ 12—14). The noun, in the narrower sense, is limited to substantives and adjectives.

Primitive substantives is the name given to such substantives as cannot be derived from a verb. According to the usual arrangement of Arabic dictionaries, it is true, the primitive noun رَأْسٌ, head (*un* affix) for example, is found under the verb رَأَسَ, but this verb is in all its significations denominative. On the other hand, it may fairly be maintained that a noun like رَأْسٌ goes back to a hypothetical triliteral root, ر + أ + س. — In contrast to these primitive nouns, we find a large number of nouns which are derived either from verbs or from other nouns, that is, which are either *deverbals* or *denominatives*. All the forms of the noun are indicated by paradigms from the root فَعَلَ (cf. § 15 ff.); thus we say of رَأْسٌ as of the deverbale infinitive قَتَلَ killing, that it has the form فَعْلٌ.

NOTE. The numerous foreign words which have found their way into Arabic, adapted from Persian and Aramaic, and indirectly from Greek and Latin, have also, to some extent, been reduced to Arabic nominal forms.

A number of nouns do not show the full complement 56. of (three) consonants (see §§ 16 and 90), as دَم blood; ^{a.} with the feminine termination (§ 73): أَمَة a slave-girl; to this group belong also nouns with a prefixed vowel (connective Alif) as اِسْم name, which accordingly must be sought for in the dictionary under س.

Extremely common are the nominal forms with *b.* one short vowel, like فَعْل, فُعْل, فُعْل, e. g. رَجُل foot, according to the form فُعْل. There are also nominal forms with *two short* vowels: فَعْل, فُعْل, فُعْل, فُعْل, فُعْل, e. g. رَجُل a man, NF. فُعْل old age NF. فُعْل.

Next in order we may put nominal forms with *a c.* long vowel either with the first radical فَاعِل or with the second فَعَال, فُعَال, فُعَال, فُعَال, فُعَال, فُعَال, or with both فَاعُول.

Nominal forms with doubling of the second radical *d.* are such as حَيْص chick-pea NF. فُعْل; فَعَال (§ 63 *a*); فُعَال.

NOTE. By their mode of formation these nouns have been raised to the rank of quadriliterals like those in §§ 57—58.

The *preformatives* employed in the formation of 57.

nouns are the following (whose vowels vary according to circumstances): *a*) م cf. §§ 60 and 64. *b*) ن cf. § 61. *c*) ي as يَنْفُورُ fugitive NF. يَفْعُولُ from نَفَرَ to flee. *d*) أَ (cf. §§ 62 *c*; 63 *b*), e. g. أَحْدُوثَةٌ story NF. أَفْعُولَةٌ from the stem حدث.

58. The *affirmatives* or formative additions used in the formation of nouns are: *a*) آء and اِى (see § 74). *b*) اِن (for substantives) or اِن (often to form adjectives) e. g. حَقَّانٌ palpitation of the heart NF. فَعْلَانٌ from حَقَقَ; سَكْرَانٌ drunk NF. فَعْلَانٌ from سَكَرَ. *c*) اُوت (not originally Arabic) as مَلَكُوتٌ kingdom NF. فَعْلُوتٌ, which takes the masc. gend. in Arabic.

59. The *quadriliteral* nouns are denoted by the paradigm فعلل (§ 28) as عَقْرَبٌ scorpion NF. فَعْلَلٌ; صُنْدُوقٌ box NF. فُعْلُولٌ; مَعْسَكَرٌ military camp NF. مُفْعَلَلٌ; خُنْفَسَاءٌ a species of beetle NF. فُعْلَلَاءٌ.

60. From among the rich growth of nominal forms in Arabic a few deverbals and denominatives may be singled out for special attention. Such, of the former class, are the participles and infinitives, whose forms will be found among the paradigms of the verb.

The *participles* — the active is generally named *a.* *nomen agentis*, the passive *nomen patientis* — take the form ^sفَاعِلٌ for the active of the I stem, and for the passive the form ^sمَفْعُولٌ. In all the derived stems the participle is formed by prefixing the syllable ^sمَ; in the active the second radical takes *i*, in the passive *a* (see below). As a rule, however, the active and passive participles of the derived stems take the vowels of the active and passive imperf. with the exception of stems V and VI.

In addition to the participles there is a class of *b.* so-called *verbal adjectives*, which are in part treated as participles; they might be called quasi-participles, as ^sحَسَنٌ beautiful, from ^sحَسَنَ.

The Arabic participles do not in themselves convey *c.* any suggestion of time; hence ^sقَاتِلٌ, for example, may mean 'one who has killed' as well as 'one who is killing', ^sمَقْتُولٌ 'one who ought to be killed' i. e. *interficiendus* as well as *interfectus*.

The Infinitive (*nomen verbi*) assumes various forms **61.** in the I stem, and is therefore specially noted in the *a.* dictionaries under each verb. One of the most common forms is ^sفَعَلَ, as ^sقَتَلَ killing. The infinitives of ^sفَعَلَ

verbs (§ 28), as a rule, take the form ⁵فَعَلٌ, e. g. from ⁵غَضِبَ, ⁵غَضِبٌ the being angry. ⁵فُعُولٌ and ⁵فَعَالٌ are also common forms from intransitive verbs, as ⁵جُلُوسٌ a sitting, from ⁵جَلَسَ; ⁵سَلَامٌ health, from ⁵سَلِمَ. Infinitives are also found with the prefix *ma*, as ⁵دُخُولٌ or ⁵مَدْخَلٌ (for the same verb has frequently more than one form of the infinitive, sometimes with different meanings) from ⁵دَخَلَ to enter.

- b. The infinitive of the II. stem has the form ⁵تَفْعِيلٌ or ⁵تَفْعِلَةٌ (cf. § 57*b*); the inf. of the III. stem the form ⁵فِعَالٌ or ⁵مُفَاعَلَةٌ (which last is identical with the fem. of the passive participle). The infinitives of IV., VII., VIII., IX. and X. are formed by the insertion of a long *ā* before the last radical; before this *ā* every short *a* of the perf. becomes *ī*, as in the IV. stem ⁵إِنْفَعَالٌ. The infinitives of V. and VI. take *u* after the second radical, as V. ⁵تَفَعُّلٌ.

- c. The Arabic infinitives do not contain the idea of time and may be used both in an active and in a passive sense. Thus ⁵قَتْلٌ denotes the circumstance that some one has killed or has been killed, the idea of killing or of being killed.

Synopsis of participles and infinitives

	Partcp. Act.	Partcp. Pass.	Infin.
I.	فَاعِلٌ	مَفْعُولٌ	cf. § 61 a
II.	مُفَعِّلٌ	مُفَعَّلٌ	تَفْعِيلٌ تَفْعِيلَةٌ
III.	مُفَاعِلٌ	مُفَاعَلٌ	فِعَالٌ مُفَاعَلَةٌ
IV.	مُفَعِّلٌ	مُفَعَّلٌ	إِفْعَالٌ
V.	مُتَفَعِّلٌ	مُتَفَعَّلٌ	تَفَعُّلٌ
VI.	مُتَفَاعِلٌ	مُتَفَاعَلٌ	تَفَاعُلٌ
VII.	مُنْفَعِّلٌ	مُنْفَعَّلٌ	إِنْفِعَالٌ
VIII.	مُفْتَعِّلٌ	مُفْتَعَّلٌ	إِفْتِعَالٌ
IX.	مُفَعِّلٌ	— —	إِفْعَالٌ
X.	مُسْتَفَعِّلٌ	مُسْتَفَعَّلٌ	إِسْتِفْعَالٌ
Quadr. I.	مُفَعِّلٌ	مُفَعَّلٌ	فَعْلَلٌ فَعْلَلَةٌ
II.	مُتَفَعِّلٌ	مُتَفَعَّلٌ	تَفَعُّلٌ

As regards *Verbal Adjectives* (cf. § 60 c), the following forms may be specially noted:

The form فَعِيلٌ, which occurs in both an active *a.* and a passive sense; as قَتِيلٌ killed, شَهِيدٌ a witness,

⁹خصيم one who disputes with another (in the sense of ⁹مخاصم part. act. of III).

b. ⁹فَعُولٌ, e. g. ⁹كَذُوبٌ (often an intensive form) given to lying.

c. ⁹أَفْعَلٌ, a form denoting colours and physical defects, as ⁹أَصْفَرٌ yellow; ⁹أَعْرَجٌ lame; ⁹أَعْوَرٌ (with و as a strong letter) one-eyed. For the formation of the feminine, see § 74 b.

63. Arabic has the means of expressing a heightened or intensive form of the root idea. Of such intensive forms the following are examples:

a. ⁹فَعَالٌ intensive form of ⁹فَاعِلٌ and other verbal adjectives, as ⁹كَذَّابٌ (habitually) given to lying. As a denominative this form is in frequent use to denote trades or professions (nomina opificum) as ⁹خَبَّازٌ baker from ⁹خَبَزَ bread.

b. Very frequently there is derived from adjectives the form ⁹أَفْعَلٌ in the sense of an elative (generally so named because including both comparative and superlative), as ⁹حَسَنٌ beautiful, elative: ⁹أَحْسَنٌ more b., most b.; ⁹صَغِيرٌ small, young, elative: ⁹أَصْغَرٌ smaller, younger; smallest, youngest. The elatives, when standing in the predicate, do not admit of inflection for

gender and number, as هُمْ أَفْضَلُ النَّاسِ they are the most excellent of men. When used in a comparative sense, they are mostly undetermined (§ 76 *bc*), and are followed by the preposition مِنْ in the sense of our "than" (properly 'at a distance from', 'measured from'). Used as superlatives, on the other hand, they are generally determined. For the feminine formation see § 74 *b*.

NOTE. No special elative is formed from the words خَيْرٌ good and شَرٌّ bad, which are used as elatives in the form just given. As a matter of fact, the positive of other adjectives as well must sometimes be rendered by our superlative; thus كَبِيرُ النَّاسِ signifies the (absolutely) greatest of men.

To the class of deverbal nouns belong further: 64.

Nouns of place and time formed with the prefix *a*.
 مَ ma, as مَكْتَبٌ the place where one writes, the school; also with the fem. termination مَقْبَرَةٌ a buryingplace.

NOTE. Nouns of place and time from the derived stems take the form of the pass. participle, as مُخْرَجٌ (from the IV. stem of خَرَجَ to go out, of which IV. أَخْرَجَ caus.) the place to which or the time at which something is brought out; مَتَوَّضًا (from V. stem) the place where the ritual washing is performed.

Nomina instrumenti, formed with the prefix مِ mi, ب. as حَلَبٌ milk-pail, from حَلَبَ to milk; مِفْتَاحٌ key, from فَتَحَ to open.

- c. Nomina speciei of the form **فِعْلَةٌ**, as **كِتَبَةٌ** the manner of writing, one's "calligraphy".

65. To the class of denominatives belong especially the nouns of relation and the diminutives.

- a. By means of the termination **ِيّ** (corresponding to the Hebrew יָ, fem. יָה and יָה) there is derived from nouns a group of other nouns which, following the example of the Arabic grammarians, we call *nomina* (adjectiva) *relativa*, i. e. nouns of relation. Thus **أَرْضِيّ** belonging to the earth (**أَرْضٌ**), earthly; **شَامِيّ** belonging to **شَامٌ** (i. e. Syria), a Syrian. The feminine termination is dropped when this ending is added, as **مَكِّيّ** (from **مَكَّةُ**) an inhabitant of Mecca; occasionally we meet with certain changes in the vowels of a word, e. g. **مَدَنِيّ** an inhabitant of Medina, from **الْمَدِينَةُ** Medina; **قُرَشِيّ** a Koreishite, one of the tribe **قُرَيْشٌ**.

- b. By the addition of the feminine ending to nouns of relation there are formed feminines, as **شَامِيَّةٌ** a Syrian woman, but more frequently abstract nouns; as **إِلَهِيَّةٌ** divinity from **إِلَهِيّ** divine, (from **إِلَٰهٌ** God); **جَاهِلِيَّةٌ** heathenism from **جَاهِلِيّ** heathenish, (from **جَاهِلٌ** ignorant).

NOTE. It is usual to indicate the nomina relativa also by paradigms from *قَعَلَ*; thus we say that *أَرْضِي*² is a form *جَاهِلِيَّة*, *فَعَلِي*², a form *فَاعِلِيَّة*².

Diminutives from trilateral nouns take the form 66. *فُعَيْلٌ*, as *عَبِيدٌ* a little slave, servulus, from *عَبْدٌ* slave. From quadrilateral nouns the form is *فُعَيْلٌ*⁵, as *عُقَيْرٌ*⁵ a little scorpion, from *عَقْرَبٌ*⁵ (so *صُوحِبٌ*⁵ diminutive from *صَاحِبٌ*⁵ companion). From quadrilateral nouns with a long vowel between the third and fourth radicals the corresponding form is *فُعَيْلِيلٌ*⁵, as *صُتَيْدِيْقٌ*⁵ diminutive from *صُنْدُوقٌ*⁵ a box. Diminutives are not unfrequently derived also from proper names, as *عُبَيْدُ اللَّهِ* alongside of *عَبْدُ اللَّهِ* 'abdullāhi (Abdallah).

The formation of nouns from stems mediae geminatae and from those with a hamza or the semi-vowels presents many irregularities, for a general idea of which we must refer to the inflection of the corresponding verbal stems. In addition to what is there given the following particulars deserve attention.

For the formation of deverbal nouns from stems mediae geminatae (see § 34 ff.) the following points may be noted:

The second and third radicals are of course con- a.

tracted when the second is without a vowel of its own, as ^٥فَر from ^{٥٥}فَر.

- b. If the first radical has *a*, and the second *i* or *a*, contraction takes place in the participles and infinitives, e. g. part. act. VII of ^٥فَر: ^{٥٥}مُنْفَرٍ contracted from ^{٥٥}مُنْفَرٍ; pass. also ^{٥٥}مُنْفَرٍ from ^{٥٥٥}مُنْفَرٍ. There is no contraction, however, with nouns of the form ^{٥٥}فَعَلٌ, as ^{٥٥٥}دَبَبٌ inf. to be hairy.
- c. According to the rule given in § 35 *b*, from ^{٥٥٥}مَفَرٍ we get ^{٥٥٥}مَفَرٍ; from ^{٥٥٥}مُفَرٍ: ^{٥٥٥}مُفَرٍ.
- d. The act. participle of I is ^{٥٥٥}فَارٍ from ^{٥٥٥}فَارٍ cf. § 8.
- e. Contraction does not take place when a long vowel stands between the last two radicals e. g. ^{٥٥٥}فَرَارٍ, ^{٥٥٥}مَفُورٍ, ^{٥٥٥}فَرِيرٍ.
68. The orthographical rules which apply to the inflection of the verba hamzata (§§ 37 ff.) hold good for the formation of nouns, e. g. ^{٥٥٥}سُؤْلٌ something asked for; ^{٥٥٥}سُؤَالٌ a question, from ^{٥٥٥}سَأَلَ to ask; the part. act. I of ^{٥٥٥}أَثَرَ, to make an impression, is ^{٥٥٥}أَثَرٍ for ^{٥٥٥}أَثَرٍ; ^{٥٥٥}مِثْرَةٌ NF. nomen instrumenti ^{٥٥٥}مِفْعَلَةٌ from ^{٥٥٥}أَثَرَ &c.
69. The primae ٥ stems, which according to § 40 lose
a. their first radical in the impf., lose it also, as a rule,

in the nomen verbi; as compensation the latter receives the feminine termination (§ 73), as from وَعَدَ to promise nomen verbi عِدَّةٌ; from وَدَعَ to allow: دَعَةٌ.

n after the vowel *i* (وِ) coalesces with the latter *b*. to form *ī*, as inf. IV of وَقَعَ fall: إِيْقَاعٌ for إِرْقَاعٌ; مِيلَادٌ time of one's birth NF. مِفْعَالٌ, for مَوْلَادٌ from وَلَدَ.

يُ passes into *ū* (§ 40 c), e. g. part. IV of يَقِظُ *c*. to be awake: مُوقِظٌ for مُيَقِظٌ.

In the inf. of the IV. and X. stems from stems 70. med. و and ي the middle radical disappears; the ^a feminine termination is added as compensation, e. g. إِقْرَالٌ for إِقْرَالٌ.

In the act. part. of stem I the *n* of verbs med. و *b*. becomes *y* and ي (*yi*) is changed into 'i (يَ); as قَاتِلٌ for قَاتِلٌ, سَائِرٌ for سَائِرٌ (for Medda see § 7).

A characteristic formation from these stems is فَيْدٌ; *c*. thus from the stem سَاد med. و we get سَيِّدٌ master, lord; from the stem طَاب med. ي, طَيِّبٌ good.

Nouns formed on the model of فَعْلٌ contain diphthongs (§ 2 a), as سَيِّرٌ, قَوْلٌ.

The place of the second radical (see § 42) is taken *e*. by a long *ā* in the act. participles of stems VII. and

VIII. and in the pass. part. of stems IV., VII., VIII. and X.; e. g. part. pass. IV. ^{مَقَامٌ}, part. act. or pass. VII. ^{مُنْقَامٌ} (from a hypothetical active ^{مُنْقَوْمٌ} pass. ^{مُنْقَوْمٌ}). Also in numerous nominal forms, as ^{دَارٌ} (from a hypothetical ^{دَوَّرٌ} house, from ^{دَارَ} med. و; NF. ^{مَفْعَلٌ} from ^{قال} is ^{مَقَالٌ}, from a hypothetical ^{مَقُولٌ}.

- f. The place of the second radical (see § 43) is taken by a long *ī* in nouns of the type of ^{فَعْلٌ} and ^{فِعْلَةٌ} from med. و and ی e. g. ^{لَيْنٌ} from ^{لَانَ} med. ی to be gentle; ^{مِيتَةٌ} (§ 64c) for ^{مِوتَةٌ} mode of death from med. و; in the form ^{فُعْلٌ} from med. ی, e. g. ^{بَيْضٌ} for ^{بُيْضٌ} white (plur.); ^{مَفْعِلٌ} in the forms from med. ی, e. g. ^{مَسِيرٌ}, walk for ^{مَسِيرٌ}; in the part. act. of the IV. and X. stems from verbs mediae و and ی, e. g. ^{مُسْتَسِيرٌ}, ^{مُقِيمٌ}; in the part. pass. I from med. ی, e. g. ^{مَبِيعٌ} from ^{باعَ}, to sell (mediae ی) for ^{مَبِیُوعٌ}.

- g. The place of the second radical is taken by long *ū* in nouns of the type of ^{فُعْلٌ} from med. و, as ^{نُورٌ} light from ^{نَارٌ}; *ū* may also arise by contraction from *nū* in the pass. part. of the I stem of verbs med. و, as ^{مَقُولٌ} for ^{مَقُولٌ}.

71. In the case of nouns derived from verbs ultimae
a.

و and ی those forms in which the second radical is vowelless are treated like forms from strong stems, as ⁵عَزَوْ ⁵رَمَى inf.

If the second radical has *ä*, there results (cf. § 46 a) *b*. at the end of words a long *ā* (from hypothetical *awu*, *ayu*) which is written كَا or عَى (acc. as last rad. is و or عى), e. g. الْعَصَا the stick, for الْعَصْرُ; الْمَرْعَى the pasture, from رَعَى to feed, for a hypothetical الْمَرْعَى; أَخَى NF. أَفْعَلَ for أَخَى, relative of سَخِي generous, liberal (§ 63 b). The same applies to all the pass. participles of the derived stems. With the nunation, these forms appear as عَصَاً, مَرْعَىً, مُرْمَىً (ptc. pass. IV) in which the original long final vowel, now standing in a syllable closed by the *n* of the nunation, must be pronounced short (§ 8): 'aṣan, mar'an, murman. Long *ā* appears before the feminine termination (cf. § 70 e) as, عَدَاةٌ morning for عَدَوَةٌ; وَفَاةٌ death for وَفِيَةٌ.

If the second radical has short *i*, from *iyu* arises *c*. a long *ī* (cf. § 47 a), e. g. الرَّامِي part. act. I in place of a hypothetical الرَّامِي; and so in the act. participles of the derived forms. If the nunation is added, the result is رَامٍ, *rāmin* &c., in which the عى is dropped even in the written form of the word. *ūyu* is changed

to *iyu*, and consequently with the nunation it likewise becomes *in*; e. g. inf. V. التَّرمِي for التَّرمِي; تَرَمَّ for تَرَمَّ. In the act. part. of stem I from verbs ult. و, *inun* is changed to *iyun*, and consequently with the nunation further to *in*, e. g. الْغَارِي for الْغَارِي; with the nunation غَارِي. Before *ā* and *ā* (cf. § 47 d), on the other hand, the third radical retains its consonantal value; thus the inf. of stem II, according to the form most in use with verbs med. و and ی viz. تَغْرِية, تَرْمِية (§ 61), is: تَغْرِية, تَرْمِية.

- d. After *ā*, *yu* and *nu* become 'u; *yun*, and *nun* become 'un, in each case with the hamza, e. g. السَّرَاء for السَّرَاء with the nunation سَرَاء inf. I of سَرَو to be noble; الْأَرْمَاء for الْأَرْمَاء, with the nunation أَرْمَاء inf. IV for أَرْمَاء.
- e. If the second radical has a long *ū*, the forms from verbs ultimae و are formed regularly; thus the pass. part. I of غَزَا is مَغْزُو (for مَغْزُو) *mağzūnun*. From verbs ultimae ی, on the other hand, *ūyun* is changed to *īyun*, e. g. مَرْمِي (from مَرْمِي) *marmīyun*, so from مَضَى go away inf. مَضَى for مَضَى NF. فَعُول.
- f. If the second radical has a long *ī*, the forms from

verbs ultimae ⁹ are formed regularly, e. g. NF. ⁹فَعِيلٌ from ⁹وَلِيٌّ: ⁹وَلِيٌّ saint (for ⁹وَلِيٌّ) *waliyūn*. From verbs ultimae ⁹, on the other hand, *īwun* is changed into *īyun*, as ⁹عَلِيٌّ *‘aliyūn* high from ⁹عَلِيٌّ.

b. *The Gender of Nouns.*

Arabic has two genders, a masculine and a feminine 72. ine. A number of words are sometimes masculine sometimes feminine, in other words are of the common gender. Words which denote female beings, collectives, countries, cities, winds, parts of the body occurring in pairs, and others, are in themselves feminine without requiring the feminine termination. The gender of such words is in each case noted in the dictionaries.

As an outward and visible sign of the feminine 73. we find most frequently the ending ⁹ـَة *atun* (or ^aـُ *a*. *atu* § 79), e. g. ⁹قَاتِلَةٌ (NF. ⁹فَاعِلَةٌ), fem. of ⁹قَاتِلٌ killing; ⁹مَلِكَةٌ (NF. ⁹فَعَلَةٌ) queen, from ⁹مَلِكٌ; ⁹رَاضِيَةٌ fem. of masc. ⁹رَاضٍ (§ 71 c) content, ⁹فَتَاةٌ (NF. ⁹فَعَلَةٌ) maid, from ⁹فَتًى (§§ 71 b and 2 d) youth. Many substantives are found only with the feminine ending, as ⁹جَنَّةٌ an orchard.

NOTE. As a rarity, the feminine ending is found, particularly in the Qur’ān, written with ت, e. g. ⁹نِعْمَتُ اللَّهِ the grace of God (for ⁹نِعْمَةٌ).

- b. A number of masc. nouns are found with the feminine ending, as خَلِيفَةٌ^s Caliph, طَلْحَةُ^s Talḥa (proper name of a man, see p. 8, note 2). On the other hand, there are nouns which, as being essentially feminine, do not require the feminine termination, as عَاثِرٌ^s barren (referring to a woman).
- c. The feminine ending ة^s is occasionally appended to common or class nouns in order to indicate a single individual (nomen unitatis), as ذَهَبَةٌ^s a gold piece, from ذَهَبٌ^s gold; حَمَامَةٌ^s a dove, from حَمَامٌ^s doves (collective). The termination ة^s is also used for the formation of the so-called nomina vicis, i. e. nouns that express the doing of an action *once*, as قَعْدَةٌ^s a single sitting down, from قَعَدَ to sit down.
- d. The feminine termination, again, serves to form substantives from adjectives, as سَاقِيَةٌ^s conduit-pipe, water-channel, from the part. I of سَقَى to water. Connected probably with this is the feminine ending which forms intensives, as عَلَّامَةٌ^s a very learned person, from the adjective عَلَّامٌ § 63 a.
- e. Collective nouns are also formed by means of the feminine termination, e. g. from رَكَّاضٌ^s a courier, coll. رَكَّاضَةٌ^s; صُوفِيٌّ^s (§ 65 a) Sūfī (mystic), coll. صُوفِيَّةٌ^s.

Other feminine terminations are: 74.

The termination **ـى**; it goes to form feminines *a.* of the type **فَعْلَى**, e. g. **سَكْرَى** fem. of **سَكْرَانُ**, drunk, (§ 58 *b*); feminines of the nominal form (NF.) **فُعْلَى** from elatives (§ 63 *b*), e. g. **صُغْرَى** fem. of **أَصْغَرُ** smaller, **أُولَى** from **أَوَّلُ** the first, and substantives like **دُنْيَا** world (§ 2 note), which is properly a feminine to the elative **أَدْنَى**, that which is nearer at hand; also feminines of the NF. **فِعْلَى**, e. g. from **أَحَدٌ** one, fem. **إِحْدَى**; subst. **ذِكْرَى** remembrance.

The ending **ـَاءَ**; it goes to form, more especially, *b.* adjectives of the NF. **فَعْلَاءَ** from **أَفْعَلُ** (§ 62 *c*), e. g. **صَفْرَاءَ** fem. yellow; **عَوْرَاءَ** fem. one-eyed, but also substantives, as **صَحْرَاءَ** desert.

c. Inflection of the Noun.

Arabic has three *numbers*: singular, dual and 75. plural. Of the last, there are two different kinds; the one, the ordinary plural, properly so called, also known as the pluralis sanus or the outer plural, which originally denoted rather a number of separate persons and things; the other, the collective plural, also called the inner or broken plural (see §§ 86 ff.), which denotes

rather a continuous mass, in which the individual member is not distinguished. At present we shall deal only with the first-named. Arabic distinguishes three cases: Nominative, Genitive, and Accusative.

76. The terminations of the dual and the pluralis
 a. sanus are as follows:

Dual nominative	ـَانِ (cf. § 33)
„ genitive and accusative	ـَيْنِ (cf. ٥٠—)
Plural mascul. nominative	ـُونَ (cf. § 33)
„ „ gen.-accus.	ـِينَ (cf. ٥٠—)
„ femin. nominative	ـَاتٌ (cf. ٦١)
„ „ gen.-accus.	ـَاتٍ

Before these terminations the flectional endings of the sing. are dropped; the ة of the feminine ending is changed to ت before the dual termination, (as it is before the pronominal suffixes appended to the singular), e. g. ^٩جَارِيَةٌ, dual جَارِيَتَانِ.

- b. By the addition of the terminations exhibited above is formed the plural of many adjectives, in particular, and also of a number of substantives. In the formation of the plural we find substantives with the feminine ending taking the sign of the masculine plural (as ^٩سَنَةٌ year, plur. سِنُونَ); much more fre-

quently, however, substantives without the sign of the feminine in the singular are found forming their plural by means of the feminine termination, e. g. ⁹حَال condition, plur. ⁹حَالَات, ⁹سَمَاء heaven, plur. ⁹سَمَآت (with the original wāw restored § 71 *d*), also written ⁹سَمَوَات.

As regards the case inflection of the singular, it 77. is necessary to distinguish between the so-called nomina triptota or triptotes, *i. e.* nouns which are inflected for all three cases, and the so-called nomina diptota or diptotes, *i. e.* nouns which cannot be thus fully inflected. The latter never receive the nunation, and unless they are determined by the article or by a following genitive, they are inflected for only two cases.

The following are the case-endings of the triptote *a*. noun: Nom. sing. ⁹ *un*, Gen. sing. ⁹ *in*, Acc. sing. ⁹ *an*. With the feminine termination ⁹ only is written instead of ⁹ as رَجُلًا, but مَدِينَةً; so فَتًى and عَصَا (cf. § 3 *b*).

The case-endings of the diptote noun are: Nom. *b*. sing. ⁹ *u*, Gen. and Accus. Sing. ⁹ *a*.

In the dictionary the triptotes are distinguished from the diptotes by being always written with the

nunation, as رَجُلٌ a man, while the latter are always without it, as أَسْوَدٌ black.

78. Whole classes of nouns are always diptote. Such are

- a. 1) all proper names that are either feminine or have the feminine termination, as زَيْتَبُ, مَيْيَّةُ as names of women; مَسَلَمَةُ as name of a man. To these must be added the majority of such proper names as are of foreign origin, e. g. إِبْرَاهِيمُ Abraham, يُوسُفُ Joseph, مُوسَى Moses (but monosyllables like نُوحُ Noah are mostly triptote).
- b. 2) Many so-called broken plurals; cf. § 88 Nos. 18, 19, 20; § 89 Nos. 23 24, 25, 27, 29;
- c. 3) adjectives of the form أَفْعَلٌ (§ 62c; § 63b);
- d. 4) adjectives of the form فَعْلَانُ (§ 58b), which form their fem. like فَعْلَى, e. g. غَضَبَانُ angry, fem. غَضَبَى.
- e. 5) Feminines formed by the terminations ـَى or ـَاءُ (§ 74). Cf. also the broken plurals referred to under b, §§ 88, 19 and 89, 29.

79. The inflection of the singular of all nouns and of the plural of feminines varies according as a noun is *determined* or *undetermined*.

- a. All proper names are in themselves determined as مُحَمَّدٌ muḥammadun Muhammed; أَحْمَدُ aḥmadu

Ahmed; such proper names are treated either as triptotes or as diptotes according as their form and the custom of the language may determine; many of them always take the article, as **الْحَارِثُ**.

Common or class nouns are determined:

- 1) by the article; as **فَرَسٌ** a horse, **الْفَرَسُ** the horse. *b.*
- 2) by the addition of a following genitive, which *c.* may be either a noun or a pronominal suffix, whereby the nomen regens is put in the *construct state*; as **فَرَسٌ** **الرَّجُلِ** the horse of the man, **فَرَسُهُ** his horse.

The case-endings of a noun determined (1) by the prefixing of the article, or (2) by a genitive following—and the same applies to proper names with the article—are distinguished as follows from those of the undetermined noun:

Singular nom. **فَرَسٌ**, Gen. **فَرَسٍ**, Acc. **فَرَسًا**.

Plural fem. nom. **فَرَسَاتٌ**, Gen.-Acc. **فَرَسَاتٍ**.

i. e. the nunation is always dropped. These endings are assumed not merely by all triptotes, but also by the diptotes, when determined by the article or a genitive following: e. g. Nom. **أَسْوَدٌ**, Gen.-Acc. **أَسْوَدٍ**; but Nom. **الْأَسْوَدُ**, Gen. **الْأَسْوَدِ**, Acc. **الْأَسْوَدَ**.

Before a following genitive (which acc. to § 79 c 80. may be either a noun or a pronominal suffix) the

terminations ن of the dual and ن of the plural are dropped, thus:

Dual Nom. of عَبْدَانِ : عَبْدَانِ, but عَبْدَا الْوَزِيرِ the two slaves of the Vizier.

Dual Gen.-Acc. عَبْدَيْنِ, but ضَرَبْتُ عَبْدَيَّ عَمَرَ I have beaten the two slaves of Omar (before a connective Alif thus: عَبْدَيَّ الْوَزِيرِ, cf. § 6 e).

Plural Nom. of قَصَّابٌ butcher, executioner قَصَّابُونَ, but قَصَّابُو الْمَلِكِ the executioners of the king.

Plural Gen.-Acc. قَصَّابِينَ, but رَأَيْتُ قَصَّابِي الْمَلِكِ I have seen the executioners of the king.

For the inflection of the noun see paradigms XX and XXI, where will be found the forms of the masculine triptote قَصَّابٌ an executioner, the masculine diptote آخَرُ another, the feminine triptote سَاعَةٌ hour, and the feminine diptote مَيَّةٌ Mayya (name of a woman).

81. In the case of nouns derived from stems ultimae^a و and ي when the second radical has a short vowel the nunation, acc. to § 71 b c, is taken by this vowel of the second radical.

b. Nouns ending in *an* or *ā* are unchangeable for all three cases; those in *in* or *ī*, on the other hand, take the *an* of the nunation, as well as the simple *a* (§ 47 d) as الرَّامِي, الرَّامِيَا.

Before the dual terminations (cf. § 46 *d*) the last *c*. radical is treated as a strong letter, as مَرْعِيَانِ, عَصَوَانِ, رَامِيَانِ.

In the plural the last radical is dropped before *d*. the terminations *ūna* and *īna*, which, when joined to an *a* of the second radical, produce diphthongs (§ 46 *c*); thus from مَرْمِيَنَّ, مَرْمَوَنَّ: مَرْمِيَّ; if the second radical has *i*, the terminations are added immediately to the former (§ 47 *c*), as رَامِيَنَّ, رَامَوَنَّ.

For the inflection of these nouns see paradigm No. XXII, where will be found the forms of the triptote قَاضٍ judge, the triptote مُصْطَفًى (ult. ى) chosen one (often as a proper name), the triptote عَصَا (ult. و) a stick, the diptote ذِكْرَى remembrance, and the diptote دُنْيَا world (vgl. § 74 *a*).

For the forms of the pronominal suffixes see 82. § 12 *b—d*.

Before the pronom. suffix of the 1. pers. sing. the *a*. short case-endings of the construct state are dropped, as قَضَائِي. The said suffix after a final *ā*, *i* or *ai* becomes يَ (*ya*), as with the nom. dual قَضَائِيَّ, with فتَيَّ (§ 2 *d*; 81 *a*); with the gen.-acc. plur. قَضَائِيَّ; with قَائِيَّ (§ 81 *a*): قَائِيَّ; with gen.-acc. dual قَضَائِيَّ.

the stem end in ā, i, ai
Q - 1 not a -

NOTE. In the case of words which end in ²ـى, the suffix may either be attached in the usual way, e. g. from بُنَى "sonny", بُنَى, or appended to the shortened form ²ـى, e. g. بُنَى from بُنَى and ²ـى.

- b. The final *ū* of the construct state of the plural masc. is changed to *ī* before the appended ²ـى (cf. § 71e), thus قَصَابِر becomes قَصَابِي, and then with the suffix of the 1. pers. sing. قَصَابِي (no longer to be distinguished from the genit. and accus. plural). The same applies to the ending *au* from stems ult. ²ـى (see parad. XXII), e. g. مُصْطَفَر becomes مُصْطَفِي, with the suffix مُصْطَفِي (also identical with the genitive-accusative form).

For the union of the noun with the suffixes see paradigm XXIII. For the change before suff. of final ² into ت see § 76a.

83. In the pluralis sanus of substantives of a masc. or fem. nominal form with one short vowel (that is, of any of the following types ²فَعْل, ²فِعْل, ²فُعْل and ²فَعْلَة, ²فِعْلَة, ²فُعْلَة) the second radical frequently receives a *complementary vowel* which is either identical with that of the first radical or is short *ā*. Thus أَرْض earth, plur. أَرْضُونَ, more rarely أَرْضُون, and أَرْضَات, more rarely أَرْضَات; ظُلْمَة darkness, plur. ظُلُمَات alongside

of **طَلَمَاتٌ** and **طَلَمَاتٌ**. This is a favourite method in the case of the plural of the form **فَعَلَةٌ**, as **طَعْنَةٌ** (§ 73c) a single thrust or blow; plur. **طَعْنَاتٌ** several thrusts or blows.

Before **ابْنِ** a son, a proper name loses its nuna- 84. tion in the case mentioned § 6f 2, and **ابْنِ** is itself written without the prosthetic ا, e. g. **مُسْلِمُ بْنُ الْوَلِيدِ** *muslimu-bnu-lwalīdi* Muslim, the son of al-Walīd. **زَيْدُ بْنُ بَشْرٍ** *zaiduni-bnu bischrin* (§ 6e) means, on the other hand, Zaid is the son of Bishr (nominal sentence).

After **يَا** the particle of address, the simple noun 85. follows in the nominative without the nunation, as **يَا مُحَمَّدُ** Muhammed, **يَا رَجُلُ** Oh M.! **يَا رَجُلُ** Oh man! (by which a definite person is hailed). But should anything of the nature of a complement (a genitive, for instance) be added to the noun in the vocative, the name of the person addressed must be put in the accusative, as **يَا عَبْدَ اللَّهِ : عَبْدُ اللَّهِ** o Abdallah! (Oh servant of God!); **يَا بَنِي كِنْدَةَ** Oh Banu Kinda! i. e. members of the tribe of Kinda (here **بَنِي** cf. § 80 and 90b is the constr. state of **بَنِينَ**). If an Object follows, the noun stands in the accus. with the nunation, as

يَا رَايِبَا الْحَمْرَاءِ Oh thou that ridest the red mare! —
 The particle أَيُّهَا (before which we may also have يَا) is always followed by a nominative with the article, as يَا أَيُّهَا النَّاسُ Oh ye people!

NOTE. After يَا, which serves as the expression of pain and sorrow, a long ā is appended to the noun; in pause يَا أُمُّ, as يَا أُمَّةً Oh mother!

86. There are, in Arabic, a mass of words which, though singular in form, have a *collective* signification. The following varieties may be singled out under this head:

- a. Simple collectives (masc. gen.) such as قَوْمٌ, which denotes not merely 'a people' collectively, but also 'people' as individuals; عَسْكَرٌ an army and also the individual soldiers thereof. From such words broken plurals may be formed.
- b. Names of the inhabitants of a country, as الْيَهُودُ the Jews, often coinciding with the name of the country itself, as الْهِنْدُ the Hindus; a single Jew or Hindu is called يَهُودِيٌّ, هِنْدِيٌّ § 65 a.
- c. Class names (masc. gen.) from which are formed nomina unitatis (§ 73 c) as حَمَامٌ doves.
- d. So-called quasi-plurals (masc. gen.), from which no nomen unitatis is formed, as رَكْبٌ a company of

horsemen (a single one رَاكِبٌ); خَدَمٌ the domestics (one of which is خَادِمٌ); حَيِيرٌ a number of asses (one ass حِمَارٌ); عَبِيدٌ slaves (from عَبْدٌ).

The so-called *broken plurals* (plurales fracti in the 87. language of the native grammarians—by German ^a scholars by preference called ‘inner plurals’ because due to changes in the body of the word) are also strictly speaking nothing more than collectives. Hence they are treated in Arabic as singular nouns of the feminine gender and construed accordingly. Thus أَبْوَابٌ مُتَفَرِّقَةٌ different gates, where أَبْوَابٌ is the broken plural of بَابٌ (on the model of أَفْعَالٌ), and the participle act. V. of فَرَّقَ is put in the fem. sing.—These broken plurals, further, take the same inflection as the singulars, discussed in § 77 ff.

As a rule the broken plurals are given in the *b*. dictionaries alongside of the singular of their respective nouns; when this is not so, it is to be presumed that the word either has no plural or takes a pluralis sanus. Sometimes we find from one and the same word more than one plural; in such a case, not unfrequently, a word varies its plural as its meaning varies. Certain of the broken plurals are, as a rule, confined to certain specified singulars.

88. From nouns regarded as containing three consonants the following broken plurals may be formed:

1. ⁹فُعْلٌ from ⁹أَفْعَلٌ (§ 62 c) and its fem. ⁹فَعْلَاءٌ (§ 74 b), as ⁹حُمْرٌ from ⁹أَحْمَرٌ red; ⁹سُودٌ (cf. § 70 g) from ⁹أَسْوَدٌ black; ⁹بَيْضٌ (for ⁹بَيِّضٌ cf. § 70 f) from ⁹أَبْيَضٌ white.

2. ⁹فُعْلٌ from various singulars, as ⁹كُتُبٌ from ⁹كِتَابٌ book.

3. ⁹فُعْلٌ from sing. ⁹فِعْلَةٌ, as ⁹قُطْعٌ from ⁹قِطْعَةٌ piece.

4. ⁹فُعْلٌ mostly from sing. ⁹فِعْلَةٌ, as ⁹عُكَبٌ from ⁹عُكْبَةٌ box; ⁹أُمَمٌ from ⁹أُمَّةٌ people; occasionally from ⁹فِعْلَةٌ, as ⁹قُرَى (for ⁹قَرْيٌ acc. to § 71 b) from ⁹قَرْيَةٌ place.

5. ⁹فِعْلَةٌ, as ⁹إِخْوَةٌ from ⁹أَخٌ brother.

6. ⁹فِعْلَةٌ esp. from sing. ⁹فَاعِلٌ, as ⁹كِمَلَةٌ from ⁹كَامِلٌ perfect; but also from ⁹فَيْلٌ § 70 c, as ⁹سَادَةٌ (for ⁹سَيِّدَةٌ) from ⁹سَيِّدٌ lord.

7. ⁹فِعْلَةٌ (rare) as ⁹قِرْدَةٌ from ⁹قِرْدٌ monkey.

8. ⁹فِعْلَةٌ from ⁹فَاعِلٌ ult. ⁹ى, as ⁹قُضَاةٌ (for ⁹قُضَيَّةٌ § 71 b) from ⁹قَاضٍ judge.

9. ⁹فِعَالٌ very common, from various singulars, as ⁹قِدَاحٌ from ⁹قِدْحٌ arrow.

10. ⁶فُعُول very common, also from various singulars, as ⁶جُنُود from ⁶جُنْد band of soldiers; ²بُكُوى (for ²بُكوى see § 71 e) and then (with change of u to i) ⁵يُكوى from ⁵بَاك weeping.

11. ⁹فِعَالَة (rare) as ⁹جَارَة from ⁹جَر stone.

12. ⁹فُعُولَة (rare) as ⁹عُمُومَة from ⁹عَم uncle.

13. ⁹فُعُل from ⁹فَاعِل, as ⁹بُهَل from ⁹بَاهِل an unbranded she-camel.

14. ⁹فُعَال from ⁹فَاعِل, as ⁹كُتَاب from ⁹كَاتِب scribe.

15. ⁹أَفْعُل from various singulars, as ⁹أَرْجُل from ⁹رِجْل foot.

16. ⁹أَفْعَلَة from various singulars, as ⁹أَرْغَفَة from ⁹رَغِيف a cake, ⁹أَحَبَة (§ 67 c) from ⁹حَبِيب beloved; ⁹أَئِمَة from ⁹إِمَام president; ⁹آلِهَة from ⁹إِلَه God.

17. ⁹أَفْعَال very common, from various singulars, as ⁹أَمْطَار from ⁹مَطَر rain; ⁹أَشْيَاء (always without the nunation) from ⁹شَيْ thing.

18. ⁹أَفْعَلَاء esp. from ⁹فَعِيل, as ⁹أَقْرَبَاء from ⁹قَرِيب relative; ⁹أَغْنِيَاء from ⁹غَنِي rich.

19. ⁹فَعَلَى (rare), as ⁹جَرَحَى from ⁹جَرِيح wounded.

20. ^{فُعَلَاءُ}, as ^{شُعَرَاءُ} from ^{شَاعِرٌ} poet.
 21. ^{فُعَلَانٌ}, as ^{فُتَيَانٌ} from ^{فَتًى} youth; ^{جِيرَانٌ}
 (for ^{جُورَانٌ} cf. § 69*b*) from ^{جَارٌ} neighbour.
 22. ^{فُعَلَانٌ}, as ^{بُلْدَانٌ} from ^{بَلَدٌ} district; ^{فُرْسَانٌ}
 from ^{فَارِسٌ} rider; ^{سُودَانٌ} negroes from ^{أَسْوَدٌ} black.

NOTE. Forms 5 and 15—17 are used, as a rule, only of a number of objects not exceeding ten (hence called pluralia paucitatis).

89. From nouns with more than three radical consonants (cf. § 56*d ff.*) are formed plurals in which the first consonant takes *ā*, the second *ā* and the third *i*. Such plurals are diptotes with the exception of all those derived from stems ult. ^ى (or with an additional ^ى in the sing. § 74*a*) which take the nunation *in* in the nominative and genitive, but not in the accusative which ends in ^ى. The forms of the singular of Nos. 24 (cf. also ^{صُورَجِبٌ} § 66) and 25 are regarded as quadriliterals. No. 29 ends in long *ā* and is diptote. The following are the principal varieties:

23. ^{فُعَالِلٌ} as ^{جَنَادِبٌ} from ^{جُنْدَبٌ} (NF. ^{فُعَلَلٌ}) locust. This form is also found from nouns that are only in a special sense quadriliterals, inasmuch as they are really triliterals with the addition of a

formative consonant; examples of this group are:
 a) أَفَاعِلُ, as أَفَامِلُ from أَفْمَلَةٌ (NF. أَفْعَلَةٌ) fingertip;
 also from elatives used as substantives, such as أَكْبَارُ the great ones from أَكْبَرُ elat. of كَبِيرٌ; b) تَفَاعِلُ
 as تَجَارِبُ from تَجَرَّبَةٌ (NF. تَفَعَّلَةٌ) experience; c) مَفَاعِلُ
 as مَرَابِلُ from مَرَبَلَةٌ (NF. مَفْعَلَةٌ) dung-heap; مَعَايِشُ
 (with مِ, not with مِ) from مَعِيشَةٌ (NF. مَفْعِلَةٌ) livelihood;
 مَعَانٍ (acc. مَعَانِي) of مَعْنَى (NF. مَفْعَلٌ) idea.

24. فَوَاعِلُ especially from فَاعِلَةٌ and فَاعِلٌ (used
 as a substantive), as صَوَاعِقُ from صَاعِقَةٌ thunder-clap;
 فَوَارِسُ from فَارِسٌ rider; خَوَاصُّ (for خَوَاصُّ § 67 b)
 from خَاصٌّ person of distinction; جَوَارٍ (acc. جَوَارِي)
 from جَارِيَةٌ a female slave.

25. فَعَائِلُ from such nominal forms with a long
 vowel after the second radical as have a feminine
 form or signification, as a) جَنَائِزُ from جِنَازَةٌ funeral
 obsequies; b) عَجَائِبُ from عَجِيبَةٌ miracle; c) عَرَائِسُ
 from عَرُوسٌ bride.

26. فَعَالٍ as فِتَاوٍ from فِتْوَى (N. F. فَعْلَى) decision.

27. فَعَالِيلُ from quadriliteral nouns with a long
 vowel before the last consonant, as عَنَاقِيدُ from عُنُقُودٌ

(N. F. ^{فُعُولٌ}) bunch of fruit; this form is also found with nouns derived from trilateral stems, of which the following are specimens: a) ^{أَفَاعِيلُ} as ^{أَحَادِيثُ} from ^{أُحْدِثْتُ} (NF. ^{أَفْعُولَةٌ}) story; b) ^{تَفَاعِيلُ} as ^{تَصَارِيفُ} from ^{تَصَرِّفُ} (infinitive ^{تَفْعِيلُ} used as a noun) turn; c) ^{مَفَاعِيلُ} as ^{مَقَادِيرُ} from ^{مَقْدُورٌ} (participle ^{مَفْعُولٌ} used as a noun) fate; but also ^{فَوَاعِيلُ} (cf. No. 24) as ^{فَوَاعِيلُ} from ^{جَاسُوسٌ} (NF. ^{فَاعُولٌ}) spy.

28. ^{فَعَالِلَةٌ}, from quadrilateral nouns denoting living beings, as ^{جَبَابِرَةٌ} from ^{جَبَّارٌ} (NF. ^{فَعَّالٌ}) a mighty man; ^{أَسَاقِفَةٌ} from ^{أَسَقَفٌ} bishop; ^{تَلَامِيذَةٌ} from ^{تَلَمَّذَ} pupil; ^{بَغَادِدِيٌّ} from ^{بَغْدَادِيٌّ} a native of Bagdad.

29. ^{فَعَالَى}, as ^{صَحَارَى} from ^{صَحْرَاءُ} desert; ^{هَدَايَا} (for ^{هَدَايَى} § 2 d note b) from ^{هَدِيَّةٌ} (NF. ^{فَعِيلَةٌ} from ult. ^ي) present.

90. The following nouns (arranged in alphabetical order) are more or less irregular in their mode of inflection:

- a. ^{أَبٌ} father, ^{أَخٌ} brother and ^{حَمٌ} father-in-law take the following forms in the construct state and before suffixes beginning with a consonant:

Nominative	أَبُو, أَخُو, حَمُو
Genitive	أَبِي, أَخِي, حَمِي
Accusative	أَبَا, أَخَا, حَمَا

The Dual of ^sأَب is ^sأَبَوَانِ (i. e. the two parents), the plur. ^sأَبَاءَ (§ 88 No. 17). The vocative singular with suff. of the 1. pers. sing. of ^sأَب is يَا أَبَتِي, يَا أَبَتَ from ^sأَخِي: أَخِي; with suffix of the 2. pers. masc. sing. أَخُوكَ, أَبُوكَ.

^sابْن son; plur. sanus has nom. ^sبَنُونَ (construct b. ^sبَنُو), gen.-acc. ^sبَنِينَ (st. constr. ^sبَنِي); broken plur. ^sأَبْنَاءَ (§ 88, 17).

^sأَخ brother, see *a*; broken plur. ^sإِخْوَة, ^sإِخْوَان c. (§ 88, 5. 21).

^sأَخْت sister; plur. ^sأَخَوَات d.

^sإِمْرَأ or ^sإِمْرُو (also ^sمَرء) man; gen. ^sإِمْرِي; acc. ^sإِمْرَأ e.

^sإِمْرَأَة woman; plur. from another root ^sنِسَاء f.

^sنِسْوَة or ^sنِسْوَان (§ 88, 9. 5. 21).

^sأُم mother; plur. ^sأُمَّهَات or ^sأُمَّات g.

^sإِنْسَان man, human being; plur. ^sأَنَاس h.

^sنَاس.

- i. ^سبِنْتُ daughter, frequently also ^سابْنَةٌ (with connective Alif); plur. ^سبَنَاتٌ.
- k. ^سدِينَارٌ dinar, gold-piece; broken plur. irregular, ^سدَنَانِيرٌ.
- l. ^سذُو (only in the st. constr.) possessor of ; gen. ^سذِي, acc. ذَا; fem. ذَاتٌ; dual nom. ذَوَا; plur. nom. ذَوُو (gen.-acc. ذَوِي) fem. ذَوَاتٌ; for the plural ^سأُولُو (ūlū), gen.-acc. ^سأُولِي is used.
- m. ^سسَنَةٌ year; plur. nom. ^سسِنُونَ (or ^سسُنُون); gen.-acc. ^سسِنِينَ.
- n. ^سعَمْرُو ‘amrun, ‘Amr, proper name of a man. A و is added to the written form of this word in the nom. and gen. (عَمْرُو) to distinguish it from ^سعَمْرُ ‘amaru (a diptote). Acc. عَمْرًا; followed by ^سبْن it is written ^سعَمْرُو and pronounced ‘amra-bna.
- o. ^سفَم or ^سفُوه mouth; st. constr. usually nom. ^سفُو, gen. فِي, acc. فَا; broken plur. (§ 88,17) ^سأَفْوَاهٌ.
- p. ^سلَيْلٌ night; broken plur. (from the root لَيْلِي) ^سلَيَالٍ (§ 89,23).
- q. ^سمَاءٌ water; broken plur. ^سمِيَاهٌ or ^سأَمْوَاهٌ (§ 88,9.17).

- ⁹يَد hand; broken plur. (§ 88,15) ⁹أَيْدٍ from ⁹أَيْدِي r.
(cf. § 71 c).
⁹يَوْم day; broken plur. ⁹أَيَّام from ⁹أَيَّام (§ 88,17). s.

Chapter IV. The Numerals. (§§ 91—93.)

The cardinal numbers have the following forms: 91.

	Masc.	Fem.	
1	⁹ وَاحِدٌ ⁹ أَحَدٌ	⁹ وَاحِدَةٌ ⁹ إِحْدَى	inflected "
2	⁹ إِثْنَانِ	⁹ إِثْنَتَانِ	(inflected as a dual)
3	⁹ ثَلَاثٌ (⁹ ثَلَاثُ)	⁹ ثَلَاثَةٌ (⁹ ثَلَاثُ)	inflected
4	⁹ أَرْبَعٌ	⁹ أَرْبَعَةٌ	"
5	⁹ خَمْسٌ	⁹ خَمْسَةٌ	"
6	⁹ سِتٌّ	⁹ سِتَّةٌ	"
7	⁹ سَبْعٌ	⁹ سَبْعَةٌ	"
8	⁹ ثَمَانٍ (see p. 27*)	⁹ ثَمَانِيَةٌ	"
9	⁹ تِسْعٌ	⁹ تِسْعَةٌ	"
10	⁹ عَشْرٌ	⁹ عَشْرَةٌ	"
11	⁹ أَحَدٌ عَشَرَ	⁹ إِحْدَى عَشْرَةَ	indeclinable 6*

	Masc.	Fem.	
12	إِثْنَا عَشَرَ	إِثْنَتَا عَشْرَةَ	gen.-acc. "إِثْنَى ٥", "إِثْنَتَى ٥"
13	ثَلَاثَةَ عَشَرَ	ثَلَاثَ عَشْرَةَ	indeclinable
14	أَرْبَعَةَ عَشَرَ	أَرْبَعَ عَشْرَةَ	"
15	خَمْسَةَ عَشَرَ	خَمْسَ عَشْرَةَ	"
16	سِتَّةَ عَشَرَ	سِتَّ عَشْرَةَ	"
17	سَبْعَةَ عَشَرَ	سَبْعَ عَشْرَةَ	"
18	ثَمَانِيَةَ عَشَرَ	ثَمَانِيَ عَشْرَةَ	"
19	تِسْعَةَ عَشَرَ	تِسْعَ عَشْرَةَ	"
20	عِشْرُونَ		inflected, like all the tens, as a pluralis sanus.
21	إِحْدَى وَعِشْرُونَ	أَحَدٌ وَعِشْرُونَ	
30	ثَلَاثُونَ	أَرْبَعُونَ	40, 50, 60, خَمْسُونَ, سِتُّونَ
70	سَبْعُونَ	ثَمَانُونَ	80, 90, تِسْعُونَ
100	مِائَةٌ		(also written مِئَةٌ, and always so pronounced, <i>mi'atun</i> , the having no effect on the pronunciation).

200 مِائَتَانِ, 300 *ثَلَاثُ مِائَةٍ, 400 أَرْبَعُ مِائَةٍ, 500
 ثَمَانِي مِائَةٍ, 600 سِتُّ مِائَةٍ, 700 سَبْعُ مِائَةٍ, 800
 تِسْعُ مِائَةٍ, 900 مِائَةٍ.

1000 أَلْفٌ, 2000 أَلْفَانِ, 3000 ثَلَاثَةُ آلَافٍ
 is. here a broken plural of the form أَفْعَالٌ § 88 No. 17)
 &c. 11 000 أَحَدُ عَشَرَ أَلْفًا, 100 000 مِائَةُ أَلْفٍ, 1 000 000
 أَلْفُ أَلْفٍ.

The following are the leading points to be noted 92.
 in joining the cardinals to the names of the objects
 numbered :

The numerals for one (وَاحِدٌ) and two are adjectives; the numbers from 3—10, on the other hand, are substantives, and take the word indicating the objects numbered in the genitive plural. They may also, however, be placed in apposition *after* the noun. Whatever their position relative to the substantive may be—even, in fact, when the latter is altogether omitted, or when they stand as the predicate of a sentence—the construction is such that nouns of the masc. gender take the fem. forms of these numerals,

* Often written ثَلَاثِيَّةٌ &c.

and *vice versa* nouns of the fem. gender take the masc. forms. Thus: (بَنُونَ ثَلَاثَةٌ) three sons, (بَنَاتٌ أَرْبَعٌ) four daughters. Also before broken plurals of which the singular is masculine, we find the fem. forms of these numerals (3—10), as ثَلَاثَةُ رِجَالٍ 3 men.

b. The numbers from 11 to 99 are followed by the word indicating the objects numbered in the *accusative singular*, as ثَلَاثُونَ رَجُلًا 30 men.

c. The numbers from 100 upwards take the thing numbered in the *genitive singular* as أَرْبَعُ مِائَةٍ رَجُلٍ 400 men.

d. In the compound numbers the nature of the construction depends on the last numeral. The particle وَ is used to join the numbers together; the units and the tens may stand either before the hundreds, or after the thousands and hundreds. Thus the year 1895 is either خَمْسٌ وَتِسْعُونَ وَثَمَانِي مِائَةٍ وَأَلْفٌ or أَلْفٌ وَثَمَانِي مِائَةٍ وَخَمْسٌ وَتِسْعُونَ سَنَةً.

93. The ordinals have, for the most part, the form
a. of the act. part. of the I stem, as may be seen from the following:

	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.
1.	أَوَّلٌ, first	أُولَى	6. سَادِسٌ	سَادِسَةٌ
2.	ثَانِي	ثَانِيَةٌ	7. سَابِعٌ	سَابِعَةٌ
3.	ثَالِثٌ	ثَالِثَةٌ	8. ثَامِنٌ	ثَامِنَةٌ
4.	رَابِعٌ	رَابِعَةٌ	9. تَاسِعٌ	تَاسِعَةٌ
5.	خَامِسٌ	خَامِسَةٌ	10. عَاشِرٌ	عَاشِرَةٌ
11.	حَادِي عَشَرَ	حَادِيَّةُ عَشْرَةٍ	indeclinable	
12.	ثَانِي عَشَرَ	ثَانِيَّةُ عَشْرَةٍ	"	
13.	ثَالِثَ عَشَرَ	ثَالِثَةُ عَشْرَةٍ	and so on.	

The ordinals of the numbers from 20 upwards are expressed by the corresponding cardinals, as **ثَالِثٌ وَثَلَاثُونَ** thirty-third; when larger totals have to be expressed, the cardinals are used even for the lower numbers. In dates, as a rule, the cardinal numbers are used exclusively, as **فِي سَنَةِ ثَلَاثَ عَشْرَةِ** in the 1313th year of the Hegira (which began on the 24th of June 1895).

Fractions are usually expressed by the form **فُعْلٌ**, *b.* as **ثُلُثٌ** a third.

Chapter V. The Particles. (§§ 94—96).

94. The adverbs, prepositions and conjunctions cannot here be given in detail. The prepositions, like many adverbs, are still for the most part recognizable as nouns of three radicals originally, which have preserved the accusative ending without the nunation. Prepositions therefore always govern the genitive case in Arabic and may also stand in the genitive in dependence on other prepositions. Thus **فَوْقَ** above, with a subst. **فَوْقَ الْجَبَلِ** up on the hill.

NOTE. A few adverbs end in *u* (which in this case has absolutely nothing to do with the nominative termination) as **بَعْدَ** afterwards; so **مِنْ بَعْدَ** in the same sense; but as prepositions **بَعْدَ** or **مِنْ بَعْدَ** after.

95. The following particles (in alphabetical order) because written with a single letter are inseparably joined to the following word, cf. § 8 note.
- a. **أَ** (ا) interrogative particle, as **أَقْتَلَ** did he kill? Before the connective Alif: **أَسْمُكَ** for **أَ + أَسْمُكَ** is thy name . . . ?
 - b. **بِ** (ب) preposition 'in'; with suffixes thus: 1. **بِي** in me, 2. masc. **بِكَ**, 3. masc. **بِهِ** (§ 12 d) &c.
 - c. **تَ** particle of asseveration, as **تَاللَّهِ** by God.

س shortened from سَوْفَ, a particle which gives *d.* to the impf. the sense of the future, as سَيَقْتُلُ he will kill.

ف, then, denotes a less close connection than و. *e.*

كَ (ك) like, as. *f.*

ل a corroborative particle before verbs, especially *g.* in oaths, as لَيَقْتُلَنَّ he will certainly kill; it also stands before nouns, especially after the particle إِنَّ (§ 125 *a* note).

لِ (?) preposition and conjunction; before suffixes *h.* (except in 1. pers. sing. لِى) it becomes ل, as لَكَ to thee.

وَ (ا, ا) connective particle; as a particle of *i.* asseveration it takes the gen., as وَآلِلّٰهِ by God.

As regards the addition of pronominal suffixes 96. to the prepositions and conjunctions, the following points may be noted in addition to what has been said under § 82.

Before the suffixes of the 1. pers. sing., the final *a.* vowel or vocalic *auslaut* is dropped as is the case with the noun; thus بَعْدَ 'after' with the suff. of the 1. pers. sing. بَعْدِى, but بَعْدَكَ &c.

- b. In the prepositions عَلَى upon, and إِلَى towards, the final ي is sounded before suffixes (contrary to § 2 d), e. g.

with suff. of the 2. pers. masc. إِلَيْكَ, عَلَيْكَ

" " " 3. " " إِلَيْهِ, عَلَيْهِ

" " " 1. " " إِلَيَّ, عَلَيَّ (see § 82 a)

- c. The prepositions مِنْ and عَنْ double the *n* before the suffix of the 1. pers. sing., as مِّنِّي.

- d. اِنَّ behold, truly, and اَنَّ that, become

with the suff. of the 2. pers. sing. masc. اِنَّكَ and اَنَّكَ

" " " " 1. " " اِنِّي or اِنِّي,

اِنِّي or اِنِّي,

" " " " 1. " plur. اِنَّا or اِنَّا,

اِنَّا or اِنَّا.

III. NOTES ON SYNTAX. (§§ 97—160).

Chap. I. Moods and Tenses. (§§ 97—104).

97. The *perfect* expresses a completed action, the completion of which falls in the past, present or future, or is thought of as falling in one or other of these

periods. The *imperfect* expresses an uncompleted action, which may likewise fall in each of the same three spheres of time.

The perfect is, in the first place, the tense of 98. narration (*perfectum historicum*), when an action completed in the past is spoken of, and may, as a rule, be rendered by our past tense, as ^سجَاءَ زَيْدٌ Zaid came.

By the perfect the idea is expressed that an action or a state has continued from the beginning, and still continues, as اِخْتَلَفُوا الْعُلَمَاءُ the learned (always) disagree (*gnomic aorist*); اَللّٰهُ تَعَالٰى God, he is exalted (from the beginning).

When the perfect expresses an action completed in the present, it is to be rendered by our present, as اَعْطَيْتَكَ هَذَا I present you with this (the affair is at this moment concluded).

In a sentence containing an oath or a wish, the perfect expresses an action which, in the mind of the speaker, is completed in the future, as لَعَنَهُ اَللّٰهُ God curse him; also with لَا 'not', as لَا رَحْمَةَ اَللّٰهُ may God have no pity on him; وَاللّٰهِ لَا فَعَلْتُ by God I do it not!

When the particle قَدْ stands before the perfect, the latter may in most cases be rendered by our per-

fect (either the present or the past perfect), as **قَدْ** **ذَكَرْنَا** we have (just) mentioned, or we had mentioned. The perf. with **قَدْ** may also be used in the sense given under sub-section c.

- f. When the verb **كَانَ** (to be) stands before the perfect (with or without **قَدْ**), we must render as a rule by our past perfect (pluperfect), as **لَمَّا وُلِدَ مُوسَى كَانَ قَدْ أَمَرَ فِرْعَوْنُ بِقَتْلِ الْأَطْفَالِ** when Moses was born, Pharaoh had (just) commanded to kill the little children.

NOTE. Instead of the above verbal sentence (§ 134), **كَانَ** may be followed by a compound nominal sentence (§ 138 d) as **كَانَ فِرْعَوْنُ قَدْ أَمَرَ ...**

- g. Our conditional is expressed in Arabic by the perfect, that is, it is represented as something already accomplished, as **قَدْ كُنْتُ وَدَدْتُ** I should wish, **وَدَدْتُ** I should have wished.
- h. For the perf. after **إِذَا** and in conditional sentences see §§ 157, 158.
99. The *imperfect* indicative is to be rendered according to circumstances by our present or our future, sometimes also by our past progressive (imperfect).
- a. If the future is to be expressed with greater precision than by the Arabic imperfect alone, the latter

has prefixed to it the adverb سَوْفَ (end), which may be shortened to سَ and is then inseparably joined to the verb (see § 95 *d*), as سَوْفَ تَعْلَمُونَ ye will know (it); سَنُرِيهِمْ (49 *b*) we shall show you.

By the imperfect is expressed an action which *b.* accompanies another action completed in the past, or which is still in the future from the stand point of the latter, as جَاءُوا آبَاهُمْ يَبْكُونَ they came to their father weeping (cf. § 157 *b*); أَتَى الْعَيْنَ يَشْرَبُ he came to the spring to drink.

The imperfect can also express the continuance *c.* of an action in the past; يَتَقَاتَلُونَ may also mean 'they were fighting for a considerable time', or 'they fought repeatedly, with each other'. More frequently, however, this continuous imperfect is expressed by a combination of كَانَ with the impf. (cf. § 98 *f.* and note); sometimes we can render such a combination by our 'was wont to' or 'used to', as كَانَ يَأْخُذُ فِي كُلِّ يَوْمٍ ثَلَاثَةَ دَرَاهِمَ he used to receive every day three drachmae.

If قَدْ stands before the imperfect, a certain *d.* definiteness is the result, as قَدْ يَكُونُ 'it will most

likely be that . . .', an idea which is not unfrequently found in the imperf. without **قَدْ**.

NOTE a. The impf. also stands in direct subordination to other verbs, as **مَا زِلْتُ أَشْرَبُ** I ceased not to drink (cf. § 110); **مَا أَقْدِرُ أَفْعَلُ** he began to speak with the people; **مَا أَكْذِبُ** I cannot do such a thing.

NOTE b. Before several verbs (perfects or imperfects) joined together with **وَ**, it is sufficient to write **كَانَ** once, and so with **سَيَكُونُ** and **كَانَ**.

NOTE c. **كَانَ** (see note to § 98 f) is frequently followed by a compound nominal sentence, as **كَانَ عُثْمَانُ يَزُورُ الْمَقَابِرَ** Osmān was wont to visit the graves (the cemetery).

100. The *Subjunctive* is found in certain kinds of dependent clauses introduced by a conjunction, the action of which is to be represented as one to be expected as the result of the action of the principal clause, and hence as one that is only likely to occur in the future. Hence this mood is frequently (not always) used after the conjunctions **أَنَّ** that, **أَلَّا** (from **لَا**) that not, **حَتَّى** until, **فَ** (and **وَ**) that, and always after **لِأَنَّ** (made up of **لَا** and **لِأَنَّ**) in order that, **لِأَنَّ** in order that . . not, **أَوْ** in the sense of 'except that', 'until', as **جَاءَ لِيَبُورَنِي** he came in order to visit me; **أَمَرَ أَنْ يَكْتُبَ** he commanded him to write (that he

should write). In like manner the subj. is used after
 لَنْ أَرْسَلَهُ (لَا أَنْ) it will not be (the case) that, as
 I shall not send him.

The *modus apocopatus* (or jussive) is found: 101.

1) in positive commands, generally with the particle *a*.

لِ prefixed, as لِيَكْتُبْ let him write.

NOTE. When such a form is further preceded by رَ and تَ (which is sometimes the case, without any special stress resting on these particles) لِ generally loses its vowel, as وَعَلَى اللَّهِ and قُلْتُمْ كَلِ الْكَافِرِينَ and in God let the believers (then, therefore) trust.

2) in negative commands with لَا, as لَا تَقُلْ say not, *b*.
 thou shalt not say. The imperative can never take a negative.

3) always after كَمْ, not as a prohibition but as negating a completed action, as كَمْ يَضْرِبْ he did not strike, (as the negation of ضَرَبَ); in like manner after لَمَّا in the sense of 'not yet'.

4) in the protasis and apodosis of conditional sentences, see § 158.

The *modus energicus* is usually found in asseverations, and particularly in connection with an oath and the corroborative particle لَ, as وَاللَّهِ لَأَضْرِبَنَّ by God, I will certainly strike him; this mood is also used with the prohibitive لَا.

103. The *Passive* is employed in those cases in which the agent, for some reason or other, must not be mentioned. Hence a sentence like **قُتِلَ زَيْدٌ** means 'Zaid has been killed (by some person unknown or who may not be named)'. Our 'Zaid has been killed by 'Amr', the Arabs express by the active construction. The passive is frequently found in an impersonal sense (see § 121 *a*).

104. With regard to the employment of the *participles* the following points are to be noted:

a. The participle (especially as predicate of a nominal sentence § 122 *a*) frequently expresses our "to be about to", as **أَنَا قَادِمٌ إِلَيْكَ** I am about to come, on the point of coming, to you.

b. The passive participle is also used impersonally in Arabic; starting from the sentence **غُشِيَ عَلَيْهِ** he fainted (literally: it was covered over him) we can also say **هُوَ مَغْشَى عَلَيْهِ** he has fainted, fem. **هِيَ مَغْشَى عَلَيْهَا**. In such constructions the impersonal part. pass. may be inflected for all three cases and be determined by the article, as **مَرَرْتُ بِرَجُلٍ مَغْشَى عَلَيْهِ** I passed a man who had fainted; **رَأَيْتُ الْمَرْأَةَ الْمَغْشَى عَلَيْهَا** I saw the woman that had fainted.

Chap. II. The Government of the Verb. (§§ 105—117).

In Arabic the verb may take as its complement 105. either an accusative, or a preposition with its case. The numerous combinations of the latter sort, in which the preposition with its case is sometimes the necessary complement of the action denoted by the verb, sometimes merely accessory (such, for example, as specifications of place and time) cannot here be given in detail. See, however, §§ 114 ff.

The *accusative* is the case depending immediately 106. on the verb. We distinguish here the cases in which, the accusative stands α) as object, β) as predicate, and γ) as limitation or more precise definition, generally called by grammarians, the accusative “of nearer definition”.

α) Certain classes of verbs, as for example, verbs 107. of coming and going, take as direct object the goal to which the action is directed, e. g. دَخَلَ الْبَيْتَ he went into the house.

NOTE. On the other hand دَخَلَ إِلَى الْبَيْتِ denotes primarily the *direction* of the action *towards* the goal; دَخَلَ فِي الْبَيْتِ he went into the house and stayed there.

The following take *two* accusatives: 1) The *causa-* 108. *tive* forms of transitive verbs with one accusative in the I. stem, as عَلِمَ to know; *caus.* عَلَّمَهُ الْقِرَاءَةَ he

taught him reading; 2) verbs that express the ideas of filling or giving, of making into, of considering or recognising as, of naming, and many others: e. g. جَعَلَ اللَّهُ الْأَرْضَ فِرَاشًا God made the earth (into) a carpet; سَمَّى ابْنَهُ مُحَمَّدًا he named his son Muhammed. When a verb of this class is put in the passive, the second accusative remains, as سُمِّيَ ابْنُهُ مُحَمَّدًا his son was named Muhammed; أُوتِيَ دِرْهَمًا he was presented with a dirhem, from the active آتَاهُ دِرْهَمًا he presented him with a dirhem (for suff. see § 107).

NOTE a. The two accusatives of such verbs as express the idea of finding one to be, or considering one as something, stand to each other, strictly speaking, in the relation of subject and predicate (§ 139); thus a sentence like وَجَدْتُهُ شَيْخًا حَلِيمًا may also be translated 'I found that he was a gentle old man'. As second object we may have a verb instead of a noun, as وَجَدُوا بِضَاعَتَهُمْ رَدَّتْ إِلَيْهِمْ they found their payment to be something which was returned to them = they found that their payment was &c.

NOTE b. Verbs expressing not an intellectual but a physical perception are also frequently found with two accusatives. The second, indeed, is generally regarded as an acc. of condition (§ 113b), but sentences like سَمِعْتُ عَمْرًا بَاكِيًا it must be admitted, may also be translated: I heard 'Amr weeping, i. e. I heard how 'Amr wept.

109. For the purpose of strengthening or of more precisely defining the idea conveyed by it, every verb

may take a so-called *absolute object*. This absolute (or *internal*) object consists of an infinitive, a nomen speciei (§ 64 c) or other noun. Usually this object is itself more precisely defined either by some qualifying word or phrase (§ 120) or by a genitive, as أَدَّبَهُ تَأْدِيبًا حَسَنًا he educated him with a good education, i. e. well; ضَرَبَنِي ضَرْبًا أَوْجَعَنِي he struck ^{me}him with a stroke which pained me (for the relative sentence, see § 155); سَلَكَ سَبِيلَ جَدِّهِ he walked in the way of his grand father. More rarely the absolute object is found without any qualification, as ضَرَبَهُ ضَرْبًا he struck him with a stroke, as much as to say, he struck him a blow, and what a blow! صَرَّاهُ صَرًّا he wrapped it in (so many) parcels; here the absolute object expresses rather the result of the action.

NOTE. Sometimes the place of the infinitive is taken by the mere qualification, as سَارَ طَوِيلًا he journeyed long, for سَارَ سَيْرًا طَوِيلًا he journeyed a long journey, or by some other form of nearer definition, as قَتَعَ اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ بَيْتَ الْمَقْدِسِ مُلَحًّا God allowed him to capture Jerusalem peacefully = قَتَعَ صَلَاحًا.

β) The accusative stands as the *predicate* with verbs 110. which express the idea of being or becoming something, and is especially common with the verb كَانَ (med. و). This verb signifies either 1) to be in the

sense of to exist, as ⁹كَانَ وَزِيرٌ there was (there lived) a vizier, or 2) to be something (in particular); in the latter sense it takes its predicate (to adopt the nomenclature of the native grammarians) in the accusative, as كَانَتْ أَمْرَأَتُهُ حَامِلًا his wife was pregnant. The same construction is adopted by all verbs of similar signification, such as أَمْسَى to be something late, أَصْبَحَ to be something early, عَادَ to be or become something a second time, دَامَ to remain, to last, زَالَ to cease to be something, صَارَ to become something, لَيْسَ not to be something. The place of the accusative in the predicate may be taken by a preposition with its case (cf. § 114 ff.), as كَانَ زَيْدٌ فِي الْبَيْتِ Zaid was in the house; كَانَتْ مُلُوكُ الْفَرَسِ كَانَتْ مُلُوكُ الْأَرْضِ the kings of Persia belonged to the most powerful sovereigns on earth. The construction of كَانَ and the others with a finite verb (§§ 98f; 99c) must also be understood in this way, that is, the predicate in such cases consists of a verbal sentence (§ 135), as أَصْبَحَ النَّاسُ قَدْ تَعَبُوا the people had already (prop. early) become weary.

111. The accusative, further, stands in the predicate

after the negative لَا, when the latter, as the Arabs say, expresses a *general* negation. The accus. after لَا, which is always undetermined, drops its nunation, as لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللَّهُ there is (absolutely) no God but Allah.

The accusative is used after the conjunction وَ to 112. indicate concomitance, especially in verbal sentences (§ 135), as مَا صَنَعْتَ وَأَبَاكَ what hast thou and thy father done? مَا رَلْتُ أَسِيرُ وَالنَّيْلَ I ceased not to go with (along) the Nile; also without a verb مَا رَلْتُكَ what hast thou (to do) with Zaid?

γ) The *accusative of nearer definition* is employed 113. in the following cases:

1) To give details of place and time, as نَظَرَ بَيْنَنَا a. سَارَ فَرَسًا he looked to right and to left of him; سَارَ he journeyed a parasang; جَاءُوا عِشَاءَ they came late in the evening; اِسْتَمَرَ عَلَى ذَلِكَ مُدَّةَ حَيَاتِهِ he continued faithful thereto during his life-time.

2) Very frequently the accusative, as a rule undetermined, appears in verbal (rarely in nominal) sentences as the accusative of state or condition, as سَارَ مُتَوَجِّهًا إِلَى الْمَدِينَةِ he journeyed, taking the direction of Medina; لَقِيتُ عَمْرًا بَاكِيًا I met 'Amr weeping.

NOTE a. With the accusative of condition the student must be careful to note to which of the nouns in the sentence it applies; in the last sentence above, for example, it might refer to the subject pronoun implicit in **لَقِيتُ** instead of to 'Amr.

NOTE b. Two nouns in the accusative of condition are often placed beside each other without a conjunction (asyndeton) as **أَخْرَجَ مِنْهَا مَذْمُومًا مَحْقُورًا** (God said to Satan): Go out of it (paradise, fem.) as one cast off and despised (for **مَذْمُومًا** see § 7*b* note).

NOTE c. In some rare cases an infinitive is used (in place of a participle) to denote a qualifying circumstance; **هَبْ قُتِلَ صَبْرًا** he was killed bound (i. e. while bound) = **مَصْبُورًا**.

c. 3) The accusative of *specification* (= accus. of respect), also in most cases undetermined, expresses a more precise reference, as **حَسَنْتَ مُسْتَقَرًّا** it (paradise) is beautiful with reference to staying (there), i. e. as a dwelling-place; this accus. is especially common with elatives (§ 63*b*) of a more general signification, as **أَشَدُّ حُمْرَةً** stronger with regard to the colour red = redder.

d. 4) The accusative of nearer definition is also employed to indicate the *motive* or *purpose* of an action, in which case, also, it is mostly undetermined, as **قُتِبْتُ إِكْرَامًا لَهُ** they fled from cowardice; **قُتِبْتُ** I stood up to do him honour.

114* The accusative may also stand in cases, particularly in exclamations, where a finite verb can be supplied, as **أَهْلًا وَسَهْلًا** welcome! Here we must

supply جِئْتُ, and the meaning of the phrase comes to be: thou art come to relatives and a smooth (i. e. pleasant) place; مَهْلًا slowly! to be taken as the absolute object of an imperative understood.

Of the numerous constructions of the *verb with* 114. *a preposition* attention need only be called to the following.

Many prepositions are still treated as nouns, in accordance with their original signification (see § 94), as مَيَّرَ بَيْنَ الذَّكُورِ وَالْأُنثَى he distinguished between (prop. the distance, difference of) males and females. Very frequently we find (cf. § 110) the partitive مِنْ used in this way as object, e. g. أَكَلَ مِنَ الطَّعَامِ he ate of the food.

A few verbs are construed, with but slight differ- 115. ence of meaning, now with a direct object, now with بِ, as عَلِمَهُ he knew it, عَلِمَ بِهِ he knew about it. Frequently بِ serves to introduce an object, to which the action of the verb extends only indirectly, as بَعَثَ زَيْدًا he sent Zaid; بَعَثَ بِالْكِتَابِ he sent the writing (i. e. some one with the writing); بَعَثَ الْعَبْدَ he sent the slave, بَعَثَ بِالْعَبْدِ, same meaning, but

with the understanding that the slave travels under escort. Verbs of going construed with بِ take the sense of bringing, as أَتَى زَيْدًا بِالْخَبَرِ he brought Zaid the news.—This بِ may also accompany an imperative as a periphrasis of the first person of the dual and plural, as اِمْضُوا بِنَا let (thou) us go, اِمْضِ بِنَا let (ye) us go.

116. The meaning of many verbs is often so altered according to the preposition with which they are construed that a sense quite the opposite of the original, according to our idiom, is the result; thus دَعَا لَهُ is properly: he called (to God) in his favour, i. e. he blessed him, دَعَا عَلَيْهِ he called (to God) against him, i. e. he cursed him; اِشْتَغَلَ بِالْأَمْرِ he occupied himself with the affair; but with عَنْ (which contains the idea of separation) اِشْتَغَلَ عَنِ الْأَمْرِ he was occupied so that he put the affair in question aside, could not attend to it.

117. Of the various uses of the preposition لِ (see §§ 130 ff.), we may call attention to its special use in dates, particularly in specifying the days of the month, as لِأَوَّلِ لَيْلَةٍ مِنْ مُحَرَّمٍ in the first (literally: to the first) night of (the month) Muharram. لِسَبْعِ لَيَالٍ خَلَوْنَ

مِنْ شَعْبَانَ or with the omission of لَيْالٍ (§ 90 *p*)
 لِسَبْعِ خَلَوْنَ at the time of seven nights, which (cf.
 § 155) had elapsed of Ša'bān, i. e. when seven nights
 (or days) of Š. had passed; لَأَرْبَعِ عَشْرَةَ (لَيْالٍ) بَقِيَتْ
 مِنْ رَمَضَانَ when still fourteen (nights) were left of
 Ramaḍān.

Chap. III. The Government of the Noun. (§§ 118—134).

A noun may take with it *a*) the article, *β*) a permut- 118.
 ative (noun in apposition), *γ*) a qualifying (attribu-
 tive) adjunct, *δ*) a genitive.

a) When a noun is preceded by the *article*, it is said
 to be *determined* (§ 79 *b*). This determination may be
 stronger or weaker:

A very strong determination is found in certain *a*.
 words which contain the idea of time, as السَّاعَةَ this
 hour = now, الْيَوْمَ this day = today. In these cases
 the article has the force of a demonstrative.

By means of the article a single definite object is *b*.
 indicated, which the speaker has in mind, or which
 has been already mentioned: by الرَّجُلُ is meant some
 particular known man. Proper names furnished with
 the article (see § 79 *a*) were originally appellatives
 with the determination, as الْحَسَنُ.

- c. The determination by the article often serves merely to denote the *species* or class to which something belongs, as هُوَ مِثْلُ الْحِمَارِ he is like an ass. This use of the article is named the generic.

119. β) From among the cases in which a noun follows another noun in *apposition*, the following may be singled out as worthy of note:

- a. A substantive may have in apposition words expressing a) size, b) resemblance, c) the parts and d) the material of which a thing is made up. Thus
- a) ثَوْبٌ ذِرَاعٌ a dress an ell long (lit. a dress, an ell);
- b) رَجُلٌ مِثْلُ زَيْدٍ a man like (lit. the likeness of) Zaid;
- c) حَبْلٌ أَرْمَاتٌ a rope made up of rotten pieces;
- d) أَلْحَاتِمُ الْحَدِيدِ the iron finger-ring; when undetermined preferably with مِنْ as صَنَمٌ مِنْ ذَهَبٍ an idol of gold. For the last, the genitive construction is also found viz: صَنَمُ الذَّهَبِ.
- b. The word كُلُّ totality is construed either with the noun following in the genitive, or stands in apposition, with a suffix referring back to the noun, as كُلُّ النَّاسِ or كُلُّ النَّاسِ كُلُّهُمْ all men. (Note that كُلُّ being a substantive always remains unchanged as regards gender and number).

γ) A substantive may be *qualified* 1) by an adjective, 120.
2) by a preposition with its case, or 3) by a relative
clause (§§ 155—6).

1) The qualifying word may be an *adjective*, as *a*.
عَادِلٌ إِمَامٌ an honest Imām; in this case if the
substantive is determined the adjective must also
receive the determination, as اَلْإِمَامُ الْعَادِلُ, the honest
Imām.

The adjective *follows* its substantive; to this rule *b*.
the demonstrative pronoun forms an apparent excep-
tion, in as much as it generally stands *before* (like the
article § 118), less frequently *after*, the substantive
which it qualifies. Thus we find هَذَا الْعِلَامُ this slave,
alongside of الْعِلَامُ هَذَا.

The adjective must agree with its substantive in *c*.
gender and number, as صَبِيَّةٌ جَيِّلَةٌ a pretty girl.
Among the exceptions is the word كَثِيرٌ much, which
generally remains unchanged, like a noun in apposi-
tion, even after the plural, as رِجَالٌ كَثِيرٌ, many men.

That the broken plurals take their adjectives in *d*.
the feminine has been already noted (see § 87 *a*); the
adjective, however, may also take a broken plural, as
رِجَالٌ كِرَامٌ, noble men. The plur. sanus, moreover, is not

unfrequently found especially if the adjective qualifies words denoting living beings, as **الْآبَاءُ الْمَاضُونَ** the ancestors that were of old (part. of **مَضَى**). In the same circumstances the collectives (§ 86 *a*) may also take a plural adjective, as **قَوْمٌ بِخِلَاءَ** miserly people, **قَوْمٌ ظَالِمُونَ** violent people. The preceding pronoun often stands then in the plural, as **هَؤُلَاءِ النَّاسُ** these men; but with fem. plurals that do not denote living beings generally in the fem. singular, as **هَذِهِ الْفَلَواتُ** these deserts; before broken plurals also in the fem. sing., as **هَذِهِ الْمَمَالِكُ** these slaves.

- 2) From those cases in which a *preposition with its*
 121. *noun* is dependent on a verb (§§ 114 ff.) or its equi-
 a. valent, must be clearly distinguished those in which they form the qualifying attribute of another noun, as **جَلَسْتُ عَلَى صَائِفٍ بِالسُّوقِ** I sat down beside a goldsmith (who was) in the bazaar; **ذُرِّيَّتِكَ مِنْ بَعْدِكَ** thy posterity (that will be) after thee.

- Sometimes this attribute does not stand next to
 b. the word qualified; so particularly with the relatives **مَنْ** and **مَا**, as **مَنْ دَخَلَ الشَّامَ مِنَ الْعَرَبِ** those of the Arabs that advanced into Syria; **أَنكِحُوا مَا طَابَ**

مِنْ النِّسَاءِ marry of the women whatever seemeth
good unto you.

Should several attributes qualify a single substan- 122.
tive, the connecting conjunction is usually omitted
(asyndeton), as اللَّهُ الْعَلِيُّ الْعَظِيمُ the high and mighty
God; بَابٌ وَاسِعٌ مِنْ أَبْوَابِ الْقَرْيَةِ a wide gate of the
gates of the town; عِمَامَةٌ ضَخْمَةٌ عَلَى رَأْسِهِ تَظِلُّهُ
a thick cloud over his head which gave him shade.

δ) One noun, when in dependence on another, is put 123.
in the *genitive* case—the function of which is to deter-
mine more exactly the application of the preceding
noun. As the result of the close connection subsisting
between the second noun and the first, the latter, now
said to be in the construct state (§ 79c) and therefore
without the article, is regarded as *determined*. There-
fore رُمْحُ الْفَارِسِ is ‘the (particular) spear of the
(particular) horseman’, and so with the suffixes, as رُمْحُهُ
his (particular) spear. When the dependent noun
(nomen rectum) is undetermined, the governing noun
(nomen regens) is only defined in a generic sense
(§ 118c), or is specialized in a way resembling the
generic definition, as بِنْتُ مَلِكٍ a daughter of a king
= a king’s daughter.

NOTE. More rarely, in the latter case, the generic article may be attached to the *nomen rectum*, as خُبْزُ الشَّعِيرِ barley bread

124. The genitive cannot be separated from the governing word (*nomen regens*); adjectival and other additions must therefore stand *after* the genitive, as بَيْتُ الْمَلِكِ الْوَاسِعُ the spacious house of the king. When, according to our idiom, a genitive belongs to two substantives, in Arabic it is made dependent on the first of the two, and represented with the second by a personal pronoun, as رَحْمَةُ اللَّهِ وَبَرَكَاتُهُ the mercy and blessings of God.
125. Substantives conveying the idea of time sometimes receive a specially strong determination by the addition of suffixes (cf. § 118 a), as صَلَّى لَيْلَهُ he prayed his night, i. e. the particular night in which he then was.
126. The close connection of two nouns thus standing in the genit. relation makes sometimes possible their fusion to *one* idea, although only the first component admits of inflection. Thus عَبْدُ اللَّهِ (gen. عَبْدِ اللَّهِ; acc. عَبْدَ اللَّهِ) the servant of Allah, as a proper name, conveys but a single idea. Further illustrations will be found in the numerous examples of composite proper names, of which one of the elements is one or other of the words ابْنُ son, أَبُ father, بِنْتُ daughter, أُمُّ mother.

As the Arabs have no family names, properly so-called, the name of a man or woman receives for distinction's sake an addition by the help of the above words, as أَبُو الْعَبَّاسِ مُحَمَّدُ بْنُ يَزِيدَ (observe the order). Very frequently a name thus made up has become the principal name, as that of the first Caliph أَبُو بَكْرٍ, for example, or that of the savant إِبْنُ قَتَيْبَةَ; names of tribes, too, like بَنُو كَلْبٍ, are in the same way simple notions (Einheitsbegriffe).

Not unfrequently an adjective which in our idiom 127. would be made to qualify its substantive, is in Arabic raised to the rank of a substantive, on which its proper substantive is made to depend; thus كَرِيمٌ خُلِقَ the noble(ness) of his character = his noble character; أَكْثَرُ النَّاسِ most men. The same construction is found with elatives also, as عَاشُوا أَهْوَنَ عَيْشَةٍ they lived the easiest life (cf. § 109).

A species of explicative genitive is found in cases 128. where a general conception is more explicitly defined by a following proper name, as أَرْضُ الْيَمَنِ the land of Yemen.—Under this head may be reckoned the suffixes appended to numerals, as ثَلَاثَتُهُمُ the three of them.

129. A few words containing the ideas of time and place may have, instead of a genitive, a whole clause depending on them, as **يَوْمَ قُتِلَ** on the day on which he was killed.

130. When a noun on which another noun is in the proper sense (cf. § 134) dependent must remain absolutely undetermined (see § 123), the usual genitive relation of *nomen regens* and *nomen rectum* is inadmissible, and the connection of the two must be expressed by a preposition, as **أَخٌ لَكُمْ** a brother of yours, where **لَكُمْ** is attrib. adjunct to **أَخٌ** (see § 121 a).

131. *Infinitives* may govern their object according to the laws either of verbal or of nominal government. In the first instance their *subject* is subordinated in the genitive; **قَتَلَ زَيْدٌ** accordingly means: the circumstance that Zaid has killed. If no subject is named, the object may likewise stand in the genitive, so that the same expression **قَتَلَ زَيْدٌ** may also mean: the circumstance that Zaid has been killed, the fact of Zaid's being killed. When both subject and object are present, the former is treated as a subjective genitive; the latter remains in the accusative or **لِ** with the genitive is used as a periphrasis for the accusative, as **مَدَامَتَهُ شَرِبَ الْخَمْرَ**

the circumstance that he was constantly drinking wine; **حَبِي لِحَمْرِ** the circumstance that I am fond of wine. **لِ** also stands after an undetermined infinitive (e. g. in cases like § 113 *d* and others) as **قُمْتُ إِكْرَامًا لِرَّيْدٍ** I stood up to do honour to Zaid.

In the case of the participle, the object of the 132. verb appears as the objective genitive, and when the part. has the sense of the perfect it is determined by the genitive following, as **اللَّهُ خَالِقُ الْأَرْضِ** God is he who has created the earth = the creator of the earth. With a present or future sense the governing participle is not determined, as **كُلُّ نَفْسٍ ذَائِقَةُ الْمَوْتِ** every soul is one that will taste of death; **إِنَّهُ مُلَاقِيكُمْ** he is one that will meet with you. If the participle is in itself determined, the object stands in the accusative or is expressed periphrastically with **لِ**, as **الطَّالِبُ لِيَعْلَمَ** he who strives after knowledge; the same applies when the participle is strictly undetermined, as **طَالِبٌ قَاتِرٌ أَبِيهِ** one who wishes to take blood revenge for his father; **مَا زِلْتُ مُحِبًّا لِلْإِسْلَامِ** I have not ceased to love Islam.

133. A special idiomatic use of certain generic words is their combination with a following genitive. They are determined or undetermined according to the context, e. g. **ذُو** he who has, possessor of (cf. § 90*l*), **ذُو مَالٍ** the possessor of wealth, a rich man; **صَاحِبٌ** companion, owner, **عَقْلٍ صَاحِبٌ** the man of sense; **أَهْلٌ** people, **أَهْلُ الدُّنْيَا** people of the world=worldly people; **بَعْضُ** portion, e. g. **بَعْضُ الْعُلَمَاءِ** one, some of the learned; **غَيْرٌ** prop. change, then 'another than', as **مَاتَ الْمَلِكُ فَمَلَكَ بَعْدَهُ غَيْرُهُ** the king died and another than he reigned after him; similarly **أَحَدٌ** one, as **أَحَدُهُمْ** one of them; finally **ابْنٌ** son, in certain common idioms, as **ابْنُ ثَلَاثِينَ سَنَةً** thirty years old.

134. A special kind of genitive relation is presented by the so-called *improper* annexation, by which a participle or a verbal adjective (see § 60*b*) is more strictly limited or defined by a following genitive, as **رَجُلٌ حَسَنُ الْوَجْهِ** a man beautiful of countenance. This construction is best rendered by a relative clause, the subject of which will be the word that more clearly defines the governing idea, in other words the genitive of the Arabic will be the nominative of the English, a man whose countenance is beautiful. In such a case

the governing word is *not* determined by the following genitive; should the latter require to be determined, it may receive the *article* (contrary to the rule in § 123) as الرَّجُلُ الْحَسَنُ الْوَجْهِ the man of the beautiful countenance, i. e. whose countenance is beautiful.

Chapter IV. The Simple Sentence. (§§ 135—151).

Sentences in Arabic are of two kinds, *verbal* and 135. *nominal*.

The chief characteristic of a *verbal sentence* is the fact that it always contains a finite verb; in fact, a verb of this kind with its inherent (subject) pronoun is in itself a complete verbal sentence, as ضَرَبْتَ thou hast struck. This type of sentence always expresses the *commencement of some activity*, understood in the widest sense. If a special exponent of the idea conveyed by the subject of the verb is added, it *follows* the verb in the case appropriate to the subject, *viz.* the nominative, as ضَرَبَ زَيْدٌ he has struck, Zaid (has) = Zaid has struck, whereby Zaid is singled out as the agent.

In the *verbal sentence*, the finite verb does not 136. always agree in gender and number with the following

subject. The following are the chief points to be noted in this connection:

- a. The verb stands in the *masculine singular* before sound or outer plurals, and generally before the masc. forms of the dual.
- b. The verb stands in the *feminine singular* 1) before a sing. fem. if it follows the verb immediately, 2) before sound plurals feminine, 3) before the fem. forms of the dual, and 4) before broken plurals (cf. next sub-section).
- c. The verb stands in the *masculine or feminine singular* 1) before a sing. fem. not immediately following the verb, 2) before collectives, 3) before broken plurals denoting male persons; if these plurals do not immediately follow the verb, the latter in most cases takes the masc. singular form.
- d. Once the subject is introduced, the verbs following agree with it in gender and number, as جَاءَ زَيْدٌ وَحَالِدٌ وَعَبْدُ اللَّهِ وَقَالُوا there came Zaid, Hālid and 'Abdallah and they said. After collectives also the verb, in such a case, often takes the plural, as مَضَتْ الْعُلَمَاءُ يَتَّبِعُونَهُ the young people set out to follow him. So too after words like قَوْمٌ and others. Still it is always possible for the verb to remain in the singular, as وَقَرِئْشُ

تَحْبِسُ مَنْ قَدَرَتْ عَلَى حَبْسِهِ and the Kuraishites (the tribe Kuraish) imprisoned whomsoever they could imprison.

A subject unknown, or purposely left unnamed, 137. is treated as follows (cf. French *on dit*, German *man sagt*):

1) The verb is put in the 3. pers. sing. of the *a.* passive (see § 103), as يُسَارُ إِلَيْهِ they journey to him. It is to be noted that this impersonal passive can never stand without a complement (here إِلَيْهِ).

2) Or in the 3. pers. plur. of the active, as قَالُوا *b.* they said.

3) Or in the 2. pers. sing. (or plur.) of the active, *c.* e. g. in the Kūr'ān أَرَأَيْتَ or أَرَأَيْتُمْ dost thou think? do ye think? where it is not any particular persons that are addressed, but people in general, as much as to say 'could any one suppose that . . . ?' تَقُولُ one might say (cf. Eng. 'as you might say').

4) There may be added to the verb a subject *d.* (participle) formed from the same root, as قَالَ فَائِلٌ or قَصْرٌ لَمْ رَأَوْا الرَّادْنَ مِثْلَهُ some one said; a castle, the like of which had never been seen.

NOTE. The case of an undefined complement of a verbal action being expressed by a substantive derived from the verb is

not unfrequently met elsewhere than in the above construction, e. g. لَا يَخَافُونَ تَوْبَةَ لَا إِلَهٍ *aliquem (interfectum) interfecit*, they did not fear the reproof of any reprover.

138. Occasionally, out of something that has been mentioned, a story or the like, there arises an indefinite subject corresponding to our "it", which is usually expressed by the feminine of the verb; for example, after a fable or the like, فَدَهَبَتْ مَثَلًا, and it (i. e. this story) passed into a proverb.

139. The *nominal sentence*, in contrast to the verbal sentence, expresses a *state* or *condition* of the subject. This last as a rule stands at the head of the sentence in the case appropriate to the subject, viz. the nominative; in most cases it is determined while the predicate is undetermined. The predicate may consist of one or other of the following:

- a) a simple noun, as زَيْدٌ عَالِمٌ *Zaid is wise*;
- b) a preposition and its case, as الرَّجُلُ فِي الْبَيْتِ *the man is in the house*;
- c) an adverb, as عَبْدُ اللَّهِ هَهُنَا *'Abdallah is here*.
- d) a complete sentence, which may be either α) a verbal sentence, or β) a nominal sentence; the whole now becomes a compound sentence. Exx.: α) زَيْدٌ مَرِيضٌ *Zaid (he) is ill*; β) زَيْدٌ مَرِيضٌ أَبُوهُ *Zaid, his father is*

ill; β) زَيْدٌ أَبُوهُ مُسِنَّ زaid, his father is aged (i. e. Zaid's father &c.). The sentence constituting the predicate must contain a pronoun referring back to the subject. The subj. thus placed at the head of the sentence has been wrongly named the nominative absolute.

NOTE. The difficulty we feel in distinguishing between ضَرَبَ زَيْدٌ and زَيْدٌ ضَرَبَ Zaid has struck, may be explained in this way. In the first of these two expressions it is the act of striking that is uppermost in the speaker's mind, and the enquiry as to the subject or agent from whom the act proceeds is answered with Zaid, on which the logical emphasis now rests. In زَيْدٌ ضَرَبَ, on the other hand, we start with Zaid as a given subject or agent, and the question as to what is to be predicated regarding this subject or as to what this agent has done is answered by ضَرَبَ, on which in its turn the logical centre of gravity, so to say, comes to rest.

Between subject and predicate, when both are 140. determined, there ought to stand the pronoun of the 3. person, but this rule is not always observed, as اللَّهُ هُوَ الْحَيُّ God is the living One.—Sometimes, also, this pron. merely serves to emphasize the subject.

In negative and interrogative sentences the predi- 141. cate stands before the subject, as أَيْنَ زَيْدٌ where is Zaid? وَمَا لَكُمْ مِنْ وَلِيٍّ ye have no helper (in which case the subject وَلِيٍّ receives the addition of مِنْ

(= French *du*, &c.) as strengthening the negation). In the same way a predicate consisting of a preposition and its noun, or of an adverb, stands before the subject when the latter is undetermined and is not more precisely defined by any qualifying word or phrase, as *فِي الدَّارِ أَمْرَةٌ* in the house is a woman; *مِنْهُمْ مَنْ* among them are some who maintain.

NOTE. A predicate of this sort may even stand before a determined subject, but in that case the logical emphasis is on the subject, as *زَيْدٌ عِنْدِي*, *Zaid* is with me, while in *زَيْدٌ عِنْدِي* the logical stress is on the predicate: *Zaid* is with *me*.

142. Verbal adjectives (§ 60 *b*), in virtue of the verbal idea inherent in them, sometimes stand as predicate *before* the noun in the place of a finite verb, as *زَيْدٌ ضَارِبٌ أَبُوهُ عَمْرًا* *Zaid*, his father struck *Amr* = *Zaid's* father &c. The predicate, thus placed in advance, frequently agrees in gender and number with its subject following, as *الْمُؤَلَّفَةُ قُلُوبُهُمْ* whose hearts have been inclined (to Islam), but in respect of case it agrees with the word on which this kind of sentence is generally dependent, as *بِفَمٍّ عَذْبٍ رِيْقُهُ* with a mouth, whose saliva is sweet; *رَأَيْنَا دَوَابَّ مُخْتَلِفَةً أَلْوَانُهَا* we found animals, the species of which differed from each other, of different sorts. A circumstantial accusative

(§ 113 *b*) may also, in this way, refer to a following subject, although it is really dependent on the preceding verbs, as **جَاءَ زَيْدٌ رَاكِبًا أَبُوهُ** Zaid came, while his father rode.

When the subject of a nominal sentence consists 143. of a demonstrative pronoun, the latter agrees in gender with the following predicate, as **هَذِهِ جَارِيَةٌ** this is a female slave.

The predicate of **مَا** not (often also that of **لَيْسَ** 144. §§ 50 and 110, and of **كَانَ** § 110 when occurring with a negative) is introduced by **بِ**, as **مَا هَذَا بِمَلِكٍ** this is no king.

In the relation of subject and predicate (cf. § 119 *a*) 145. may stand in Arabic:

A thing and its dimensions, as **الْعَمُودُ ثَلَاثُونَ ذِرَاعًا** *a.* the pillar is thirty cubits (high).

A thing and that which it resembles, as **الْبَيْعُ مِثْلُ** *b.* selling is the likeness of (is like) usury; and so with **كَ** (§ 95 *f*), which likewise may stand in any of the three cases.

A thing and its parts, as **مُلُوكُ الْفَرَسِ أَرْبَعُ طَبَقَاتٍ** *c.* the kings of the Persians fall into four divisions.

- d. A thing and its material **بَعْضُ الْأَصَابِعِ حَدِيدٌ** **وَبَعْضُهَا خَزَفٌ** one part of the toes was of iron and another of clay.

146. In certain cases a pronoun has to be supplied as subject of a nominal sentence, as **يُقَالُ لَهُ مُحَمَّدٌ** it is said of him "he is Muḥammed", i. e. he is called Muḥammed, prop. = **هُوَ مُحَمَّدٌ**.

147. The particles **إِنَّ** (הִנֵּה) behold, and **أَنَّ** that (cf. § 96d), the compound particles **لَٰكِنَّ** nevertheless, **كَأَنَّ** as if, **لِأَنَّ** because, and other combinations, and also **لَعَلَّ** perhaps, **لَيْتَ** would that, are all followed by a *nominal sentence* the subject of which stands in the *accusative*, as **إِنَّ زَيْدًا كَرِيمٌ** behold (truly) Z. is generous. The predicate of the nominal sentence following **إِنَّ** or **أَنَّ**, if it should consist of an adverb or a preposition with its case (see §§ 139, 141), may stand *before* the subject, which must still be in the *accusative*, as **إِنَّ هُنَا رَجُلًا** verily (only in the rarest cases translatable) here is a man; **إِنَّ فِي الْقَلْعَةِ سِجْنًا** in the citadel is a prison.

NOTE. Sometimes a qualifying phrase consisting of a preposition and its case appears, in addition, before the subject, as **إِنَّ لِي** **إِلَيْكَ حَاجَةً** I have a request (to make) of thee.

The corroborative particle **لَ** (§ 95 *g*) is frequently *b.* prefixed to the predicate after a preceding **إِنَّ**, as **إِنَّ أَبَانَا لَفِي ضَلَالٍ** truly our father is in error; or even to the subject, as **إِنَّ فِي ذَلِكَ لَعِبْرَةً** truly therein is an example.

After the particles above mentioned, the pronoun *c.* of the 3. pers. sing. masc., as the so-called pronoun of the fact, is sometimes used as the subject of a nominal sentence; the predicate, in this case, consists of a complete sentence (cf. § 139 *d*), as **إِنَّهُ لَا يُفْلِحُ** of a truth (= the fact is), the evil-doers do not prosper; **قِيلَ إِنَّهُ كَانَ لِحَمْدِ أَرْبَعِ جَوَارٍ** it is related that M. had four female slaves.

While **إِنَّ** introduces a new and independent sen- 148. tence, one introduced by **أَنَّ** always forms part of *a.* another sentence, as **أَلَمْ تَعْلَمْ أَنَّ اللَّهَ عَلَى كُلِّ شَيْءٍ قَدِيرٌ** knowest thou not that God is mighty over all; here the sentence beginning with **أَنَّ** is really the object. In **لَمْ يُشَكِّ فِي أَنَّهُ أَعْمَى** there has never been any doubt that he is blind, the sentence with **أَنَّ** is virtually in the genitive; in **بَلَغَنِي أَنَّهُ تَزَوَّجَ** it has reached my ears that he is married, it represents the subject.

- b. Verbal sentences introduced by ^فأَنْ also form in this way an integral part of the principal sentence; a distinction must be made, however, between two varieties of this construction. If the sentence beginning with ^فأَنْ asserts that something is now going on, or that it has now ceased, the verb in the subordinate clause remains in the indicative, as ^فعَجِبْتُ مِنْ أَنْ ^فيَخْرُجُ عَلَيَّ (أَنْ) I am surprised that he takes the field against me, ^ففَعَلُوا ذَلِكَ إِلَى أَنْ مَاتُوا and they did this until they died; if, on the other hand, something is conceived as falling in the future and therefore still uncertain, the subjunctive (cf. § 100) is required, as ^فأَنْ تَفْعَلَ كَذَا it falls to thee to do so, ^فيَنْبَغِي أَنْ تَحْذَرَ مِنَ الْفَوَاحِشِ it is fit and proper that thou shouldst guard against shameful actions.

NOTE. Sometimes the preposition which indicates the relation of the two parts of the sentence is omitted before ^فأَنْ and ^فأَنْ, as ^فأَنْ = ^فأَنْ ^فلَئِنْ ^فلَئِنْ this was for the reason that, and it was so, because &c.

- c. In the cases discussed in the above sub-section an infinitive may take the place of ^فأَنْ with the finite verb. Quite as frequently as ^فأَنْ in such cases, we find مَا with the finite verb (of course always in the

indicative), as **عَجِبْتُ مِمَّا صَرَبْتَ زَيْدًا** I am surprised that thou hast struck Zaid = **مِنْ صَرْبِكَ زَيْدًا**. The use of this so-called infinitive-*mā* is very common; thus we have it in **كَمَا** (as)—made up of **كَيْ** and **مَا**—with a verbal sentence: **زَيْدٌ كَمَا ضُرِبَ عَمْرُو** Zaid was beaten as 'Amr was beaten.

When more than one predicate is required in a 149 nominal sentence, they generally follow each other without a conjunction (cf. §§ 122, 113 *b*, note *b*), as **إِنِّي حَفِيزٌ عَلِيمٌ** I am attentive and well-informed. The same is the case with the predicates of the verb **كَانَ** (which frequently occurs as the substantive verb) and the verbs akin thereto (see § 110), as **إِنَّ الْمَمْلَكَةَ نَصِيرُ آخِرِ الْوَقْتِ مُخْتَلِطَةٌ مُخْتَلِفَةٌ بَعْضُهَا قَوِيٌّ وَبَعْضُهَا ضَعِيفٌ** the kingdom will in the latter days become mixed and a prey to dissension, and one of which 150 one part will be strong and another weak.

In negative verbal sentences we find **مَا** with the 150. perfect, as **مَا شَرِبَ** he did not drink, or **لَمْ** with the ^a apocopated impf. (jussive, cf. § 101 *c*).

With the impf. indicative **مَا** is used, as **مَا يَشْرَبُ** ^b.

he does not drink, or لَا with the same tense لَا يَشْرَبُ he does not, or he will not drink.

Other uses of لَا are (a) with the apoc. impf. (cf. § 101 b) and (b) with the perfect (cf. § 98 d). As negating an act in the past لَا can only stand before the perfect when two perfects come together, as لَا صَدَّقَ وَلَا صَلَّى he neither believed nor prayed, or after sentences with other negatives.

NOTE. A preceding negative, even in the same sentence, is frequently resumed by means of لَا, as لَا صَاحِبَهُ وَلَا الْقَرْيَةَ تَمَّ يَعِدُ he did not find the village nor yet his friend again.

151. After the exceptive particle إِلَّا that which is excepted stands in the *accusative* when a positive sentence precedes, as جَاءَ النَّاسُ إِلَّا زَيْدًا the people came, except Zaid; when a negative sentence precedes that which is excepted is less frequently in the accusative, but rather, as a rule, in the same case as the word to which the limitation or exception applies, as مَا جَاءَ الْقَوْمُ إِلَّا زَيْدٌ the people came not, except Zaid; مَا مَرَرْتُ بِأَحَدٍ إِلَّا زَيْدٌ I passed no one except Z.; مَا صَرَبْتُ أَحَدًا إِلَّا عَمْرًا I have struck no one, except Amr. Very frequently in such cases it is the exception that brings us the necessary logical complement, as

مَا مَرَرْتُ إِلَّا بِزَيْدٍ I have not passed (anyone) except Zaid, i. e. I have passed only Zaid.

NOTE. Also in the sentence لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللَّهُ (§ 111) there is no God but Allah, the last word is in the nominative, because it is the logical subject (there is no God, if not Allah; but Allah is). In the sentence لَا حَوْلَ وَلَا قُوَّةَ إِلَّا بِاللَّهِ الْعَلِيِّ الْعَظِيمِ there is neither power nor strength except (in union) with Allah, the high and mighty One, the ideas of power and strength (حَوْلٌ وَقُوَّةٌ) must logically be supplied before the exception.

Chapter V. Compound Sentence. (§§ 152—161).

Co-ordinate sentences are as a rule joined together 152. by a copulative particle. Thus a simple co-ordinated sentence is usually introduced by وَ (§ 95*i*), as دَخَلَ زَيْدٌ وَقَالَ Z. entered and said. فَ (§ 95*e*), on the other hand, is used when the connection of the two sentences is less close, when, for example, the second event follows the first only after a certain interval, as مَرَضَ زَيْدٌ فَتَوَفَّى Zaid was ill; soon after he died. فَ, accordingly, is often used when the subject is changed, as جَاءَ زَيْدٌ فَقُلْتُ لَهُ Zaid came; and so I said to him. فَإِنَّ with a following nominal sentence expresses the motive of the action and is to be rendered by 'then', 'therefore'.

NOTE a. In lively narrative prose the connective particles are often dispensed with, particularly when the story is told in dialogue form, the words of each speaker being then mostly introduced by a simple قَال.

NOTE b. As illustration of the omission of the connectives (asyndeton) must not be quoted certain combinations of two verbs (cf. § 99 note a), in which the second verb denotes rather the end to which some more general activity is directed; such, for example, is the imperfect with verbs denoting a beginning. In other cases, a perfect may be made to depend on a perfect, an imperfect on an imperfect, an imperative on an imperative, as قَامُوا تَقَاتَلُوا they arose and fought with each other; قُمْ اُخْطَبَهَا arise and woo her.

NOTE c. Among the connective particles حَتَّى may also, in a certain sense, be reckoned, when it does not introduce a result expected in the future (§ 100), but denotes the actual completion of an action, as in the sentence سَارَ حَتَّى نَزَلَ مَكَّةَ he journeyed until he alighted at Mecca = he journeyed and at last alighted &c. In such cases حَتَّى may also be followed by an imperf. indicative or by اِنْ with a nominal sentence.

153. *Relative sentences* or clauses are of two kinds, those which do not accompany a noun and those which do accompany and qualify a noun. As regards the asyndetical connection of several qualifications, the latter class is subject to the same treatment as the qualifying adjuncts discussed in §§ 120—122.
154. Those relative sentences that do not depend on or qualify a noun are introduced either by الَّذِي (see § 14 a) he that, that which, whoso, &c., which is

declinable and always determined, or by the indeclinable pronouns مَنْ (he that, one that, whosoever, those that, such . . . as) and مَا (that which, a thing that, what). The former is sometimes determined, sometimes undetermined. Exx: الَّذِينَ كَفَرُوا بِآيَاتِنَا هُمْ أَصْحَابُ الْمَشْأَمَةِ those that reject our revelations, they will be the people of the left hand (الَّذِينَ is here in the nom. as being the subject); أَأَسْجُدُ لِمَنْ خَلَقْتَ طِينًا (the devil said:) Shall I fall down before one whom thou hast formed of clay (مَنْ is here in the genit.)? يَقُولُونَ بِأَفْوَاهِهِمْ مَا لَيْسَ بِقُلُوبِهِمْ they speak with their mouth what is not in their hearts (مَا is here accus.).

A relative clause is made to follow and qualify 155. a substantive by means of الَّذِي only when the substantive in question (the antecedent) is *determined*; with it الَّذِي agrees in gender and number, as ضَرَبْتُ الَّذِي ضَرَبْتُ with it الَّذِي agrees in gender and number, as ضَرَبْتُ ضَرَبْتُ the man that came. The explanation of this is that الَّذِي is originally not a relative in our sense of that word, but a demonstrative, and as such it is always determined. The above sentence, for example, means, strictly speaking: I struck that man there, he came. On the other hand

the relative clause is appended *without* الَّذِي when the antecedent is undetermined, as ضَرَبْتُ رَجُلًا جَاءَ I struck a man who came (prop. I struck a man, he came).

NOTE. الَّذِي is also dispensed with when the antecedent is only determined in a general sense (i. e. when it has the generic article see § 118c), as كَتَبَ الْإِصْبَارُ يَحْمِلُ أَكْفَارًا like an ass that carries books.

156. The relative clause, which we have seen to be strictly speaking merely a verbal or a nominal sentence subordinated to an antecedent noun, ought by rule to contain a pronoun referring back to this antecedent, as الرَّجُلُ الَّذِي أَبُوهُ غَنِيٌّ the man whose father is rich; كَانَ لَهُ ابْنٌ سَمِيَ مُحَمَّدًا he had a son, who was named M. (in this case the pronoun is implied in the verb); رَجُلٌ يُقَالُ لَهُ زَيْدٌ a man who is named Z. (prop. of whom it is said: [he is] Zaid, cf. § 146). The pronoun which in this way points back to the antecedent may stand in any part of the relative sentence; thus in the sentence قَدْ قَرَّبَ إِلَيْهِ الْجَيْشُ the army had come up close to him, regarding which he thought that it was still at a distance, it does not appear till we reach the sentence which is subordinated by أَنَّ to the verb ظَنَّ.

Collectives which denote living creatures (cf. § 136 d) may be followed here also by a plural verb, as
 قَوْمٌ يُؤْمِنُونَ people that believe.

NOTE a. The omission of the pronoun, however, is not unfrequent, especially when it would merely consist of a suffix of the 3. person, as قُلْتُ لِي مَا قُلْتُ I regret what I said.

NOTE b. In certain cases the antecedent may be repeated in the relative clause; indeed, this is the favourite construction with قُلُّ as كَانِ عِنْدَ هُبَلٍ قِدَاعٌ سَبْعَةُ كُلِّ قِدَحٍ مِنْهَا فِيهِ كِتَابٌ (idol) Hubal had seven arrows (for casting the lot), of which each single arrow had writing upon it.

A special kind of subordinate sentence is the 157. *circumstantial clause*. Such a clause may consist:

1) Of a *nominal sentence* introduced by the particle *a.* وَ, the subject of which may have been already mentioned or may be something quite new, as مَاتَتْ آمِنَةُ وَهِيَ رَاجِعَةٌ إِلَى مَكَّةَ Amina died while she was returning to Mecca; مَاتَ زَيْدٌ وَابْنُهُ صَغِيرٌ Zaid died while his son was still young; with a compound nominal sentence وَهُوَ يَقْصِدُ الْمَدِينَةَ he journeyed taking Medina as his goal. A sentence, whose predicate consisting of a preposition and its case comes before its subject, acc. to § 141, may stand as a circumstantial clause, *without* وَ, as خَرَجْتُ (وَ) فِي يَدِي قَبُوسٌ I went out with a bow in my hand.

- b. 2) Of a *verbal sentence* frequently; in this case the imperf. either stands alone or is preceded by وَقَدْ. When the sentence is a negative one, the negative is لَا or وَمَا; or the verb may stand in the apoc. impf. with لَمْ or وَلَمْ (as the negation of the perf.). We may also have the perfect with وَقَدْ or وَكَانَ, when negative with وَمَا; thus we get the following: جَاءَ زَيْدٌ يَخْحَكُ Z. came laughing; وَكَانَتْ قَالِ أُنْثَى يَكُونُ لِي غُلَامٌ وَكَانَتْ (Zakariya) said; how shall I have a male child, seeing my wife is barren and I have reached too great an age; دَخَلَ أَمْرَأَتِي عَاقِرًا وَقَدْ بَلَغْتُ مِنَ الْكِبَرِ عِتِيًّا he entered the room without greeting me.

NOTE. In contrast to the stiffer accusative of condition (§ 113 b) the verbal circumstantial clause expresses the commencement of the action; there is very little difference, however, between جَاءَ زَيْدٌ ضَاحِكًا and جَاءَ زَيْدٌ يَضْحَكُ.

158. In *temporal* clauses (also in conditional clauses)
- a. which are formed with the particle إِذَا when, if, we find in the protasis as well as in the apodosis the perfect in the sense of our present or future, إِذَا رَأَى جَيْشِي إِذَا رَأَى صَعَابَةُ الْأَمْرِ ذَلَّتْ صِعَابُهُ when John takes the thing in hand, its difficulties are easily surmounted.

NOTE a. The imperfect may also stand after **إِذَا** if the action takes place repeatedly. Should **إِذَا** be followed by a compound nominal sentence, as **إِذَا أَلْبَجِعِمُ سَعَرَتْ** when hell is heated, it is considered that this is but another way of writing what we should expect to find expressed in a verbal sentence (and so with **إِنْ**).

NOTE b. A sentence with **إِذَا** may also be inserted between two closely related words, or rather it is to be regarded as forming with its apodosis a complete unity. Thus: **فَاتَّهَمَا بَابَايَ إِذَا فُتِحَا** **تَمَّ يَغْلَقَا** there were two gates, which when they were opened could not be shut (again). In the apodosis to **إِذَا** a perfect is found where we should expect an imperfect (cf. § 99c), as **كَانُوا إِذَا أَسْرُوا** **رَجَلًا وَأَطْلَقُوا جُزْرًا نَاصِيتَهُ** they were wont, when they captured a man and then released him, to cut off his front lock of hair. Very frequently a sentence like this, with **إِذَا**, is inserted between **حَتَّى** (§ 152 note c) and its proper verb, as **تَبِعْتُهُ حَتَّى إِذَا دَخَلَ الدَّارَ** **أَتْرَكْتُهُ** I followed him until I overtook him as he entered the house.

مَا in the sense of 'so long as' takes the perfect, as **ب. مَا** **دُمْتُ أَنَا شَاكِرٌ** so long as I live I shall be thankful.

In sentences containing the notion of a *condition* 159. which is the case after **إِنْ** if, **مَنْ** if anybody, **مَا** if anything, **كَيْفَ مَا** whatsoever, **كَيْفَ** how, howsoever, **مَتَى** when &c. the perf. is used in the sense of our present or future, and so too in the apodosis, as **إِنْ فَعَلْتَ ذَلِكَ هَلَكْتَ** if thou doest that, thou

wilt perish; **مَنْ جَالَ نَالَ** whoso seeketh, findeth (if any one seeks, he finds).

NOTE. If the perf. is meant to retain its proper force in the protasis, the verb **كَانَ** is placed after **إِنْ**, as **إِنْ كَانَ قَمِيصُهُ قَدْ مَنَّ** if his camisole is torn in front, she has told the truth.

160. The particles above mentioned may also take the

^{a.} apoc. impf. in protasis and apodosis alike, as **إِنْ تَصْبِرُوا** if ye wait patiently, God will help you.

^{b.} The apoc. impf. also stands in the apodosis after an imperative (with conditional force) in the protasis, as **عِشْ قَنِعًا تَكُنْ مَلِكًا** live contentedly (i. e. if thou live &c.) thou wilt be a king.

^{c.} An apoc. impf. in the protasis may be followed by a perfect in the apodosis, as **إِنْ تَصْبِرْ ظَفِرْتَ** if thou wait patiently, thou wilt gain the victory. If the clauses are both negative, we have **لَمْ** with the apoc. impf., as **إِنْ لَمْ يَبْرَحْ لَمْ أَرْضَ** if he does not go away, I am not satisfied.

NOTE. Occasionally the apodosis of a conditional sentence is wanting, e. g. **إِنْ كَانَ هَذَا** if this is so—supply: then it is well (Arab. **قَبِيهَا**).

161. Before the apodoses of conditional sentences, other than those discussed in § 159—160 we find the particle **فَ**, which is employed:

1) When the apodosis is a nominal sentence, as *a*.
إِنْ عَصَى فَوَيْلٌ لَهُ if he is refractory, then alas for him! Also before sentences with **إِنَّ** and before interrogative sentences.

2) When the apodosis is a verbal sentence, of which *b*.
 the perfect is intended to retain its force as a perfect (cf. § 159 note), especially, too, when **قَدْ** (cf. § 98 *e*) is employed, as **إِنْ أَسْلَمُوا فَقَدْ أَهْتَدَوْا وَإِنْ تَوَلَّوْا** if they become Moslems, then have they come to the right way, and if they turn aside, then thou hast but to announce the message.

3) When the apodosis is a verbal sentence that contains an impf. with one of the particles **لَنْ**, **سَوْفَ**, **سَ**, or that expresses a command or a wish, as **إِنْ كُنْتَ** if thou findest thyself among people, milk into their pail.

APPENDIX.

COMPUTATION OF TIME.

a. Names of the Days of the Week.

In the following list the various names may also be used with the word for day, ^{يَوْمَ} omitted.

1. ^{يَوْمَ}الْأَحَدِ (1st day) Sunday.
2. ^{يَوْمَ}الْاِثْنَيْنِ (2nd day) Monday.
3. ^{يَوْمَ}الثَّلَاثَاءِ (3rd day) Tuesday.
4. ^{يَوْمَ}الرَّابِعَاءِ (4th day) Wednesday.
5. ^{يَوْمَ}الْخَمِيسِ (5th day) Thursday.
6. ^{يَوْمَ}الْجُمُعَةِ (day of assembly) Friday.
7. ^{يَوْمَ}السَّبْتِ (Sabbath) Saturday.

b. Names of the Months.

In the names of the months the word ^{شَهْرَ}شَهْر, month, may be prefixed in the constr. state throughout; indeed, as the following table shows, some of the names are always so written.

1. ^{اَلْمَكْرَمُ} al-Muḥarram.
2. ^{صَفَرٌ} Ṣafar.
3. ^{شَهْرُ رَبِيعِ الْأَوَّلِ} the first Rabīʿ.
4. ^{شَهْرُ رَبِيعِ الثَّانِي} the second Rabīʿ.
5. ^{جُمَادَى الْأُولَى} the first Ġumādā.
6. ^{جُمَادَى الْآخِرَةِ} the latter Ġumādā.
7. ^{رَجَبٌ} Raġab.
8. ^{شَعْبَانُ} Šaʿbān.
9. ^{رَمَضَانُ} Ramaḍān (the month of fasting).
10. ^{شَوَّالٌ} Šawwāl.
11. ^{ذُو الْقَعْدَةِ} Du-lqaʿda.
12. ^{ذُو الْحِجَّةِ} Du-lhiġġa (month of the pilgrimage, ḥaġġ).

c. The Year.

The Moslems reckon by lunar years of 354 days; their first year is usually considered as beginning at the date of the Christian era given below. In calculating from one era to the other, it may be reckoned that 33 solar years are equal to 34 lunar years.

In the works of European scholars it is customary, by means of comparative tables, to give the precise day of our era with which each Moslem year begins (see the Bibliography). The following short table will be useful in helping to a rapid approximation of the date required.

The Moslem year	1 began	16. July	622 A. D.
" " "	101	" 24. July	719 " "
" " "	201	" 30. July	816 " "
" " "	301	" 7. Aug.	913 " "
" " "	401	" 15. Aug.	1010 " "
" " "	501	" 22. Aug.	1107 " "
" " "	601	" 29. Aug.	1204 " "
" " "	701	" 6. Sept.	1301 " "
" " "	801	" 13. Sept.	1398 " "
" " "	901	" 21. Sept.	1495 " "
" " "	1001	" 8. Oct.	1592 " "
" " "	1101	" 15. Oct.	1689 " "
" " "	1201	" 24. Oct.	1786 " "
" " "	1301	" 2. Nov.	1883 " "
" " "	1313	" 24. June	1895 " "

LITERATURE.

A history of Arabic literature as a whole, or even of particular parts of it, does not exist, for the work of Hammer-Purgstall (*Litteraturgeschichte der Araber, von ihrem Beginn bis zu Ende des zwölften Jahrhunderts der Hidschret.* 7 Bände. Wien 350—56. 4^o.) must be described as premature and as useless by reason of its numerous mistakes. An acquaintance with Arabic literature must therefore be got partly from works by Arabs on the history of their literature, partly from European catalogues. In the course of the present century numerous works, including not a few specimens of the earlier literature, have been printed in the East, especially in Cairo (government press in Būlak), Beirūt (where there is an excellent press managed by the Jesuits) and Constantinople; also in Persia, India and the island of Java. We must, in particular, mention the great quantity of valuable Arabic manuscripts that still await publication both in European and eastern libraries. A synopsis of such catalogues of these MSS. as have hitherto appeared will be found below.

In the following selection, books of special importance are marked with a star, those recommended to beginners with a dagger.

A. BIBLIOGRAPHY.

I. Printed Works.

a. Written by Orientals.

**Kitāb al-Fihrist* (by *Ibn abī Ya'kūb an-nadīm*; wrote in the year 377 H., beg. 3. May 987) mit Anmerkungen herausgegeben von *Gustav Flügel*. Nach dessen Tode besorgt von *Johannes Rödiger* und *August Müller*. 2 voll. Leipzig 1871—2.

**Lexicon bibliographicum et encyclopaedicum a Muṭaṭṭaṭha ben Abdallah Katib Jelibi dicto et nomine Haji Khalfā (Ḥaǧǧi Ḥalīfa † 1658) celebrato compositum. Ad codicum Vindobonensium Parisiensium et Berolinensium fidem primum edidit latine vertit et commentario indicibusque instruxit Gustavus Flügel.* Leipzig-London 1835—1858. 7 voll. 4^o.

β *Written by Europeans.*

- Bibliotheca arabica. Auctam nunc atque integram edidit *D. Christianus Fridericus de Schnurrer*. Halae ad Salam 1811.
- †Bibliotheca orientalis. Manuel de Bibliographie orientale. I. contenant les livres arabes, persans et turcs imprimés depuis l'invention de l'imprimerie jusqu'à nos jours tant en Europe qu'en Orient etc. par *J. Th. Zaker*. Leipzig 1846. — Bibliotheca orientalis. Manuel de Bibliographie orientale. II. contenant 1. supplément du premier volume. 2. Littérature de l'Orient chrétien. 3. Littérature de l'Inde etc. Par *J. Th. Zenker*. Leipzig 1861.
- †(Euting) Katalog der kaiserlichen Universitäts- und Landesbibliothek in Strassburg. Arabische Litteratur. Strassburg 1877. 40.
- Bibliographie des ouvrages arabes ou relatifs aux Arabes publiés dans l'Europe chrétienne de 1810 à 1885 par *Victor Chauvin*. I. Préface. — Table de Schnurrer. — Les Proverbes. Liège 1892 (is being continued).
- Wissenschaftlicher Jahresbericht über die morgenländischen Studien, von 1844 an in Zeitschrift der Deutschen Morgenländischen Gesellschaft Leipzig 1847 ff. The annual reports on works published up to 1858 appeared in the *Zeitschrift*, those for the years 1859—61, 62—67 (one part), autumn 1877—81 appeared as independent publications.
- Bibliotheca orientalis oder eine vollständige Liste der im Jahre 1876 in Deutschland, Frankreich, England und den Colonien erschienenen Bücher, Broschüren, Zeitschriften, u. s. w. über die Sprachen, Religionen, Antiquitäten, Literaturen, Geschichte und Geographie des Ostens, zusammengestellt von *Karl Friederici*. Leipzig. 8 years (to 1883).
- Bibliography for 1883—85 (not completed) in the *Literatur-Blatt für orientalische Philologie* unter Mitwirkung von Dr. Johannes Klatt herausgegeben von Prof. Dr. *Ernst Kuhn*. 1883—85.
- *Orientalische Bibliographie . . . herausgegeben von *A. Müller*, now *E. Kuhn*. Berlin 1888 ff.
- Katalog der Bibliothek der Deutschen Morgenländischen Gesellschaft. I. Druckschriften und Ähnliches. Leipzig 1880 (a new and largely augmented edition will appear in a year or two).
- A. G. Ellis*, Catalogue of the Arabic books in the British Museum Vol I. A-L. London 1894.
- For works from oriental presses an important guide is: *E. J. Brill*, Catalogue périodique de livres orientaux I—IX, Leide 1883 ff. (To parts I—VII Index de noms d'auteurs et de noms de livres, ib. 1889).

II. Manuscripts.

- (Die Handschriftenverzeichnisse der königlichen Bibliothek in Berlin. Vols. 7 ff.). Verzeichniss der arabischen Handschriften von *W. Ahlwardt*. 4^o. 1. Band. Berlin 1887; 2. Bd. 1889; 3. Bd. 1891; 4. Bd. 1892; 5. Bd. 1893; 6. Bd. 1894. A 7th and last vol. will appear soon.
- (Halle) Katalog der Bibliothek der Deutschen Morgenländischen Gesellschaft. II. Handschriften u. s. w. Leipzig 1881.
- Verzeichnis der orientalischen Handschriften der Bibliothek des Halle'schen Waisenhauses von *Fr. Aug. Arnold* und *August Müller*. (Programm der Lateinischen Hauptschule). Halle 1876. 4^o.
- (University Library, Leipzig) Die Refäiya. Von Prof. *Fleischer*: Zeitschrift der Deutschen Morgenländischen Gesellschaft. 8, S. 573—584.
- (Municipal Library in Leipzig) Catalogus librorum manuscriptorum, qui in bibliotheca senatoria civitatis Lipsiensis asservantur, ed. Naumann. Codices orientalium linguarum descripserunt *H. O. Fleischer* et *Fr. Delitzsch*. Grimmae 1838. 4^o.
- Catalogus codicum manuscriptorum orientalium Bibliothecae regiae Dresdensis. Scripsit et indicibus instruxit *H. O. Fleischer*. Lipsiae 1831. 4^o.
- Die arabischen Handschriften der herzoglichen Bibliothek zu Gotha. Verzeichnet von *Wilhelm Pertsch*. 5 Bände. Gotha 1878—1892. (Also w. the title: Die orientalischen Handschriften der h. B. zu G. Dritter Theil).
- Die arabischen Handschriften der K. Hof- und Staatsbibliothek in München, beschrieben von *Joseph Aumer*. München 1866. (Catalogus codicum manuscriptorum Bibliothecae regiae Monacensis. Tomi primi pars secunda.)
- (Tübingen University Library) Catalog arabischer Handschriften in Damaskus gesammelt von *J. G. Wetzstein*. Berlin 1863.
- Catalogus librorum manuscriptorum orientalium in bibliotheca academica Bonnensi servatorum adornavit *Joannes Gildemeister*. Bonnæ 1864—1876. 4^o.
- Katalog der hebräischen, arabischen, persischen und türkischen Handschriften der kaiserlichen Universitäts- und Landesbibliothek zu Strassburg. Bearbeitet von *S. Landauer*. Strassburg 1881. 4^o.
- Die arabischen, persischen und türkischen Handschriften der kaiserlich-königlichen Hofbibliothek. zu Wien. Von *Gustav Flügel*. 3 Bände. Wien 1865—7. 4^o.
- (Copenhagen) Codices orientales Bibliothecae regiae Havniensis enumerati et descripti a *N. L. Westergaard* etc. II. Codices hebr. et arab. Hafniæ 1851.

- Codices Orientales bibliothecae regiae universitatis *Lundensis* recensuit *Curolus Johannes Tornberg*. Lundae 1850.
- Codices Arabici, Persici et Turcici bibliothecae regiae universitatis *Upsaliensis*. Disposuit et descripsit *C. T. Tornberg*. Upsaliae 1849. 4^o.
- (*Paris*) Catalogue des manuscrits arabes de la Bibliothèque Nationale par le Baron *de Slane*. Pr. Fascicule. Paris 1883. Sec. Fasc. 1889. Trois. Fasc. 1895. 4^o. (To be continued.)
- Catalogue général des manuscrits des bibliothèques publiques de France. Départements. Tome VI (p. 437—482). Marseille. Par *M. l'abbé Albanès*. Paris 1892. — Tome XVIII. Alger. Par *E. Fagnan*. Paris 1893.
- (*Leide*) Catalogus codicum orientalium Bibliothecae academiae *Lugduno* Batavae I. II. auctore *R. P. A. Dozy*. III. IV. auct. *P. de Jong* et *M. J. de Goeje*. V. auctore *M. J. de Goeje*. VI. auctore *M. Th. Houtsma*. Lugduni Batavorum 1851—77. — Editio secunda. Vol. I auctoribus *M. J. de Goeje* et *M. Th. Houtsma*. Lugduni Bat. 1888.
- (*London*) Catalogus codicum manuscriptorum orientalium qui in *Museo Britannico* asservantur. Pars secunda codices arabicos amplectens. Londini 1846. fol.
- (*London*) Supplement to the Catalogue of the Arabic manuscripts in the British Museum (By *Charles Rieu*). London 1894. 4^o.
- (*London*) A catalogue of the Arabic manuscripts in the library of the *India Office*. By *Otto Loth*. London 1877. 4^o.
- (*Oxford*) Bibliothecae Bodleianae codicum manuscriptorum orientalium, videlicet hebraicorum, chaldaicorum, syriacorum, aethiopicorum, arabicorum, persicorum, turcicorum, copticorumque catalogus a *Joanne Uri* confectus. Pars Prima Oxonii 1787. — Partis secundae volumen primum arabicos complectens confecit *Alexander Nicoll*. Oxonii 1821. fol.
- (*Cambridge*) Catalogus Bibliothecae Burckhardtianae cum appendice librorum aliorum orientalium in Bibliotheca Academica *Cantabrigiensis* asservatorum — confecit *T. Preston*. Cantabrigiae 1853. 4^o.
- Catalogue of the Oriental Manuscripts in the Library of King's College, *Cambridge*. By *Edward Henry Palmer*: Journal of the Roy. As. Society of Gr. Britain and Ireland. New Series III. 105 ff.
- A descriptive Catalogue of the Arabic, Persian and Turkish Manuscripts in the Library of Trinity College, *Cambridge*. By *E. H. Palmer*. Cambridge and London 1870.
- (*Escorial*) Bibliotheca arabico-hispana *Escorialensi* sive Librorum omnium Mss. quos Arabice ab auctoribus magnam partem Arabo-Hispanis compositos Bibliotheca Coenobii *Escorialensis* complectitur

- recensio et explanatio operâ et studio *Michaelis Casiri* etc. 2 tomi. *Matriti* 1760. fol. — Les manuscrits arabes de l'Escorial décrits par *Hartwig Dërenbourg*. Tome premier. Paris 1884.
- Catálogo de los Manuscritos árabes existentes en la Biblioteca Nacional de *Madrid* (*F. G. Roblés*). Madrid 1889.
- (*Florence*) *Bibliothecae Mediceae Laurentianae et Palatinae Codicum manuscriptorum orientalium catalogus*, *Steph. Evod. Assemanus* recensuit. Florentiae 1742. fol.
- (*Venice*) *Catalogo dei Codici manoscritti orientali della Biblioteca Nániana*, compilato dell' abate *Simone Assemani*. 2 Part. Padova 1787—1792. 4^o.
- Remarques sur les manuscrits orientaux de la Collection Marsigli a *Bologne* suivies de la liste complète des Manuscrits arabes de la même collection par le Baron *Victor Rosen*. Roma 1885 (atti della R. Accademia dei Lincei. Serie 3^a. Vol. XII).
- (*Milan*) *Catalogo dei Codici arabi, persiani e turchi della Biblioteca Ambrosiana* (*Hammer-Purgstall*): *Biblioteca Italiana* t. XCIV, pp. 22 and 322.
- Cataloghi dei codici orientali di alcune biblioteche d'Italia. 5 fasc. Firenze 1878—1892.
- Catalogue des manuscrits et xylographes orientaux de la Bibliothèque Impériale publique de *St. Pétersbourg*. St. Pétersbourg 1852.
- (*St. Petersburg*) *B. Dorn*, Catalogue des ouvrages arabes, persans et turcs, publiés à Constantinople, en Egypte et en Perse, qui se trouvent au Musée asiatique de l'Académie. — Chronologisches Verzeichniss der seit dem Jahre 1801 bis 1866 in Kasan gedruckten arabischen, türkischen, tatarischen und persischen Werke, als Katalog der in dem asiatischen Museum befindlichen Schriften: *Mélanges asiatiques tirés du Bulletin de l'Académie Impériale des sciences de St. Pétersbourg*. Tome V. Livr. 5. St. Pétersbourg 1867.
- (*St. Petersburg*) *Notices sommaires des manuscrits arabes du Musée asiatique* par le Baron *Victor Rosen*. St. Pétersbourg 1881.
- (*St. Petersburg*) *Les manuscrits arabes de l'Institut des langues orientales* décrits par le Baron *Victor Rosen*. St. Pétersbourg 1877.
- (*J. M. E. Gottwald*) description of the Arabic Manuscripts in the Library of the Imperial University of *Kasan*. Kasan (no date) [1885]. In Russian.
- (*Cairo*) *Fihrist al-kutub al-'arabiya al-mahfūza bil-kutubhāna al-hediyye el-kā'ine biserāi derb al-gamāmiz*. (Under the management of *Spitta* and *Vollers*.) 7 vols. Cairo 1301—1308. Second Edition. Vol. I 1310.
- Catalog der mektebe 'umūmiye in *Damascus*. Damascus 1299. 4^o.
- Studia Sinaitica* No. III. Catalogue of the Arabic Mss. in the Convent of S. Catharine on Mount *Sinai* compiled by *Margaret Dunlop Gibson*. London 1894.

(*Batavia*) *Friedrich*, Codicum arabicorum in Bibliotheca Societatis Artium et Scientiarum quae *Bataviae* floret asservatorum Catalogus. Absolvit indicibusque instruxit *L. W. C. van den Berg*. Bataviae et Hagae 1873.

B. INTRODUCTION.

General.

Borhân-ed-dîni es-Sernûdjî (as-Sarnûgî lived at the end of the 12th century of our era) Enchiridion studiosi. Arabice edidit latine vertit et lexico explanavit *Carolus Caspari*. Praefatus est *H. O. Fleischer*. Lipsiae 1838. 4^o.

Einleitung in das Studium der Arabischen Sprache bis Mohammed und zum Theil später . . . von *G. W. Freytag*. Bonn 1861.

Orientalische Skizzen. Von *Theodor Nöldeke*. Berlin 1892. Translated, with the title 'Sketches from Eastern History' by *J. S. Black*. London and Edinburgh 1892.

De auctorum graecorum versionibus et commentariis syriacis, arabicis, armeniacis persicisque commentatio quam scripsit *Joannes Georgius Wenrich*. Lipsiae 1842. 1845.

C. CHRESTOMATHIES.

*†*R. Brünnow*, Chrestomathy of Arabic Prose-Pieces. Berlin and London 1895.

†Chrestomathia arabica quam e libris Mss. vel impressis rarioribus collectam edidit *Fr. A. Arnold*. Pars I. Textum continens. Pars II. Glossarium continens. Halis 1853.

†Chrestomathie Arabe, ou extraits de divers écrivains Arabes, tant en prose qu'en vers à l'usage des élèves de l'école spéciale des langues orientales vivantes; par *A. J. Sylvestre de Sacy*. II. éd. corr. et augm. Paris 1826. 3 vol.; Tome IV Anthologie grammaticale arabe. Paris 1829.

†Chrestomathie élémentaire de l'Arabe littéral avec un glossaire par *H. Dénobourg* et *J. Spiro*. 2 ed. Paris 1892.

Joh. Godofr. Lud. Kosegartenii Chrestomathia arabica ex codicibus manuscriptis Paris. Goth. et Berol. collecta atque tum adscriptis vocalibus, cum additis lexico et adnotationibus explanata. Lipsiae 1828.

Georg. Guil. Freytag, Chrestomathia arabica, grammatica historica in usum scholarum Arabicarum ex codd. ineditis conscripta. 8^o maj. Bonnae 1834.

- †Thier und Mensch vor dem König der Genien. Ein arabisches Märchen aus den Schriften der lauterer Brüder in Basra im Urtext herausgegeben von *Fr. Dieterici*. 2. Ausgabe. Leipzig 1881. — Arabisch-deutsches Wörterbuch zum Koran und Thier und Mensch von *Fr. Dieterici*. 2. Aufl. Leipzig 1894.
- Brevis chrestomathia arabica. In usum scholarum ed. *Joh. Bollig*. Roma 1881.
- Chrestomathia árábigo-española por *Fr. J. Lerchundi y Fr. J. Simonet*. Granada 1881.
- Girgas* and *de Rosen*. Arabic Chrestomathy (in Russian). St. Petersburg 1875. 1876. — Dictionary to the Chrestomathy and to the Koran by *W. Girgas*. Kasan 1881 (in Russian).
- An Arabic reading-book compiled by *W. Wright*. Part first, The texts. London 1870.
- Magānī el-adab fī ḥadāik el-'arab. 6. Ed. Beirut 1895 ff. Jesuit Press. 6 vols. Šarḥ magānī el-adab (Notes &c.). 4 vols. ib. 1886—8.

D. GRAMMARS &c.

a Written by Orientals.

- **al-Mushir* fī 'ulūm el-luġa, philological Encyclopaedia by Ġalāl ad-dīn as-Suyūṭī († 911 H., beg. 4. June 1505, cf. for as-Suyūṭī *Goldziher* in den Sitzungsber. d. kais. Akademie der Wiss. zu Wien. Phil.-histor. Cl. LXIX. Bd. 1. S. 7 ff.) Bulak 1282.
- *Le livre de Sībawaihī, traité de grammaire arabe par Sībōuya, dit *Sībawaihī* († 180 H., beg. 16. March 796). Texte arabe publié d'après les manuscrits du Caire, de l'Escorial, d'Oxford, de Paris, de St. Pétersbourg et de Vienne par *Hartwig Derenbourg*. Tome I, Paris 1881. Tome II, Paris 1889. — *Sībawaihī's* Buch über die Grammatik nach der Ausgabe von H. Derenbourg und dem Commentar des Sīrāfi übersetzt und erklärt . . . von *G. Jahn*. 1.—8. Lieferung. Berlin 1894. 1895.
- **Al-Mufaṣṣal*, opus de re grammatica arabicum auctore Abu 'l-Kāsim Maḥmūd bin 'Omar Zamahšario (*as-Zamahšari* † 538 H., beg. 16. July 1143) ed. *J. P. Broch*. Editio altera. Christianiae 1879. — Also: *Ibn Jā'is* († 643 H., beg. 29. May 1245) Commentar zu Zamachšari's Mufaṣṣal. Nach den Handschriften . . . herausgeg. u. s. w. von Dr. *G. Jahn*. Erster Band. Leipzig, 1882. Zweiter Band. Leipzig 1886. 40.
- **Alfijjah*, Carmen didacticum grammaticum auctore Ibn Mālik († 672 H., beg. 18. July 1273) et in Alfijjam commentarius quem conscripsit Ibn Akil (*Ibn 'Akīl* † 769 H., beg. 28. Aug. 1367) ed. *Fr. Dieterici*. Lipsiae 1851. — Ibn 'Akīl's Commentar zur Alfijja des Ibn Malik Socin, Arabic Grammar. 10

- aus dem Arabischen zum ersten male übersetzt von *Fr. Dieterici*. Berlin 1852.
- al-Ağurrūmiyya, Arabic Grammar by *Ibn Ağurrūm* as-Sinhāgī († 723 H., beg. 10. January 1323). Often printed with and without Commentaries. Cf. *E. Trumpp*, Einleitung in das Studium der arabischen Grammatiken. Die Ajrummiyyah des Muhammad bin Daud. München 1876. On this work see *Fleischer* in Zeitschrift der D. Morgenl. Ges. 30 (1876), pp. 487—513; reprinted in Kleinere Schriften II (Leipzig 1888), pp. 75—106. Text also printed in Brünnow's Chrestomathy.
- Kāfiya fin-naḥū, Syntax by *Ibn al-Hāgib* († 646 H., beg. 26. April 1248). Frequently printed in the East.
- Mugni al-labīb, Grammar composed by *Ibn Hišām al-Anṣārī* († 762 H., beg. 11. Nov. 1360). Another grammatical work by the same author bears the title: Kaṭar an-nadā wa-ball aṣ-ṣadā; a third *Šuḍūr ad-ḍahab*. All three works have been frequently printed in the East.
- al-*Hariri's* († 516 H., beg. 16. July 1143) Durrat al-gawwās, herausgegeben von *Heinrich Thorbecke*. Leipzig 1871. (On errors of speech). With the commentary of al-Hafāgī, Constantinople 1299. Cf. Le livre des locutions vicieuses de Djawālīkī publié par *Hartwig Derenbourg* (al-Ġawālīkī † 465 H., beg. 17. Sept. 1072) in Morgenländische Forschungen. Leipzig 1875.
- Ṭarika mustahḍata fī tashīl al-ḥaṭṭ al-ʿarabī. Calligraphic models 12 parts. Beirut 1891.

β *Written by Europeans.*

- *Die grammatischen Schulen der Araber nach den Quellen bearbeitet von *G. Flügel*. Erste Abthl. Leipzig 1862. Abhandlungen der Deutschen Morgenl. Ges. II. Band. Nr. 4. (This work gives a list of grammarians to about the year 1000 of our era).
- †*Dr. C. P. Caspari's* Arabische Grammatik. Fünfte Auflage bearbeitet von *August Müller*. Halle 1887. — Grammaire arabe de *C. P. Caspari* traduite de la quatrième édition allemande et en partie remaniée par *E. Uricoechea*. Bruxelles 1880. — A Grammar of the Arabic Language translated from the German of *Caspari* and edited, with numerous additions and corrections by *W. Wright*. 2. ed. 2 vol. London 1874—5. A 3rd edit. is announced.
- Geo. Henric. Aug. Ewald*. Grammatica critica linguae arabicae cum brevi metrorum doctrina. Lipsiae 1831—1833. II vol.
- *Grammaire arabe à l'usage des élèves de l'école spéciale des langues orientales vivantes; avec figures. Par *M. le Bon Silvestre de Sacy*. Seconde édition, corrigée et augmentée, à laquelle on a joint un traité de la prosodie et de la métrique des Arabes. 2 tom. Paris 1831. — Very important notes and corrections will be found in

- **Fleischer*, „Beiträge zur arabischen Sprachkunde“: Berichte über die Verhandlungen der kgl. sächsischen Gesellschaft der Wissenschaften zu Leipzig. Philologisch-historische Classe. 1863 (p. 93 ff.); 1864 (p. 265 ff.); 1866 (p. 286 ff.); 1870 (p. 227 ff.); 1874 (p. 71 ff.); 1876 (p. 44 ff.); 1878 (p. 64 ff.); 1880 (p. 89 ff.); 1881 (p. 117 ff.); 1883 (p. 72 ff.); 1884 (p. 272 ff.); conf. 1856 (p. 1 ff.); 1862 (p. 10 ff.) Reprinted in *Kleinere Schriften von Dr. H. L. Fleischer*, vol. I, 1st. and 2nd. parts, Leipzig 1886; the two last articles in vol. II, part 1. Leipzig 1888.
- J. G. L. Kosegarten*. *Grammatica linguae arabicae* pp. 1—688, without title and date, incomplete. (Very rare).
- Mortimer Sloper Howell*. *A Grammar of the Classical Arabic Language*, translated and compiled from the Works of the most Approved Native or Naturalized Authorities. Published under the Authority of the Government of the N.-W. Provinces. In an Introduction and Four Parts. 3 vols. Allahabad 1880, 1883, 1886.
- Grammaire arabe composée d'après les sources primitives* par le P. *Donat Vernier*, S. J. Tome I. Beyrouth 1891; Tome II. 1892.
- Darstellung der arabischen Verskunst mit sechs Anhängen u. s. w. nach handschriftlichen Quellen bearbeitet und mit Registern versehen von G. W. Freytag*. Bonn 1830.
- Théorie nouvelle de la métrique arabe précédée de considérations générales sur le rythme naturel du langage* par *M. Stanislas Guyard*. Paris 1875 (Extrait du Journal as. 7 sér., t. 7. 8).
- Die Rhetorik der Araber nach den wichtigsten Quellen dargestellt und mit angeführten Textauszügen nebst einem literaturgeschichtlichen Anhang versehen von Dr. A. F. Mehren*. Kopenhagen 1853.

E. DICTIONARIES.

a. Written by Orientals.

- **Ṣaḥāḥ al-ʿarabiyye* (or *as-Ṣaḥāḥ*) by *al-Ġauharī* (Abū Naṣr Ismāʿīl ibn Hammād † 393 H., beg. 10. Nov. 1002). 2 vols. Bulak 1282. 4^o.
- Lisān al-ʿarab* by *al-Mukarram* (Ibn Manẓūr al-Ifriqī al-Miṣrī al-Anṣārī al-Ḥazraġī † 711 H., beg. 13. May 1311). 20 vols. 4^o. Cairo 1308.
- **al-Kāmūs al-muḥīṭ* (or *al-Kāmūs*) by *al-ʿIrīsābādī* († 816 or 817 H. = 1413/4). 2 vols. Calcutta 1817; 4 vols. Bulak 1279. 4^o. id. 1301/2. — With Turkish Commentary 3 vols. Stambul 1272 and later. — *Commentary to the *Kāmūs* with the title *Tāġ-el-ʿarūs* composed by *Sayyid Murtaḍā az-Zubaidī* († 1205 H., beg. 10 Sept. 1790). 10 vols. Cairo 1307.
- Muḥīṭ al-muḥīṭ* by *Butrus al-Bistānī*. 2 vols. Beirut 1286. (1869/70).
- an-Nihāya fī ġarīb al-ḥadīṭ* by *Ibn al-ʿAṭīr* († 606 H., beg. 6. July 1209). 4 vols. Cairo 1311 (Dictionary to the Traditions).

- Asās al-balāḡa (Lexicographical Work, dealing esp. with the metaphorical meanings of words) by *az-Zamaḥṣārī* († 538 H., beg. 16. July 1143). 2 vols. Bulak 1299.
- Fikḥ al-luḡa, Synonyms by *at-Taʿālībī* († 429 H., beg. 14. Oct. 1037). (Frequently reprinted; esp. in an expurgated edition Beirut 1888). Cf. Fleischer, *Kleinere Schriften* III, 152.
- Taʿlāb* († 291 H. = 904) kitāb al-Fasiḥ. Nach den Handschriften von Leiden, Berlin und Rom herausgegeben, mit kritischen und erläuternden Noten versehen von Dr. *J. Barth*. Leipzig 1876.
- **Ġawālikī's al-Muʿarrab* (a work on Arabic loan-words, by *al-Ġawālikī* † 465 H., beg. 17. Sept. 1072). Nach der Leydener Handschrift mit Erläuterungen herausgegeben von *Ed. Sachau*. Leipzig 1867. Cf. *Z. d. D. Morg. Ges.* 33, 208.
- Liber as-Sojutii* († 911 H., beg. 4. June 1505) de nominibus relativis, inscriptus *Lubb al-lubab*, arab. cum annot. crit. ed. *P. J. Veth*. 1—3. Lugduni Bat. 1840—51. 4^o.
- **Al-Moschtabiḥ* auctore *Schamso'ddīn Abu Abdallah Mohammed ibn Ahmed ad-Dhababī* (ad-Dahabī † 748 H., beg. 13. April 1347). E codd. mss. editus a *P. de Jong*. Lugduni Batav. 1881. (On homonym proper names).
- Kitābo-'l-adhdād* sive liber de vocabulis arabicis quae plures habent significationes inter se oppositas auctore *Abu Bekr ibno-'l-Andārī* († 328 H., beg. 18. Oct. 939) ed. *M. Th. Houtsma*. Lugduni Bat. 1881.

β *Written by Europeans.*

- †*G. W. Freytag*, *Lexicon Arabico-Latinum praesertim ex Djeuharii Firuzabadiique et aliorum libris confectum*. Accedit index vocum latinorum locupletissimus. IV. Tomi. Hal. 1830—1837. 4^o maj.
- G. W. Freytag*, *Lexicon Arabico-Latinum ex opere suo majore in usum tironum excerptum edidit*. Halis 1836. 4^o maj.
- **Maddu-l-Kamoos*, an Arabic-English Lexicon derived from the best and the most copious eastern sources comprising a very large collection of words and significations omitted in the *Kamoos*, with supplements to its abridged and defective explanations, ample grammatical and critical comments, and examples in prose and verse: composed by means of the munificence of the most noble Algernon, Duke of Northumberland and the bounty of the British Government: by *Edward William Lane*. In two books: the first containing all the classical words and significations commonly known to the learned among the Arabs; the second, those that are of rare occurrence and not commonly known. Book I, Parts 1—5. London 1863—1874. Ed. by Stanley Lane Poole, Parts 6—8 (and Supplement) 1877—1893.

(From the letter *k* onwards, the book is incomplete; its continuation is not to be expected.)

- *Supplément aux dictionnaires arabes par *R. Dozy*. 2 tom. Leyde 1881. — Cf. *Fleischer*, Studien über Dozy's Supplément: Berichte über die Verhandlungen der kgl. sächs. Ges. d. Wiss. zu Leipzig. Philol.-histor. Classe 1881—1887. Reprinted in Kleinere Schriften von H. L. Fleischer. Vol. II, pt. 1. Leipzig 1888. Vol. III *id.*
- A. *Kazimirski* de Biberstein, Dictionnaire arabe-français I. II. Paris 1860.
- †A. *Wahrmond*, Handwörterbuch der deutschen und neu-arabischen Sprache. I. Neuarabisch-deutscher Theil I, 1. 2. II, 1. 2. — II. Deutsch-neuarabischer Theil. Giessen 1870—77.
- F. Steingass*, The Student's Arabic-English Dictionary. London 1884.
- H. Anthony Salmoné*, An Arabic-English Dictionary on a new System. 2 vols. Vol. I Arabic-English; vol. II English Index. London 1890.
- †Arabic-English Dictionary by the late *William Thomson Wortabet*. Second edition, revised and enlarged, Beyrout 1893.
- George Percy Badger*, English-Arabic Lexicon. London 1881.
- F. Steingass*, English-Arabic Dictionary for the use of both Travellers and Students. London 1882.
- English-Arabic Dictionary by Mr. *J. Abcarius*. New edition revised and enlarged. Beyrout 1894.
- †Vocabulaire arabe-français à l'usage des étudiants par un père missionnaire de la Cie de Jésus; 3. éd. Beyrouth 1893. (Arab.: al-Farâid ad-durriye.)
- Dictionnaire français-arabe par le *P. J.-B. Belot*, S. J. 2 parties. Beyrouth 1890.
- *Die aramäischen Fremdwörter im Arabischen. Von *Siegmund Fränkel*. Leiden 1886.
- Dictionnaire détaillé des noms des vêtements chez les Arabes. Par *R. Dozy*. Amsterdam 1845.
- Die Namen der Säugethiere bei den südsemitischen Völkern. Von *Fritz Hommel*. Leipzig 1879.
- Die Waffen der alten Araber aus ihren Dichtern dargestellt. Ein Beitrag zur arabischen Alterthumskunde, Synonymik und Lexicographie nebst Registern von *Friedrich Wilhelm Schwarzlose*. Leipzig 1886.
- *Glossaire des mots espagnols et portugais dérivés de l'Arabe par *R. Dozy* et *W. H. Engelmann*. 2. éd. Leyde 1869.
- Glossario etimologico de las palabras españolas de origen oriental por *D. Leopoldo de Eguílaz y Yanguas*. Granada 1886.
- Dictionnaire étymologique des mots français d'origine orientale par *Marcel Devic*. Paris 1876. — Cf. Remarques sur les mots français dérivés de l'Arabe par *Henri Lammens*. Beyrouth 1890.

- L. Krehl*. I—III. Leyde 1862—68 (incomplete). — Oriental edition: *Ṣaḥīḥ al-Buḥārī*. 8 vols. Cairo 1290; also frequently elsewhere, with and without commentary.
- Ṣaḥīḥ Muslim*. Collection of the Traditions of the Prophet, composed by Muslim († 261 H., beg. 16. Oct. 874). With commentary by *an-Nawawī* († 676 H., beg. 4. Juni 1277). 5 vols. Cairo 1283.
- Maṣābiḥ as-sunna*, composed by Husain ibn Mas'ūd al-Farrā *al-Bağawī* († 516 H., beg. 12. March 1122). 2 vols. Cairo 1294.
- Iḥyā al-'ulūm*, by al-Gazālī († 505 H., beg. 10. Juli 1111). 4 vols. 4^o. Bulak 1289. — (Cf. Richard Gosche, *Über Ghazzālīs Leben und Werke*: Abhdl. d. kgl. Akad. d. Wiss. zu Berlin 1858).
- **Abdu-r-razzāq's* Dictionary of the technical terms of the Sufies edited by *Aloys Sprenger*. Calcutta 1845.
- **Das Leben Muhammeds nach Muhammed ibn Ishāk* († 151 H., beg. 26. Jan. 768) bearbeitet von 'Abd el-Malik *ibn Hiščām* († 218 H., beg. 27. Jan. 833); hrsg. von *F. Wüstenfeld*. 2 Bände. Göttingen 1858—60. Oriental edition; *Sīrat ibn Hišām*. 2 vols. Cairo 1295. (Translated into German: *Das Leben Muhammeds u. s. w.* bearbeitet von *G. Weil*. Stuttgart 1864).
- Muhammed in Medina. Das ist Vakidī's (*al-Wakidī* † 207 H., beg. 27. May 822) *Kitab al-Maghazi* in verkürzter deutscher Wiedergabe herausgegeben von *J. Wellhausen*. Berlin 1882.
- Šamā'il at-Tirmidī* († 279 H., beg. 3. April 892) Traditions respecting the Prophet. Cairo 1273; with commentary 2 vols. Bulak 1296.
- Usd al-gāba*. List of 7500 persons who knew Muhammed, drawn up by *Ibn al-Afir* († 630 H., beg. 18. Oct. 1232). 5 vols. Cairo 1286.
- al-Isābe*, A biographical dictionary of persons who knew Muhammed by *Ibn Hagar* (*Ibn Ḥağar* † 852 H., beg. 7. March 1448). Edited in Arabic by Mowlawies Mohammed Wajyh, 'Abdal-Haqq, and Gholām Qādir and A. Sprenger. Bibliotheca Indica. Vol. I, Calcutta 1856; vol. IV, Calcutta 1873. Vol. II, fasc. 1—13; vol. III, fasc. 1—15.
- Kiṣaṣ al-'anbiyā* (Legends of the Prophet), by *at-Ta'labī* († 427 H., beg. 5. Nov. 1035). Cairo 1297 and often.
- Pillar of the creed of the Sunnites by *al-Nasafi*, ed. by *W. Cureton*. London 1843.
- Ad-dourra al-fakhira: la perle précieuse de Ghazālī* (*al-Ġazālī* † 505 H., beg. 10. Juli 1111) par *L. Gautier*. Genève 1878. — Muslim Eschatology.
- Muhammedanische Eschatologie nach der Leipziger u. Dresdner Handschrift zum ersten Male arabisch und deutsch herausgegeben von *M. Wolff*. Leipzig 1872.
- Disputatio pro religione Mohammedanorum adversus Christianos* Textum arabicum (composed 942 H. = 1535) e codice Leidensi cum varr. lect. edidit *F. J. van den Ham*. Lugduni Bat. 1890.

Book of religious and philosophical sects by Muhammed *al-Shahrastāni* (*aš-Sahrastāni* † 528 H., beg. 29. March 1153). Now first edited by *W. Cureton*. 2 vol. London 1846. — Abu-'l-Fath' Muhammad asch-Schahrastāni's Religionsparteien und Philosophenschulen. Aus dem Arabischen übersetzt mit Anmerkungen von *Th. Haarbrücker*. 2 Bände. Halle 1850—1.

*(*Bible*) Kitāb al-mukaddas (Old Testament). London. R. Watts. 1822. (New Testament 1. vol. 1821.) — † Beirut, various editions. † New York 1867.

Arabic Bible-Chrestomathy with a Glossary edited by *Geo. Jacob*. Berlin 1888.

β *Written by Europeans.*

Der Koran nach Boysen von Neuem aus dem Arabischen übersetzt mit einer historischen Einleitung und Anmerkungen von *G. Wahl*. Halle 1828.

Der Koran. Aus dem Arabischen wortgetreu neu übersetzt mit Anmerkungen von *L. Ullmann*. 6. Aufl. 1862.

Le Koran, Traduction nouvelle, faite sur le texte arabe par *Mr. Kazimirski*. Nouv. éd. Paris 1854.

The Koran commonly called the Alcoran of Mohammed: translated into English from the Original Arabic. With explanatory notes taken from the most approved commentators. To which is prefixed a preliminary discourse. By *George Sale*. London 1774. Last ed. by *E. M. Wherry* "with additional notes and emendations". 4 vols. London 1882—87.

J. M. Rodwell, The Koran, translated from the Arabic. 2. ed. Lond. 1876.

The Qur'an translated by *E. H. Palmer*. 2 parts. Oxford 1880. (The sacred books of the East translated by various oriental scholars and edited by *F. Max Müller*, vol. VI. IX).

Der Koran. Im Auszuge übersetzt von *Friedrich Rückert*, herausgegeben von *A. Müller*. Frankfurt a. M. 1838.

Die fünfzig ältesten Suren des Korans in gereimter deutscher Übersetzung von *M. Klamroth*. Hamburg 1800.

†*Geschichte des Qorāns von *Theodor Nöldeke*. Göttingen 1860.

Über die Religion der vorislamischen Araber. Eine zur Habilitation etc. öffentlich zu vertheidigende Abhandlung von *Ludolf Krehl*. Leipzig 1863.

*Skizzen und Vorarbeiten. Von *J. Wellhausen*. Drittes Heft. Reste arabischen Heidentumes. Berlin 1887.

Kinship and marriage in early Arabia. By *W. Robertson Smith*. Cambridge 1885.

*Das Leben und die Lehre des Mohammad nach bisher grössten-theils unbenutzten Quellen bearbeitet von *A. Sprenger*. Zweite Ausgabe. 3 Bände. Berlin 1869.

- †Das Leben Muhammed's. Nach den Quellen populär dargestellt von *Theodor Nöldeke*. Hannover 1863.
- **W. Muir*, The Life of Mahomet and History of Islam. 4 vol. London 1858—61. 3rd edition 1 vol. 1894.
- †Das Leben und die Lehre des Muhammed. Dargestellt von *Ludolf Krehl*. 1. Theil. Das Leben des Muhammed. Leipzig 1884. Skizzen und Vorarbeiten von *J. Wellhausen*. Viertes Heft. 1. Medina vor dem Islam. 2. Muhammad's Gemeindeordnung von Medina. 3. Seine Schreiben, und die Gesandtschaften an ihn. Berlin 1889.
- †Was hat Mohammed aus dem Judenthum aufgenommen? von *Abraham Geiger*. Bonn 1833.
- **E. Dozy*, Het Islamisme. Leiden 1863. 2 ed. Haarlem 1880; Essai sur l'histoire de l'Islamisme par R. Dozy trad. par V. Chauvin. Leyde-Paris 1879.
- **Snouck Hurgronje*, Het mekkaansche Fest. Leiden 1880.
- Die Mutaziliten oder die Freidenker im Islām. Ein Beitrag zur allgemeinen Kulturgeschichte von *Heinrich Steiner*. Leipzig 1865.
- De strijd over het Dogma in den Islām tot op el-Ash'ari door Dr. *M. Th. Houtsma*. Leiden 1875.
- Zur Geschichte Abu 'l-Hasan al-Aṣ'ari's († about 324 H. = 935) von *Wilhelm Spitta*. Leipzig 1876.
- Exposé de la réforme de l'Islamisme commencée au IIIème siècle de l'Hégire par Abou-l-Hasan Ali el-Ash'ari et continuée par son école. Avec des extraits du Texte arabe d'Ibn Asâkir par *M. A. F. Mehren*. Vol. II des Travaux de la 3^e session du Congrès international des Orientalistes.
- I. Goldziher*, Die Schule der Zahiriten, ihr Ursprung, ihr System und ihre Geschichte. Leipzig 1884.
- *Mohammedanische Studien von *I. Goldziher*. Erster Teil. Halle 1889. Zweiter Teil. Halle 1890.
- Polemische und apologetische Literatur in arabischer Sprache zwischen Muslimen, Christen und Juden, nebst Anhängen verwandten Inhalts. Von *Moritz Steinschneider*. Abhandlungen für die Kunde des Morgenlandes VI, 3. Leipzig 1877.

G. JURISPRUDENCE.

- al-Muwatta' fil-hadith. Corpus juris composed by *Malik ibn Anas al-Himyari al-Madani* († 179 H., beg. 27. March 795). Frequently printed; also with commentaries, e. g. that of *az-Zarkani* († 1122 H., beg. 19. Febr. 1710). 4 vols. Bulak 1280.
- Sunan Abi 'Abdallah al-Kazwini, known as *Ibn Māja* († 273 H., beg. 8. June 886). Delhi 1282 and 1889. (Legal traditions).
- Sunan Abi Dā'ūd Sulaimān as-Sigistāni († 275 H., beg. 16. May 888); freq. printed, e. g. Bulak 1280. 2 vols. (Legal traditions).

- al-Ġāmi'* by Abū 'Isā Muḥammad *at-Tirmidī* († 279 H., beg. 3. April 892). Frequently printed. (Legal traditions).
 Sunan Abi 'Abd ar-raḥmān *an-Nasā'ī* († 303 H., beg. 17. July 915); lithogr. in Kanfūr 1847. (Legal traditions).
Flügel, Die Classen der hanefitischen Rechtsgelehrten: Abhandlungen der k. Sächs. Gesellschaft der Wissenschaften VIII. Leipzig 1860.
 Jus Schaffiticum. At-Tanbīh auctore Abu Ishāk as-Shīrāzī (*Abū Ishāk aš-Shīrāzī* wrote the work in the year 452/3 H. = 1060/1) edidit A. W. T. Juynboll. Lugduni Bat. 1879.
 Précis de Jurisprudence Musulmane selon le rite Chāfeite, par Abu Chodjā (*Abū Ṣuġā'* † in the 6th cent. of the Flight). Publication du texte arabe, avec traduction et annotations, par S. Keijzer. Leyde 1859.
 Minhādġ at-Tālibīn, le guide des zélés croyants. Manuel de jurisprudence musulmane selon le rite de Chāfi'i (*aš-Šāfi'i*). Texte arabe, publié par ordre du gouvernement avec traduction et annotations par *L. W. C. van den Berg*. 3 vol. Batavia 1882—1884. (Cf. Snouck Hurgronje in the *Indian Gids*, 1884 ff. Elaborate criticism.)
 Précis de jurisprudence musulmane suivant le rite malékite par *Sidi Khalīl* (Ḥalīl lived in the 8th cent. of the Flight) publié par les soins de la Société asiatique. Quatrième édition. Paris 1877.
 Maverdī (*al-Māwardī* † 450 H., beg. 28. Febr. 1058) constitutiones politicae. Ex recensione *Maximiliani Engeri*. Bonnae 1853.

H. PHILOSOPHY.

a Written by Orientals.

- Documenta philosophiae Arabum, edidit latine vertit illustravit *Aug. Schmölders*. Bonnae 1836. — Cf. id. Essai sur les écoles philosophiques chez les Arabes et notamment sur la doctrine d'Algazali. Paris 1842.
 Tahāfut al-falāsifa (the mutual refutation of the philosophers) by *al-Gazālī* († 505 H., beg. 10. July 1111), *Ibn Rušd* († 595 H., beg. 3. Nov. 1198), *Hōja Zāde* († 893 H., beg. 17. Dec. 1487). Cairo 1303.
 Die sogenannte Theologie des *Aristoteles* aus arabischen Handschriften zum ersten Male herausgegeben. Von *Fr. Dieterici*. Leipzig 1882 (Abhandlungen des Berl. Or.-Congresses). Cf. Die sogenannte Theologie des *Aristoteles* aus dem Arabischen übersetzt und mit Anmerkungen versehen von *Fr. Dieterici*. Leipzig 1883.
 Il commento medio di *Averroë* alla Poetica di *Aristotele* pubbl. da *Fausto Lasinio*. Parte I. Il testo arabo: Annali della Università

Toscane. Tomo XII. Pisa 1872. 4^o. — Il testo arabo del commento medio di Averroes alla retorica di Aristotele, pubbl. da *Fausto Lasinio*. Firenze 1875. (Pubblicazioni del R. Istituto di studi superiori).

Alfārābī's († 950 A. D.) philosophische Abhandlungen aus Londoner, Leidener und Berliner Handschriften. Herausgegeben von *Friedrich Dieterici*. Leiden 1890. — Id. aus dem Arabischen übersetzt. Leiden 1892. — *Alfārābī's* Abhandlung der Musterstaat aus Londoner und Oxfordter Handschriften herausgegeben von *F. Dieterici*. Leiden 1895.

Philosophie und Theologie von Averroes (*Ibn Rušd* † 595 H., beg. 3. Nov. 1198). Herausgegeben von *M. J. Müller*. München 1859. — Aus dem Arabischen übersetzt. München 1875.

Le Guide des Égarés. Traité de Théologie et de Philosophie par Moïse ben Maimoun dit *Maïmonide* († 605 H., beg. 16. July 1208). Publié pour la première fois dans l'original arabe et accompagné d'une traduction française par *Munk*. I—III. Paris 1856—66.

Kitāb Iḥwān aṣ-ṣafā wa-ḥullān al-wafā (between 950—1000 of our era). 4 vols. Bombay 1305—1306. — A part of the rasāil iḥwān aṣ-ṣafā has also been printed in Cairo, 1306. — Die Abhandlungen der Iḥwān Es-Safā in Auswahl herausg. von *F. Dieterici*. 3 Hefte. Leipzig 1883—6.

Statio quinta et sexta et appendix libri Mevakif auctore 'Adhad-eddīn *el-Iḡī* († 756 H., beg. 16. Jan. 1355) cum commentario Gorḡānī ex codd. etc. edidit *Th. Sørensen*. Lipsiae 1848 (Scholastic Metaphysics).

Definitiones viri meritissimi Sejjid Scherif Ali ben Mohammed Dschor-dschani (*al-Gorḡānī* † 816 H., beg. 3. Apr. 1418). Accedunt definitiones theosophi Mohji-ed-dīn Mohammed ben Ali vulgo Ibn Arabi († 638 H., beg. 23 July 1240) dicti. Ed. et adnot. critica instruxit *Gustavus Flügel*. Lipsiae 1845.

β Written by Europeans.

Die griechischen Philosophen in der arabischen Überlieferung. Von *August Müller*. (Festschrift der Franckischen Stiftungen zu dem 50jährigen Doctorjubiläum Bernhardy's). Halle 1873.

Al-Kindī († ca. 850 A. D.) genannt „der Philosoph der Araber“. Ein Vorbild seiner Zeit und seines Volkes. Von *G. Flügel*. Leipzig 1857. (Abhandlungen der D. Morg. Ges. 1. Band. Nr. 2). Cf. *Otto Loth*, *Al-Kindī* als Astrolog, Morgenländische Forschungen. Leipzig 1875, pp. 261 ff. and *Sir Wm. Muir*, *The Apology of Al-Kindy* 2 Ed. London 1887.

Al-Farabi, des arabischen Philosophen, Leben und Schriften. Von

- Moritz Steinschneider*: Mémoires de l'Académie Imp. des Sciences de St. Pétersbourg. VII. série, tome XIII, 4. 1869. 4^o.
Ernest Renan, Averroès et l'Averroïsme. 3. éd. Paris 1861.
 Die Philosophie der Araber im X. Jahrhundert n. Chr. aus den Schriften der lauterer Brüder herausgegeben von *Fr. Dieterici*.
 • Die Naturwissenschaft und Naturanschauung der Araber. Berlin 1861. — Die Propädeutik. Berlin 1865. — Die Logik und Psychologie. Leipzig 1868. — Die Anthropologie. Leipzig 1871. — Die Lehre von der Weltseele. Leipzig 1872. — Die Naturanschauung und Naturphilosophie. 2. Ausg. Leipzig 1876. — Einleitung und Makrokosmos. Leipzig 1876. — Mikrokosmos. Leipzig 1879.

I. NATURAL SCIENCE AND MEDICINE.

- F. Wüstenfeld*, Geschichte der arabischen Ärzte und Naturforscher. Göttingen 1840 (rather out of date).
 Histoire de la médecine arabe par le Dr. *Lucien Leclerc*. 2 vol. Paris 1876 (insufficient).
Ibn Abi Uscibia. Herausgegeben von *August Müller*. Königsberg i. Pr. 1884 (*Ibn Abi Uṣaib'ra* † 668 H., beg. 14. May 1297 wrote this great work on the history of Arab physicians under the title: 'Uyūn al-'anbā' fī ṭabakāt al-'atibbā'. For which see Vol. II des travaux de la 6^e session du Congrès international des Orientalistes à Leide. Leide 1884. p. 257 ff.).
 Ḥayāt al-haiwān (zoological work) by *ad-Damirī* († 808 H., beg. 29. June 1405). 2 vols. Bulak 1284. Cairo 1305.
 Kitāb al-kānūn fiṭ-ṭibb, Theory of Medicine, composed by Abu 'Alī *ibn Sīnā* (*Avicenna* † 428 H., beg. 25. Oct. 1036). 3 vols. Bulak 1294.
 al-Gāmi' li-mufradāt al-'adwiya wal-'agdiya (On the common medicines and foods) by *Ḍiyā'* ad-dīn Abū Muhammad *Ibn al-Baiṭār* († 646 H., beg. 26. April 1248). 4 vols. Bulak 1231.
Tedkire (Science of medicine) by *Dā'ūd al-Antākī* († 1005 H., beg. 15. Aug. 1596). 3 vols. Cairo 1294.
 La Chimie du moyen-âge . . . par *M. Berthelot*. Tome III. L'alchimie arabe comprenant une introduction et les traités de Cratès, d'el-Habib, d'Ostanès et de Djāber . . . texte et traduction . . . avec la collaboration de *M. O. Houdas*. Paris 1893. 4^o.
 Matériaux pour servir à l'histoire des sciences mathématiques chez les Grecs et les Orientaux par *M. L. P. E. A. Sédillot*. 2 tomes. Paris 1845. 1849.
 Traité des instruments astronomiques des Arabes, trad. par *J. J. Sédillot*. Paris 1834. 1835. Mémoires sur les instruments astronomiques des Arabes par *J. J. Sédillot*. Paris 1841—45.

K. HISTORY, BIOGRAPHY.

a. Written by Orientals.

Ibn Coteiba's (ibn Kutāiba † 276 H. beg. 6. May 889) Handbuch der Geschichte herausgegeben von *Ferd. Wüstenfeld*. Göttingen 1850.— Oriental edition: *Kitāb al-ma'ārif*. Cairo 1300.

Abu Bekr Muhammed ben al-Hasan Ibn Doraid's († 321 H., beg. 1. Jan. 933) genealogisch-etymologisches Handbuch herausgegeben von *F. Wüstenfeld*. Göttingen 1854.

**Chronologie orientalischer Völker von Albērūni*. Herausgegeben von *Eduard Sachau*. Gedruckt auf Kosten der D. M. Ges. Leipzig 1878. 4^o.— *Chronology of ancient Nations. An English Version of the Arabic Text of the Athar ul Bākiya of Albīrūni*, or "Vestiges of the Past". Collected and reduced to writing by the Author in A. H. 390—1, A. D. 1000. Translated and Edited, with Notes and Index, by *C. E. Sachau*. Published for the Oriental Translation Fund of Great Britain and Ireland. Roy 8^o. London 1879.

Ibn Wadhīh (Wādhīh) qui dicitur *al-Ja'qubī* (Ya'kūbī) *Historiae* (composed ca. 297 H.). 2 partes ed. *M. Th. Houtsma*. Lugduni Batav. 1883.

Anonyme Arabische Chronik Band XI vermuthlich das Buch der Verwandtschaft und Geschichte der Adligen von Abulhasan ahmed ben jahjā ben gābir ben dāwūd elbelādori elbagdādi (*al-Balāḍurī* † 279 H., beg. 3. Apr. 893). Autogr. und herausgegeben von *W. Ahlwardt*. Greifswald 1883.

Kitāb al-aḥbār at-tiwāl verf. von Abu Hanifa Ahmed ibn Dāwūd *ad-Dai-nawarī* († 282 or 290 H.) hrs. von *Vladimir Girgas*. Leiden 1888.

**Annales* auctore Abu Djafar Mohammed Ibn Djarir *At-Tabarī* (at-Tabarī † 309 H., beg. 12. May 921), quos ediderunt J. Barth, Th. Nöldeke, O. Loth (†), E. Prym, H. Thorbecke (†), S. Fränkel, D. H. Müller, M. Th. Houtsma, S. Guyard (†), V. Rosen et M. J. de Goeje I, 1—5; II, 1—3; III, 1—4. Leiden 1879 seq. *Maḡoudī (al-Maḡūdī* † 346 H., beg. 4. Apr. 957) *Les prairies d'or. Texte et traduction par C. Barbier de Meynard et Pavet de Courteille*. 9 tomes. Paris 1861—77. (id. 2 vols. Bulak 1283).

Hamsae Ispahanensis (*Hamza* wrote about 350 H.) annalium libri X. Edidit *J. M. E. Gottwaldt*. I. textus, II. transl. Petropoli-Lipsiae 1844. 1848.

Fragmenta historicorum arabicorum. Tomus primus continens partem tertiam operis *Kitābo 'l-Oyun wa 'lhādāik fi akhbārī 'l-hadāik* (written after the 11th cent. A.D.) quem ediderunt *M. J. de Goeje* et *P. de Jong*. Lugduni Bat. 1868. 4^o.— Tomus secundus continens partem operis *Tadǧāribō 'l-Omami*, auctore *Ibn Maskowaiḥ* († 421 H., beg. 9. Jan. 1030) edidit *M. J. de Goeje*. Lugd. Bat. 1871.

- *Ibn el-Athiri (*ibn al-'Atīr* † 630 H., beg. 18. Oct. 1232) Chronicon quod perfectissimum (el-Kāmil) inscribitur. Edidit *Carolus Johannes Tornberg*. 14 vol. Lugduni Bat. 1851—1876. — 12 vols. Bulak 1290 and later.
- Commentaire historique sur le poème d'Ibn-Abdoun (*Ibn 'Abdūn* † 529 H., beg. 22. Oct. 1134) par Ibn Badroun (*Ibn Badrūn* wrote in the same century) publié par *R. P. A. Dozy*. Leide 1846 (Ouvrages arabes publiés par Dozy).
- Historia saracenica arabice olim exarata a Georgio Elmacino (*al-Makīn* † 672 H., beg. 18. July 1273), edita et latine reddita opere et studiis *Thomae Erpenii*. Lugduni Bat. 1625.
- Ta'rīh muhtaṣar ad-duwal (Outlines of History by Gregorius abū 'l-Farag Ibn el-Ibri (*Barhebraeus* † 1286 A. D.) ed. by *Ṣāḥibānī*. Beirut 1890. (The edition by *Pococke*, 2 tomi 4^o. Oxonii 1663 is rare).
- Elfachri. History of the Moslem Empires from the beginning to the end of the Califate by *Ibn ethiqhaga* (wrote about 1302 A.D.). Edited in Arabic by *W. Ahlwardt*. Gotha 1860.
- Abulfedae* († 732 H., beg. 4. Oct. 1331). Annales musulmici arabice et latine. Opera et studiis *J. J. Reiskii*, nunc primum ed. *J. G. Ch Adler*. 5 vol. Hafniae 1789—94. — 2 vols. Stambul 1286.
- †*Abulfedae* historia Anteislamica, Arabice e duob. Codd. Paris. edidit, vers. lat. notis et indicibus auxit *H. O. Fleischer*. Lipsiae 1831. 4^o.
- Ta'rīh Zain ad-dīn 'Umar ibn al-Wardī († 749 or 750 H. = 1348/9). 2 vols. Cairo 1285. — An excerpt: Aegyptus auctore Ibn al-Vardi. Edidit vertit notulisque illustravit *Martinus Frähn*. Halae 1804.
- Ibn Haldūn* († 808 H., beg. 29. June 1405) al-'ibar etc. History of the World. 7 vols. Bulak 1284. — Prolégomènes d'Ebn-Khaldoun. Texte arabe par *Quatremère*. 3 vols. Paris 1858 (Notices et extraits des mscr. XVI, 1. XVII, 1. XVIII, 1.). — Prolégomènes historiques d'Ibn Khaldoun. Traduction par *Mac Guckin de Slane*. 3 vols. Paris 1862—68 (Notices et extr. XIX, 1. XX, 1. XXI, 1).
- The Tarikh al-Kholafā; or history of the Caliphs, from the death of Mohammad to the year 900 of the Hijrah by the celebrated Jalāl al-Dīn Al-Osyootī (*as-Suyūtī* † 911 H., beg. 4. June 1505), ed. by *W. N. Lees* und *Mawlawi Abd al-Haq*. Calcutta 1857. Another edition Cairo 1305.
- *Liber expugnationis regionum auctore Imāmo Ahmed ibn Jahja ibn Djābir al-Balādsorī (*al-Balādsorī* † 279 H., beg. 3. Apr. 892) ed. *M. J. de Goeje*. Lugduni Bat. 1866. 4^o.
- Ousāma ibn Mounkidh* un émir syrien au premier siècle des Croisades, (1095—1188) par *Hartwig Derenbourg*. Deuxième partie. Texte

- arabe de l'autobiographie d'Ousâma. Paris 1886 (cf. Carlo de Landberg, *Critica arabica* II, Leyde 1888). — Ousâma ibn Mounkidh etc. par H. Derenbourg (French edition). Paris 1889.
- '*Imād ad-dīn* el-kātib el-isfahānī († 597 H. = 1201) Conquête de la Syrie et de la Palestine par Salāh ed-dīn. Publié par le comte Carlo de Landerg. Vol. I. Texte arabe. Leyde 1888.
- Vita et res gestae sultani Almalichi Alnasiri Saladini auctore Bohadino F. Sjeddadi (*Bahā ad-dīn ibn Sāddād* † 632 H. = 1234) edidit ac latine vertit *Albertus Schultens*. Lugduni Batav. 1732 (1755). fol.
- Kitāb ar-raudatain fī ta'rīḥ ad-daulatain (History of Nureddin and Saladin) by Šihāb ad-dīn al-Mukaddasi, called *Abū Sāma* († 665 H. = 1267). Cairo. 2 vols. 1287.
- Kitāb al-'ins al-ḡalīl bi-ta'rīḥ al-kuds wal-ḡalīl. History of Jerusalem and Hebron by *Muḡīr ad-dīn* († 927 H., beg. 12. Dec. 1520). — Cf. Histoire de Jérusalem et d'Hébron. Fragments de la Chronique de Moudjir-ed-dyn traduits sur le texte arabe par *Henry Sauvaire*. Paris 1876.
- Die Chroniken der Stadt Mekka. Gesammelt und herausgegeben von *Ferdinand Wüstenfeld* (I Azrakī. II Fakihi, Fāsī, Ibn Dhuheira. III Kuṭb ed-dīn. IV German edition). I—IV. Leipzig 1857—61.
- Ḥulāsat al-wafā bi'ahbār dār al-mustafā (History of the town of Medina) by *as-Samhūdī* († 911 H., beg. 4. June 1505). Bulak 1285. — Extracts translated by *Wüstenfeld* in den Abhandlungen der k. Ges. der Wissenschaften zu Göttingen. Bd. IX. 1860.
- *al-Ḥiṭaṭ (Geography and History of Egypt) by *al-Makrizī* († 845 H., beg. 22. May 1441). 2 vols. Bulak 1270. — Histoire des Sultans Mamlouks de l'Egypte, écrite en arabe par Taki-eddin Ahmed Makrizi, traduite en français et accompagnée de notes par *Quatremère*. 2 vol. Paris 1837—45. 4^o.
- Abūl-Mahāsīn* ibn Tagri Bardī († 874 H., beg. 11. July 1469) Annales (History of Egypt) I, 1. 2 ediderunt *T. G. J. Juynboll* et *B. F. Matthes*. II, 1. 2. ed. *T. G. J. Juynboll*. Lugduni Bat. 1852—61 (incomplete).
- Ḥusn al-muhādara. History of Egypt by *as-Suyūṭī* († 911 H., beg. 4. June 1505). 2 vols. Cairo.
- 'Aḡāib al-ātār fit-tarāḡim wal-ahbār (History of Egypt) by *al-Ḡabartī* († 1236 = 1821). 4 vols. Cairo n. d.
- Ahmedis Arabsiadæ (*Aḥmed ibn 'Arabšāh* † 854 H., beg. 14. Febr. 1450) vitæ et rerum gestarum Timuri, qui vulgo Tamerlanes dicitur historia. (Ed.) Latine vertit etc. *S. H. Manger*. 2 vol. Leovardiae 1767. 1772. — Cairo 1285.
- The History of the Almohades by *Abdo-'l-Wāhid al-Marrekoshī* (wrote in the year 621 H. = 1224) edited by *R. Dozy*. 2. ed. Leyden 1881.

- Historia Abbadidarum** praemissis scriptorum Arabum de ea dynastia locis nunc primum editis, auctore *B. P. A. Dozy*. I—III. Lugduni Bat. 1849. 4^o. (Deals w. Spain).
- Annales regum Mauretaniae** a condito Idrisidarum imperio ad annum fugae 726, ab Abu-l Hasan Ali ben Abd Allah Ibn Abi Zer' Fesano, vel ut alii malunt Abu Muhammed Salih ibn Abd el Halim Granatensi conscriptos ed. illustr. *Carolus Joh. Tornberg*. 2 vol. Upsaliae 1843. 1846.
- Histoire de l'Afrique et de l'Espagne** intitulée al-Bayāno 'l-Moghrib par *Ibn Adhārī* (de Maroc) (*Ibn al-Idārī* wrote between 363 and 366 H.) et fragments de la chronique d'Arīb (de Cordoue) publiés par *B. P. A. Dozy*. 2 vols. Leyde 1848—51.
- Analectes sur l'histoire et la littérature des Arabes d'Espagne** par *Al-Makkari* (*al-Makkari* † 1041 H., beg. 30. July 1631). Publiés par *B. Dozy*, *G. Dugat*, *L. Krehl* et *W. Wright*. 2 vol. Leyde 1855—61. (Conf. *Fleischer*, Textverbesserungen in *Al-Makkari's* Geschichtswerke. Kleinere Schriften. Vol. II pt. 1. Leipzig 1888.) — Lettre à *M. Fleischer* contenant les remarques critiques et explicatives sur le texte d'*Al-Makkari* par *B. Dozy*. Leyde 1871. — Cf. The history of the Mohammedan Dynasties in Spain by Ahmed ibn Mohammed *Al-Makkari*. Translated and illustrated by Pascual de Gayangos. 2 vol. London 1840—3. 4^o.
- Bibliotheca arabo-sicula**, ossia Raccolta di testi arabici che toccano la geografia, la storia, la biografia e la bibliografia della Sicilia, messi insieme da *Michele Amari*. Lipsia 1857; Appendice, ibid. 1875.
- Alberuni's India**, an account of the religion, philosophy, literature, chronology, astronomy, customs, laws and astrology of India about 1030. Ed. by *Edw. Sachau*. London 1887. 4^o. — Id. An English edition with notes and indices. By *E. Sachau*. London. 2 vol. 1888.
- Scriptorum Arabum de Rebus Indicis loci et opuscula inedita** rec. et illustr. *Joannes Gildemeister*. Fasc. pr. Bonnae 1838. — Cf. id., Dissertationis de rebus Indiae, quo modo in Arabum notitiam venerint, pars I. Bonnae 1838.
- **Ibn Challican*, Vitae illustrium virorum. E codd. nunc primum arabice edidit variis lectionibus, indicibusque locupletissimis instruxit *Ferd. Wüstenfeld*. Gottingae 1835—40, 4^o. — *Ibn Hallikān* († 681 H., beg. 11. Apr. 1282). 2 vols. Bulak 1275; another edition 1299. — *Ibn Khallikan's Biographical Dictionary*, translated from the Arabic by Baron *Mac Guckin de Slane*. 4 vol. Paris-London 1843—71. 4^o.
- Fawāt al-wafayāt** (supplement to *Ibn Hallikān*) by *as-Ṣalāḥ al-Kutubī* († 764 H., beg. 21. Oct. 1362). 2 vols. Bulak 1283.

- The biographical dictionary of illustrious men chiefly at the beginning of Islamism by Abu Zakariya Jahya el-Nawawi († 676 H. = 1277) edited by *Ferd. Wüstenfeld*. Göttingen 1842—47 (cf. *idem* for the Life and Writings of el-Nawawi, Göttingen 1849, from the 4th vol. of the Abhandl. d. kgl. Ges. d. Wiss. zu Gött.).
- Nuzhat al-'alubba fi ṭabakāt al-'udabā. Concerning celebrated Men. By Abul-Barakāt al-'Anbārī († 577 H., beg. 17. May 1181). Cairo lithogr. n. d.

β *Written by Europeans.*

- †Vergleichungstabellen der muhammedanischen und christlichen Zeitrechnung nach den ersten Tagen jedes muhammedanischen Monats berechnet. Herausgegeben von *Ferd. Wüstenfeld*. Leipzig 1844.—Fortsetzung der Wüstenf. Vergl.-Tab. bis 1500 von *E. Mahler*. Leipzig 1887.
- *Die Geschichtsschreiber der Araber und ihre Werke. Von *F. Wüstenfeld*. (From the XXVIII. and XXIX. vol. of the Abhandlungen der Kgl. Ges. d. W. zu Göttingen). Göttingen 1882. 4^o.
- *Genealogische Tabellen der Arabischen Stämme und Familien . . . Aus den Quellen zusammengestellt von *Ferdinand Wüstenfeld*. Göttingen 1852. q.-fol. — Register zu den genealogischen Tabellen der Arabischen Stämme und Familien. Mit historischen und geographischen Bemerkungen von *Ferdinand Wüstenfeld*. Göttingen 1853.
- **Caussin de Perceval*, Essai sur l'histoire des Arabes avant l'islamisme 3 vol. Paris 1847.
- Geschichte der Perser und Araber zur Zeit der Sassaniden. Aus der arabischen Chronik des Tabari übersetzt und mit ausführlichen Erläuterungen und Ergänzungen versehen von *Th. Nöldeke*. Leyden 1879.
- †*Der Islam im Morgen- und Abendland. Von *A. Müller*. 2 Bände. Berlin 1885. 1887. (Allgemeine Geschichte in Einzeldarstellungen hrsgg. von L. Oncken. Zweite Hauptabteilung. Vierter Teil).
- *Geschichte der Chalifen. Nach handschriftlichen grösstenteils noch unbenützten Quellen bearbeitet von *Gustav Weil*. 3 Bände. Mannheim 1846—51. — Geschichte des Abbasidenchalifats in Aegypten. Von *Gustav Weil*. 2 Bände. Stuttgart 1860—2.
- †Geschichte der islamitischen Völker von Mohammed bis zur Zeit des Sultan Selim übersichtlich dargestellt von *Gustav Weil*. Stuttgart 1866.
- †Geschichte der Araber bis auf den Sturz des Chalifats von Bagdad. Von *Gustav Flügel*. 2. Aufl. Leipzig 1864.
- The Caliphate, its rise, decline, and fall from original sources by *Sir William Muir*. London 1891. New and revised edition 1894.
- Socin. Arabic Grammar.²

- Handbuch der morgenländischen Münzkunde. Von *J. G. Stickel*. 2 Hefte. Leipzig 1865—70. 40.
- Catalogue of Oriental Coins in the British Museum, 9 vol. London 1875—1889.
- The Mohammadan Dynasties, chronological and genealogical Tables with historical Introductions by *St. Lane-Poole*. London 1894.
- Die Charidschiten unter den ersten Omayyaden. Ein Beitrag zur Geschichte des ersten islamischen Jahrhunderts von *R. E. Brünnow*. Leiden 1884.
- De opkomst der Abbasiden in Chorasán door *G. van Vloten*. Leiden 1890.
- Mémoires sur les Carmathes du Bahrain et les Fatimides par *M. J. de Goeje*. Leiden 1886.
- Die Statthalter von Ägypten zur Zeit der Chalifen. Von *F. Wüstenfeld*. Parts 1 and 2. Abhandlungen der Kgl. Ges. d. Wissenschaften zu Göttingen. 1875 (4^o). Band 20. Parts 3 and 4. ibid. 1876, Band 21.
- History of the Moors in Spain to the Conquest of Andalusia by the Almoravides (711—1110), by *E. Dozy*. German Edition with additions by the Author. 2 vols. Leipzig 1874.
- Poesie und Kunst der Araber in Spanien und Sicilien. Von *Adolf Friedrich von Schack*. 2 Bände. Berlin 1865. 2. Aufl. 1877.
- *Culturgegeschichte des Orients unter den Chalifen. Von *Alfred von Kremer*. 2 Bände. Wien 1875—77.
- Das Einnahmebudget des Abbasiden-Reichs vom Jahre 360 H. (918—919) von *Alfred von Kremer*. Denkschriften der philos.-hist. Classe der Kais. Akademie der Wiss. in Wien. Bd. XXXVI. 1887.
- *Geschichte der herrschenden Ideen des Islams. Der Gottesbegriff, die Prophetie und Staatsidee. Von *Alfred v. Kremer*. Leipzig 1868.
- Die Baustile. Historische und technische Entwicklung. Des Handbuchs der Architectur (von *J. Durm*) Zweiter Theil. 3. Band, zweite Hälfte; Die Baukunst des Islam. Von *Frans Pascha*. Darmstadt 1887.
- Prise d'Avannes*, L'art arabe d'après les monuments du Caire depuis le VII^e siècle jusqu' à la fin du XVIII^e. 3 vol. fol. 1 vol. 4. Paris 1877. — La décoration arabe. (Extrait du grand ouvrage.) Paris 1865. fol.

L. COSMOGRAPHY, GEOGRAPHY, ETHNOGRAPHY, TRAVELS.

a. Written by Orientals.

- Cosmographie de Chems ed-din Abou Abdallah Mahommed *ed-Dimichqi* (*ad-Dimiškî* † 654 H., beg. 30. Jan. 1256). Texte arabe publié d'après l'édition commencée par M. Frähn, et d'après les manu-

- scrits par *M. A. F. Mehren*. St. Pétersbourg 1866. 40. — Manuel de la cosmographie du moyen âge, traduit de l'arabe „Nokhbet ed-dahr fi 'adjaib-il-birr wal-bah'r“ de Shems ed-din Abou-'Abdallah Mohammed de Damas et accompagnée d'éclaircissements par *M. A. F. Mehren*. Copenhagen 1874.
- Zakarija Ben Muhammed ben Mahmūd el-Cazwini's** (*al-Kazwini* † 682 H., beg. 1. Apr. 1283) Kosmographie. Herausg. von *Ferd. Wüstenfeld*. 2 Bände. Göttingen 1848—9. — id. nach der Wüstenfeld'schen Textausgabe etc. übersetzt von *Hermann Ethé*. Erster Halbband. Leipzig 1868.
- Faridat al-'agāib wa-faridat al-garāib, a species of Cosmography** composed by 'Umar ibn al-Wardī († 749 or 750 H. = 1348 or 9). Cairo 1292.
- Specimen e literis orientalibus exhibens as-Zamaksarī, (as-Zamakhsharī** † 538 H., beg. 16. July 1143) lexicon geographicum quod auspice T. G. J. Juynboll edidit *Mathias Salverda de Grave*. Lugduni Bat. 1856.
- al-Hamdānī's** († 334 H., beg. 13. Aug. 945) Geographie der Arabischen Halbinsel. Nach den Handschr. herausgegeben von *David Heinrich Müller*. Leiden 1884.
- Das geographische Wörterbuch des Abu 'Obeid 'Abdallah ben 'Abd el-'Aziz el-Bekri** († 487 H. = 1094) nach den Handschriften zu Leiden, Cambridge, London und Mailand herausgegeben von *Ferd. Wüstenfeld*. 2 Bände. Göttingen, Paris 1876. 1877.
- Jacut's** (*Yāqūt* † 626 H. = 1229) Geographisches Wörterbuch aus den Handschriften zu Berlin, St. Petersburg und Paris auf Kosten der Deutschen Morgenländischen Gesellschaft herausgegeben von *Ferdinand Wüstenfeld*. 6 Bände. Leipzig 1866—73.
- Jacut's** Moschtarik, das ist: Lexicon geographischer Homonyme. Herausgegeben von *Ferd. Wüstenfeld*. Göttingen 1846.
- Farāsīd al-i'ttilā'i**, Lexicon geographicum ed *T. G. J. Juynboll* I—VI. Lugduni B. 1850—64. (An Extract from *Yāqūt*).
- Géographie d'Aboulfēda** (*Abū'l-fidā* † 732 H., beg. 4. Oct. 1331). Texte arabe par *Reinaud et Mac-Guckin de Slane*. Paris 1840. — Géographie d'Ismā'il Abou 'l-Fēdā en arabe publiée par *Charles Schier*. Éd. autogr. Dresde 1846. — Géographie d'Aboulfēda, traduite de l'arabe en français par *Reinaud* I (*Introduction générale à la géographie des Orientaux) II, 1 Paris 1848; II, 2 par *Stanislas Guyard*. Paris 1888.
- Bibliotheca geographorum arabicorum**. Edidit *M. J. de Goeje*.
 Pars prima. Viae regnorum. Descriptio ditionis moslemicae auctore *Abu Ishāk al-Fārisī al-Istakhri* (*al-Istakhri*, cf. *Zeitschrift d. D. Morgēnl. Ges.* Bd. 25, p. 42 ff.). Lugduni Bat. 1870.
 Pars secunda. Viae et regna. Descriptio ditionis moslemicae auctore *Abu 'l-Kāsim Ibn Haukal* (ibid.). Lugduni Bat. 1873.

Pars tertia. Descriptio imperii Moslemici auctore *Al-Mokaddasi* (*al-Mukaddasi* wrote in year 378 the H.). Lugduni Bat. 1876.

Cf. Description of Syria &c. by Mukaddasi. Translated from the Arabic by *Guy Le Strange*. (Palestine Pilgrims' Text Society).

Pars quarta. Continens indices, glossarium et addenda et emendanda ad part. I—III auctore *M. J. de Goeje*. Lugduni Bat. 1879.

Pars quinta. Compendium libri Kitāb al-boldān auctore *Ibn al-Faḳīh* al-Hamadhani (wrote ca. A. D. 290). Lugd. Bat. 1885.

Pars sexta. Kitāb al-masālik wal-mamālik (liber viarum et regnorum) auctore Abu'l-Kāsim Obaidallah ibn Abdallah *ibn Khordādbeh* (Ibn Hordādbeh wrote in the second half of the 9th cent. A. D.) et excerpta e Kitāb al-Kharādj (K. al-harāğ Taxbook) auctore *Kodāma ibn Dja'far* (*Kudāma* ibn Ga'far wrote about 930 A. D.). Lugduni Bat. 1889.

Pars septima. Kitāb al-a'lāk an-nafisa VII auctore Abū Alī Ahmed ibn Omar *ibn Rosteh* (wrote before 301. H.) et Kitāb al-boldān auctore Ahmed ibn abī Ja'kūb ibn Wādhīh al-Kātib al-Ja'kūbī (cf. p. 157). Lugduni Bat. 1892.

Pars octava. Kitāb at-tanbih wa'l-ischrāf auctore *al-Masūdi* (cf. p. 157). Accedunt indices et glossarium ad tomos VII et VIII. Lugduni Bat. 1894.

Description de l'Afrique et de l'Espagne par *Edrīsī* (wrote 548 H., beg. 29 March 1153) texte arabe publié pour la première fois d'après les man. de Paris et d'Oxford avec une traduction, des notes et un glossaire par *R. Dozy* et *M. J. de Goeje*. Leyde 1866.

The travels of *Ibn Jubair* (*Ibn Gubair* end of the 6th cent.) edited by *William Wright*. Leyden 1852.

Voyages d'Ibn Batoutah (*Ibn Baṭūta* † 779 H., beg. 10 May 1377). Texte arabe, accompagnée d'une traduction par *C. Defrémery* et *B. R. Sanguinetti* (Publications de la Société asiatique). 4 vol. Paris 1853—58; deux. tir. 1874—77. — Cairo 1288.

β Written by Europeans.

F. Wüstenfeld, Die Litteratur der Erdbeschreibung bei den Arabern. Zeitschrift für vergleichende Erdkunde hrsgg. von J. G. Lüdde I, 1841, S. 24—67.

Carte générale des provinces européennes et asiatiques de l'Empire Ottoman, dressée par *Henri Kiepert* 4 feuilles. Deux. éd. entièrement corrigée et augmentée d'un index alphabétique. Berlin 1892.

(Karte von) Arabien zu C. Ritters Erdkunde, Buch III, West-Asien, Teil XII und XIII bearbeitet von *H. Kiepert*. Neue berichtigte Ausgabe, die Orthographie revidiert von *Th. Nöldeke*. Berlin 1867 (D. Reimer).

- Skizze der Geschichte und Geographie Arabiens von den ältesten Zeiten bis zum Propheten Muhammad. Auf Grund der Inschriften, der Angaben der alten Autoren und der Bibel von *Eduard Glaser*. Zweiter Band. Berlin 1890.
- Die alte Geographie Arabiens als Grundlage der Entwicklungsgeschichte des Semitismus von *A. Sprenger*. Bern 1875.
- Arabien im sechsten Jahrhundert. Eine ethnographische Skizze von *Otto Blau*. Mit einer Karte: Zeitschrift der deutschen morgenl. Gesellschaft. Leipzig 1869 (XXIII B.) p. 559—592.
- Arabien und die Araber seit hundert Jahren. Eine geographische und geschichtliche Skizze von *Albrecht Zehme*. Halle 1875.
- Palestine under the Moslems. A description of Syria and the Holy Land from A. D. 650 to 1500. Translated from the works of the mediæval Arab Geographers by *Guy le Strange*. (London) 1890.
- Relation de l'Égypte par *Abdallatif* ('Abd al-Latif al-Bagdadi † 629 H., beg. 29. Oct. 1231). Le tout traduit et enrichi de notes par *Silvester de Sacy*. Paris 1810. 4^o. (The text of 'Abd al-Latif has been published by *J. White*: 'Abdallatiphi Historiae Aegypti compendium. Oxonii 1800).
- *Beschreibung von Arabien. Aus eigenen Beobachtungen und im Lande selbst gesammelten Nachrichten abgefasst von *Carsten Niebuhr*. Kopenhagen 1772. 4^o.
- Carsten Niebuhrs* Reisebeschreibung nach Arabien und andern umliegenden Ländern. 1. Band. Kopenhagen 1774. 2. Band. 1778; English edtn. 2 vols. Edinb. 1792.
- †*Travels in Arabia (1814) comprehending an account of those territories in Hedjaz which the Mohammedans regard as sacred. By the late *John Lewis Burckhardt*. London, 2 vol. 1829. — *Johann Ludwig Burckhardt's* Reisen in Arabien, enthaltend eine Beschreibung derjenigen Gebiete in Hedjaz, welche die Mohammedaner für heilig achten . . . Aus dem Englischen übersetzt. Weimar 1830.
- †**J. L. Burckhardt*, Notes on the Bedouins and Wahábys. 2 vol. London 1831. — Bemerkungen über die Beduinen und Wahabi's. Weimar 1831.
- Richard Burton*, Personal narrative of a pilgrimage to El Medinah and Meccah. 2 vol. London 1857 (and frequently, also in the Tauchnitz edition).
- *Travels in Arabia Deserta by *Charles M. Doughty*. 2 vol. Cambridge 1888. (With new map).
- Adolf von Wrede's* Reise in Hadhramaut, Beled Beny 'Issâ und Beled el Hadschar. Herausgegeben . . . von *H. Freiherr von Maltzan*. Braunschweig 1870. — Reise nach Südarabien und Geographische Forschungen im und über den südwestlichen Teil Arabiens von *Heinrich Freiherrn von Maltzan*. Braunschweig 1873.

Mekka von Dr. *C. Snouck Hurgronje*. 2 Bände. Mit Bilder-Atlas. Haag 1888. 1889.

†*An account of the manners and customs of the modern Egyptians, written in Egypt etc. By *Edward William Lane*. Various editions. London. — *Lane*, Sitten und Gebräuche der heutigen Egypter. Übersetzt von *J. Zenker*. 3 Bde. Leipzig 1852.

E. W. Lane, Arabian society in the middle ages. Studies from the Thousand and One Nights ed. by *Stanley Lane Poole*. London 1883. (Supplement to the "Manners and Customs", containing the notes to Lane's translation of the Thousand and One Nights (v. *infra*).

M. VERSE.

Delectus veterum carminum arabicorum. Carmina selegit et edidit *Th. Noeldeke*, glossarium confecit *A. Müller*. Berolini 1890.

Über Poesie und Poetik der Araber von *Wilhelm Ahlwardt*. Gotha 1856. 4^o.

Beiträge zur Kenntniss der Poesie der alten Araber. Von *Th. Nöldeke*. Hannover 1864.

Kitāb al-agānī by Abu 'l-Farağ 'Alī al-Iṣfahānī († 352 H., beg. 30. Jan. 962). 20 vols. Bulak 1285. — *Alī Ispahanensis* liber cantilenarum magnus, ed. *Kosegarten*. T. 1. Griepesvoldiae 1840. 4^o. — The twenty-first volume of *The Kitāb al-aghānī* ed. by *Rud. E. Brünnow*, Leyden 1888. — *Tables alphabetiques du Kitāb al-Agānī* par *J. Guidi*. 1^{er} fasc. Leide 1895.

Kitāb raudat al-adab fī ṭabakāt šu'arā' al'arab by *Iskander-Aga Abkariūs* (modern Beyrout scholar). Beirnt 1858.

Ḥizānat al-adab wa-lubb lubāb lisān al-arab, by 'Ab-dal-Kādir ibn 'Umar al-Bağdādī († 1093 H.; beg. 21. Aug. 1629) 4 vols. Bulak 1291 (A work on poets; on the margin are printed the *Šawāhid al-'Aini*). An index to the poets appeared from the pen of *Guidi* in the transactions of the R. Accademia dei Lincei, Rome 1887.

*The *Diwans* of the six ancient Arabic poets Ennābiga, 'Antara, Tharafa, Zuhair, 'Alqama and Imruulqais, ed. by *W. Ahlwardt*. London. 1870.

Bemerkungen über die Ächtheit der alten Arabischen Gedichte mit besonderer Beziehung auf die sechs Dichter etc. von *W. Ahlwardt*. Greifswald 1872.

Le *Diwān* de *Nābiga Dhobyānī* publié par *H. Dérenbourg*. Journal asiatique 1868—9.

H. Thorbecke, 'Antarah, ein vorislamischer Dichter. Leipzig 1867.

Die Gedichte des *Alkama* Alfahl. Mit Anmerkungen herausgegeben von *Albert Socin*. Leipzig 1867.

Le diwan d'*Amro'l-kais* par le Bon de Slane. Paris 1837. 4^o. With

Commentary by al-Baṭalyūsi. Cairo 1308. Cf. Amrīlkais, der Dichter und König. Von *Fr. Rückert*. Stuttgart und Tübingen 1843.

†*Septem *Mo'allakāt* carmina antiquissima Arabum, textum etc. rec. *F. A. Arnold*. Lipsiae 1850 (out of print) — With commentary by *az-Zauzani* († 375 H., beg. 24. May 958). Cairo 1288.

A commentary by Abū Zakariyā Sahyā *at-Tibrizī* († 420 H., beg. 11. Aug. 1108) on ten ancient Arabic poems edited from the Mss. of Cambridge, London and Leiden by Charles James Lyall. Fasc. I Bibliotheca Indica, New Series, No. 789, Calcutta 1891; Fasc. II ib. No. 840. Calc. 1894.

Der Diwan des *Lebid*. Nach einer Handschrift zum ersten Male herausgegeben von *Jusuf Dijā-ad-dīn al-Chālīdī*. Wien 1880. Cf. *A. von Kremer* in den Sitzungsberichten der phil.-hist. Classe der Kais. Akademie d. Wissenschaften 98. Bd. 2 Heft. Wien 1881. — Die Gedichte des *Lebid*. Nach der Wiener Ausgabe übersetzt und mit Anmerkungen versehen aus dem Nachlasse des *Dr. A. Huber* herausgegeben von *Carl Brockelmann*. Leiden 1891.

Die *Mufaddaliyāt* (Anthology of the Grammarian *al-Mufaddal*; † about 170 H.) Nach den Handschriften herausgegeben von *Heinrich Thorbecke*. Erstes Heft. Leipzig 1885.

**Hamasa* carmina cum Tebrisii scholiis integris edidit, indicibus instruxit, versione latina et commentario illustr. *G. G. Freytag*. 2 vol. Bonnae 1828—47 (collected by Abu Tammām † 190, beg. 27. Nov. 805; at-Tabrizī Comm. † 420 H., beg. 11. Aug. 1108). Another edition Bulak 1296. Cf. *Hamāsa* oder die ältesten arabischen Volkslieder, gesammelt von Abu Temmām, übersetzt und erläutert von *Friedrich Rückert*. 2 T. Stuttgart 1846.

The Hudsaillian poems contained in the manuscript of Leyden edited in Arabic and translated with annotations by *J. G. L. Kosegarten*. Vol. I. London 1854. 4^o. — Letzter Theil der Lieder der Hudbailliten, arabisch und deutsch: Skizzen und Vorarbeiten von *J. Wellhausen*. 1. Heft. Berlin 1884. Comp. Z. der D. Morgenl. Gesellschaft 39. pp. 104, 151, 411 ff.

Die Gedichte des 'Urwa ibn al-Ward. Von *Th. Nöldeke*: Abhandlungen der Kgl. Ges. d. Wiss. zu Göttingen. Hist.-Phil. Classe 11.

Gedichte und Fragmente des 'Aus ibn Hajar, gesammelt, herausgegeben und übersetzt von *Rudolf Geyer*: Sitzungsberichte der Kais. Akademie der Wissenschaften in Wien. Philos.-hist. Classe: Band 126. Wien 1892.

Anīs al-ḡulasā' fī diwān al-Hansā' (The poetess al-Hansā is said to have died A. H. 24, beg. 7. Nov. 644 A. D.) Beirut 1888. — Le diwan d'al Hansā' traduit par le *P. de Coppier* et suivi de fragments inédits d'Al-Hirniq. Beyrouth 1889.

- Ibn Hišāmi († 762 H., beg. 11 Nov. 1360) *Commentarius in Carmen Ka'bi ben Zoheir* Bānat Su'ād ed. *Guidi*. Lipsiae 1871. 1874.
- Der Diwān des Garwal b. Aus *al-Huṭej'a* († between 68—70 H.) Bearbeitet von *Ignaz Goldziher*: Zeitschrift der D. Morgenl. Gesellschaft Bd. 46, S. 1—53; 173—225; 471—527; Bd. 47, S. 43—85; 163—201. Also in a collected edition. Leipzig 1893.
- Diwān sayyidnā *Ḥassān ibn Tābit* († 54 H., beg. 30. Aug. 683). Tunis 1281.
- Diwān d'al-Aḥṭal, Texte arabe publié pour la première fois d'après le manuscrit de St. Pétersbourg et annoté par le P. A. Salhani S. J. Beyrouth 1891.
- Divan de *Fērāzdaḳ* († 110 H., beg. 16. April 728) récits de Mohammed ben-Habib d'après Ibn-el-Arabi publié sur le manuscrit de Sainte-Sophie de Constantinople avec une traduction française par *E. Boucher*. Paris 1870. 4^o. (incomplete).
- Maḡmū' muštamil 'ala ḥams dawāwīn (an-Nābiḡa, 'Urwa, Ḥātim, 'Al-kama and Farazdak) Cairo 1293 cf. Z. der D. Morgenl. Gesellschaft 31, 667 ff.
- Chalef elahmar's* (died after 155 H.) Qasside. Berichtigter arabischer Text etc. von A. *Ahlwardt*. Greifswald 1859.
- Diwān *al-Buḥturī* († 190 H., beg. 27 Nov. 805). Constantinople 1300.
- Diwan des Abu Nowas nach der Wiener und Berliner Handschrift mit Benutzung anderer Handschriften herausgegeben von W. *Ahlwardt*. 1. Die Weinlieder. Greifswald 1861. — Diwān Abi Nuwās. Cairo 1277. (*Abū Nuwās* † about 195 H. = 810).
- Diwan poëtae Abu-l-Walid Moslim ibno-l-Walid al-Anḡārī cognomine *Qarīo-l-ghawāni* (*Ṣarī al-ḡawāni* † 208 H., beg. 16. May 823) quem edidit M. de J. *Goeje*. Lugduni Bat. 1875. 4^o.
- Al-anwār az-zāhiya fī diwān Abi'l-'Atāhiya (*Abu'l-'Atāhiya* † 221 H., beg. 26. Dec. 835). Beirut 1886. 2^{me} édit. 1888.
- Diwān *Abi Tammām* Ḥabīb ibn Aus at-Ṭā'ī († 231 H., beg. 7. Sept. 845). Cairo 1292.
- Diwān amir al-mu'minīn *Ibn-al-Mu'tazz* al-'Abbāsi († 296 H. = 909) Cairo 1891. Cf. Über Leben und Werk des 'Abdallah ibn al-Mu'tazz von *Otto Loth*. Leipzig 1882.
- Mutanabbii (*al-Mutanabbī* † 354 H. = 965) carmina cum commentario Wahidii primum edidit, indicibus instruxit, varias lectiones adnotavit *Fr. Dieterici*. Berolini 1861. 4^o.
- Diwān *Abi Firās* al-Ḥamdāni († 357 beg. 7. Dec. 967). Beirut 1873.
- Abu'l-'Alā' al-Ma'arrī* († 449 H., beg. 10 March 1057) *Sakṭ ez-zind*, Poems with Commentary. 2 vols. Bulāk 1286 and 1302 (Another edition Beirut 1884). — *Luzūm mā lā yalzam*. Bombay 1303. 4^o; *Luzūmiyāt* 2 vols. Cairo 1891. — *Caroli Rieu* de Abul-Alae

- poetae arabici vita et carminibus. Bonnae 1843. Cf. Zeitschrift der D. Morgenl. Gesellschaft 29, 304; 30, 40; 31, 471 ff.
- Yatimat ad-dahr fi šu'arā' ahl al-'asr, Anthology composed by Abū Maṣṣūr 'Abd al-Malik at-Ta'ālībī († 429 H., beg. 14. Oct. 1037) 4 vols. Damascus 1302.
- Anthologie arabe ou choix de poésies arabes inédites traduites pour la première fois en français et accompagnées d'observations critiques et littéraires par M. Grangeret de La Grange. (Paris) 1828.

N. BELLES-LETTRES, ETHICS, ROMANCES.

- *The Kāmil of *El-Mubarrad* († 285 H., beg. 28. Jan. 898), edited for the German Oriental Society by W. Wright. Part. 1—12; Leipzig 1864—92. A reprint appeared in Cairo 2 vols. 1308.
- al-ʿIqd al-farīd, by Ibn 'Abd-rabbihī al-Andalusī († 328 H., beg. 28. March 860) 3 vols. Bulak 1293.
- Kitāb al-Muwassā of Abu 't-Tayyib Muḥammad ibn Ishāq al-Waṣṣā (lived 860—936 A. D.) edited by E. Brünnow. Leyden 1886.
- Ibn Arabṣchah († 854 H., beg. 14. Febr. 1450) Fructus imperatorum et jociatio ingeniosorum edidit G. G. Freytag. 2. vol. Bonnae 1832. 4^o. — Oriental editions with the title: Fākihāt al-hulafā' wa-mufākahāt az-zurafā'.
- Makāmāt badī' az-zamān al-Hamadānī (al-Hamadānī, the predecessor of Hariri died 398 H., beg. 17. Sept. 1007) with commentary by Šeiḥ Muḥammad Abdo. Beirut 1889. Other Makamat of Hamadānī Constantinople 1298.
- *Les séances de *Hariri* (al-Hariri † 516 H., beg. 12. March 1122), avec un commentaire choisi par Silvestre de Sacy; 1 éd. Paris 1822; 2. éd. par Reinaud et J. Derenbourg. 2 tom. Paris 1847—1853. — With the Commentary of as-Sarīšī († 619 H., beg. 15. Feb. 1222) 2 vols. Bulak 1284. — Makāmāt (Vowelled text) 2. Ed. Beyrouth 1886. — The Assemblies of Al-Hariri, transl. &c. by Thomas Chenery. Vol I 1867. — Do. Arabic text with English notes &c. by F. Steingass 1895.
- *Kitāb *Adab al-Kātib* (proply. an aid to elegant writing) composed by Muḥammad Abdallāh ibn Muslim Ibn Kutaiba († in the 2nd. half of the 3rd. Centy. of the Flight). Cairo 1300.
- Kitāb al-maṭāl as-sā'ir fi 'ādāb al-kātib waš-šā'ir (Treatise on Style) by Ibn al-Aṭir al-Gazarī († 637 H., beg. 3. Aug. 1239) Cairo 1282.
- Basāil (Letters) abi'l-Faḍl badī' az-zamān al-Hamadānī († 398 H., beg. 17. Sept. 1007). Constantinople 1298.
- al-Maḍānī († 518 H., beg. 19. Feb. 1124) Maḡma' al-amṭāl. (Collection of Proverbs). 2 vols. Bulak 1284. — Arabum proverbialia,

vocalibus instruxit, latine vertit, commentario illustravit *G. G. Freytag* I, II, III (a b.), Bonnae 1838—43.

†*Les colliers d'or, allocutions morales de Zamakhshari (az-Zamaḥṣārī* † 538 H., beg. 16. July 1143) texte arabe suivi d'une traduction française et d'un commentaire philologique par *C. Barbier de Meynard*. Paris 1876.

Al's hundert Sprüche arabisch und persisch paraphrasiert von *Beschid-eddin Watwat*, nebst einem doppelten Anhang arabischer Sprüche herausgegeben, übersetzt und mit Anmerkungen begleitet von *H. L. Fleischer*, Leipzig 1837. 4^o.

Sirāḡ al-mulūk (Ethics and Anecdotes) composed by *Abū Bekr Muḥammed at-Tartūṣī al-Mālikī* († 520 H., beg. 27. Jan. 1126). Cairo 1289.

Muḥādarāt al-'udabā wa-muḥāwarāt aṣ-ṣu'arā' wal-bulagā', a species of Ethics with Anecdotes by *ar-Rāḡib al-Isfahānī* († in the beginning of the 6th centy. of the Flight). 2 vols. Cairo 1287. 4^o.
al-Mustatraf fi kull fann al-mustazraf, a species of anthological Encyclopaedia compiled by *Aḥmad al-Iḍḍīlī* (lived about 800 H.) 2 vols. Cairo 1304. 1307.

Siret 'Antar ibn Saddād, 32 vols. Cairo 1286. 1307. (another recension 10 vols. Beirut 1871). Cf. *Antar*, a Bedouen romance. Translated from Arabic by *T. Hamilton*. Part. I, i—iv. London 1820.

Alf laila wa-laila. Tausend und eine Nacht arabisch. Nach einer Handschrift aus Tunis herausg. von *Maximilian Habicht* I—VIII; fortges. von *H. L. Fleischer* IX—XII vol. Breslau 1825—43. (This edition is not suitable for beginners in Arabic, as the language is in many parts strongly influenced by the vulgar tongue). — *The Alif Laila or book of the thousand nights and one night*, published from an Egyptian Ms. by *W. H. Macnaghten*. 4 vols. Calcutta 1839—42. — 4 vols. Bulak 1279. — Original in expurgated edition. Beyrout 1888—90. — Following the earlier Bulak edition: *The thousand and one nights commonly called, in England, The Arabian nights' entertainments*. Translated by *W. Lane*. 3 vol. London. 1 ed. 1841. Other editions by *Edw. Stanley Poole* (the last 1882).

PART II.

PARADIGMS, CHRESTOMATHY
AND
GLOSSARY.

PARADIGMATA.

TABULA I.

Suffixa et Praefixa in flexione verbi adhibita.

Persona	Numerus	Perfectum	Imperfectum
3. masc.	sing.		يَدُ — (يُ)
3. fem.	"	تَدُ —	تَدُ — (تُ)
2. masc.	"	تَدُ —	تَدُ — (تُ)
2. fem.	"	تَدُ —	تَدُ — يَنَ (يُ) (ي)
1.	"	تَدُ —	أَدُ — (أُ)
3. masc.	dual.	اَدُ —	يَدُ اَنَ (يُ) (ا)
3. fem.	"	اَدُ —	تَدُ اَنَ (تُ) (ا)
2.	"	اَدُ —	تَدُ اَنَ (تُ) (ا)
3. masc.	plur.	اَدُ —	يَدُ اَوَ (يُ) (ا)
3. fem.	"	اَدُ —	يَدُ اَوَ (يُ) (ا)
2. masc.	"	اَدُ —	تَدُ اَوَ (تُ) (ا)
2. fem.	"	اَدُ —	تَدُ اَوَ (تُ) (ا)
1.	"	اَدُ —	تَدُ اَوَ (تُ) (ا)

يَقْتُلُ (and intrins)

42

TABULA II.

Paradigma flexionis verbi sani stirpis I.

Activum

Persona	Numerus	Perfectum	Imperfectum				Imperativus
			Indicativus	Subjunctivus	Apocopat.	Energ. I.	Energ. II.
3. masc.	sing.	قَتَلَ	يَقْتُلُ	يَقْتُلُ	يَقْتُلُ	يَقْتُلُ	يَقْتُلْ
3. fem.	"	قَتَلَتْ	تَقْتُلُ	تَقْتُلُ	تَقْتُلُ	تَقْتُلُ	تَقْتُلِي
2. masc.	"	تَقَتَّلَ	تَقْتُلُ	تَقْتُلُ	تَقْتُلُ	تَقْتُلُ	تَقْتُلْ
2. fem.	"	تَقَتَّلَتْ	تَقْتُلِينَ	تَقْتُلِي	تَقْتُلِي	تَقْتُلِينَ	تَقْتُلِي
1.	"	قَتَلْتُ	أَقْتُلُ	أَقْتُلُ	أَقْتُلْ	أَقْتُلْ	أَقْتُلْ

PARADIGMATA.

أَقْتُلْ - أَقْتُلْ
أَقْتُلِي

3. masc. dual.	قَتَلَا	يَقْتُلَانِ	يَقْتُلَانِ	يَقْتُلَانِ	يَقْتُلَانِ	يَقْتُلَانِ
3. fem.	قَتَلَتَا	تَقْتُلَانِ	تَقْتُلَانِ	تَقْتُلَانِ	تَقْتُلَانِ	تَقْتُلَانِ
2.	قَتَلْتُمَا	تَقْتُلَانِ	تَقْتُلَانِ	تَقْتُلَانِ	تَقْتُلَانِ	تَقْتُلَانِ
3. masc. plur.	قَتَلُوا	يَقْتُلُونَ	يَقْتُلُونَ	يَقْتُلُونَ	يَقْتُلُونَ	يَقْتُلُونَ
3. fem.	قَتَلْنَ	يَقْتُلْنَ	يَقْتُلْنَ	يَقْتُلْنَ	يَقْتُلْنَ	يَقْتُلْنَ
2. masc.	قَتَلْتُمُ	تَقْتُلُونَ	تَقْتُلُونَ	تَقْتُلُونَ	تَقْتُلُونَ	تَقْتُلُونَ
2. fem.	قَتَلْتُنَّ	تَقْتُلْنَ	تَقْتُلْنَ	تَقْتُلْنَ	تَقْتُلْنَ	تَقْتُلْنَ
1.	قَتَلْنَا	نَقْتُلُ	نَقْتُلُ	نَقْتُلُ	نَقْتُلُ	نَقْتُلُ

اَقْتُلَا

اَقْتُلُوا

اَقْتُلْنَ

TABULA III.
Paradigma flexionis
Passivi I verbi sani

Persona	Numerus	Perfectum	Imperfectum		
			Indicativus	Subjunctivus	Apocopat.
3. masc.	sing.	قُتِلَ	يُقْتَلُ	يُقْتَلُ	يُقْتَلُ
3. fem.	"	قُتِلَتْ	تُقْتَلُ	تُقْتَلُ	تُقْتَلُ
2. masc.	"	قُتِلْتَ	تُقْتَلُ	تُقْتَلُ	تُقْتَلُ
2. fem.	"	قُتِلْتِ	تُقْتَلِينَ	تُقْتَلِي	تُقْتَلِي
1.	"	قُتِلْتُ	أُقْتَلُ	أُقْتَلُ	أُقْتَلُ
3. masc.	dual.	قُتِلَا	يُقْتَلَانِ	يُقْتَلَا	يُقْتَلَا
3. fem.	"	قُتِلْتَا	تُقْتَلَانِ	تُقْتَلَا	تُقْتَلَا
2.	"	قُتِلْتُمَا	تُقْتَلَانِ	تُقْتَلَا	تُقْتَلَا
3. masc.	plur.	قُتِلُوا	يُقْتَلُونَ	يُقْتَلُوا	يُقْتَلُوا
3. fem.	"	قُتِلْنَ	يُقْتَلْنَ	يُقْتَلْنَ	يُقْتَلْنَ
2. masc.	"	قُتِلْتُمْ	تُقْتَلُونَ	تُقْتَلُوا	تُقْتَلُوا
2. fem.	"	قُتِلْتُنَّ	تُقْتَلْنَ	تُقْتَلْنَ	تُقْتَلْنَ
1.	"	قُتِلْنَا	نُقْتَلُ	نُقْتَلُ	نُقْتَلُ

TABULA IV.

Paradigma stirpium verbi quadrilitteralis.

Stirps	Genus	Perfectum	Imperfectum	Imperativus	Participium	Infinitivus
I	Act.	قَطَرَ	يَقْطِرُ	قَطِرْ	مَقْطِرٌ	قَطْرٌ
I	Pass.	قُطِرَ	يُقَطَّرُ		مَقْطَرٌ	
II	Act.	تَقَطَّرَ	يَتَقَطَّرُ	تَقَطَّرْ	مَتَقَطِّرٌ	تَقْطِيرٌ
II	Pass.	تَقَطَّرَ	يَتَقَطَّرُ		مَتَقَطَّرٌ	

TABULA III.
Paradigma flexionis
 Passivi I verbi sani

Persona	Numerus	Perfectum	Imperfectum		
			Indicativus	Subjunctivus	Apocopat.
3. masc.	sing.	قُتِلَ	يُقْتَلُ	يُقْتَلُ	يُقْتَلُ
3. fem.	"	قُتِلَتْ	تُقْتَلُ	تُقْتَلُ	تُقْتَلُ
2. masc.	"	قُتِلْتَ	تُقْتَلُ	تُقْتَلُ	تُقْتَلُ
2. fem.	"	قُتِلْتِ	تُقْتَلِينَ	تُقْتَلِي	تُقْتَلِي
1.	"	قُتِلْتُ	أُقْتَلُ	أُقْتَلُ	أُقْتَلُ
3. masc.	dual.	قُتِلَا	يُقْتَلَانِ	يُقْتَلَا	يُقْتَلَا
3. fem.	"	قُتِلَتَا	تُقْتَلَانِ	تُقْتَلَا	تُقْتَلَا
2.	"	قُتِلْتُمَا	تُقْتَلَانِ	تُقْتَلَا	تُقْتَلَا
3. masc.	plur.	قُتِلُوا	يُقْتَلُونَ	يُقْتَلُوا	يُقْتَلُوا
3. fem.	"	قُتِلْنَ	يُقْتَلْنَ	يُقْتَلْنَ	يُقْتَلْنَ
2. masc.	"	قُتِلْتُمْ	تُقْتَلُونَ	تُقْتَلُوا	تُقْتَلُوا
2. fem.	"	قُتِلْتُنَّ	تُقْتَلْنَ	تُقْتَلْنَ	تُقْتَلْنَ
1.	"	قُتِلْنَا	نُقْتَلُ	نُقْتَلُ	نُقْتَلُ

TABULA IV.
Paradigma stirpium verbi quadrilitteralis.

Stirps	Genus	Perfectum	Imperfectum	Imperativus	Participium	Infinitivus
I	Act.	قَبِطَرَ	يَقْبِطُرُ	قَبِطِرْ	مَقْبِطُرٌ	قَبِطَارٌ
I	Pass.	قَبِطُرَ	يُقَبِطَرُ		مَقْبِطُرٌ	قَبِطَرٌ
II	Act.	تَقَبِطَرَ	يَتَقَبِطَرُ	تَقَبِطِرْ	مَتَقَبِطُرٌ	تَقَبِطَرٌ
II	Pass.	تَقَبِطُرَ	يَتَقَبِطَرُ		مَتَقَبِطُرٌ	تَقَبِطَرٌ

TABULA V.

Paradigma stirpium verbi sani.

	I	II	III	IV	V
Perfectum Activi	قتَلَ	قتَلَ	قَاتَلَ	اقتَلَ	تقتَلَ
Imperfectum "	يقتُلُ	يقتُلُ	يقاتِلُ	يقتُلُ	يقتُلُ
Imperativus "	اقْتُلْ	قَتِلْ	قَاتِلْ	اقتِلْ	تقتِلْ
Participium "	قاتِلٌ	مقتِلٌ	مقاتِلٌ	مقتِلٌ	مقتِلٌ
Perfectum Passivi	قُتِلَ	قُتِلَ	قُرِقِلَ	اقتِلَ	تقتِلَ
Imperfectum "	يقتُلُ	يقتُلُ	يقاتِلُ	يقتُلُ	يقتُلُ
Participium "	مقتولٌ	مقتلٌ	مقاتلٌ	مقتلٌ	مقتلٌ
Infinitivus	قتلٌ	تقتيلٌ	مقاتلةٌ vel قتالٌ	إقتالٌ	تقتالٌ

3 para. part. fem.

3 para. part. fem.

	VI	VII	VIII	IX	X
Perfectum Activi	تَقَاتَلَ	اِنْقَتَلَ	اِقْتَتَلَ	اَقْتَلَ	اِسْتَقْتَلَ
Imperfectum "	يَتَقَاتَلُ	يَنْقُتِلُ	يَقْتَتِلُ	يَقْتُلُ	يَسْتَقْتِلُ
Imperativus "	تَقَاتَلْ	اِنْقَتِلْ	اِقْتِلْ	اَقْتِلْ	اِسْتَقْتِلْ
Participium "	مَتَقَاتِلٌ	مَنْقَتِلٌ	مَقْتَتِلٌ	مَقْتُلٌ	مَسْتَقْتِلٌ
Perfectum Passivi	تُقَاتِلُ	اُنْقَتِلَ	اُقْتِتِلَ		اُسْتَقْتِلَ
Imperfectum "	يَتَقَاتَلُ	يَنْقُتِلُ	يَقْتَتِلُ		يَسْتَقْتِلُ
Participium "	مَتَقَاتِلٌ	مَنْقَتِلٌ	مَقْتَتِلٌ		مَسْتَقْتِلٌ
Infinitivus "	تَقَاتَلٌ	اِنْقَتَالٌ	اِقْتِتَالٌ	اَقْتِلَالٌ	اِسْتَقْتَالٌ

TABULA VI.
Paradigma flexionis
 Activi I verbi mediae geminatae

Persona	Nume- rus	Perfec- tum	Imperfectum			Impera- tivus
			Indica- tivus	Subjunc- tivus	Apocopatus	
3. masc.	sing.	فَرَّ	يَفِرُّ	يَفِرُّ	يَفِرُّ يَفِرُّ	اِفِرُّ فِرِّ
3. fem.	"	فَرَّتْ	تَفِرُّ	تَفِرُّ	تَفِرُّ تَفِرُّ	
2. masc.	"	فَرَرَتْ	تَفِرُّ	تَفِرُّ	تَفِرُّ تَفِرُّ	
2. fem.	"	فَرَرَتْ	تَفِرِينَ	تَفِرِي	تَفِرِي	
1.	"	فَرَرْتُ	أَفِرُّ	أَفِرُّ	أَفِرُّ أَفِرُّ	
3. masc.	dual.	فَرَّا	يَفِرَانِ	يَفِرَا	يَفِرَا	فِرَّا
3. fem.	"	فَرَّتَا	تَفِرَانِ	تَفِرَا	تَفِرَا	
2.	"	فَرَرْتُمَا	تَفِرَانِ	تَفِرَا	تَفِرَا	
3. masc.	plur.	فَرُّوا	يَفِرُّونَ	يَفِرُّوا	يَفِرُّوا	
3. fem.	"	فَرَرْنَ	يَفِرْنَ	يَفِرْنَ	يَفِرْنَ	فِرُّوا اِفِرْنَ
2. masc.	"	فَرَرْتُمْ	تَفِرُّونَ	تَفِرُّوا	تَفِرُّوا	
2. fem.	"	فَرَرْتُنَّ	تَفِرْنَ	تَفِرْنَ	تَفِرْنَ	
1.	"	فَرَرْنَا	نَفِرُّ	نَفِرُّ	نَفِرُّ نَفِرُّ	

TABULA VII.

Paradigma flexionis

Passivi I verbi mediae geminatae

Persona	Nume- rus	Perfec- tum	Imperfectum		
			Indicati- vus	Subjunc- tivus	Apocopatus
3. masc.	sing.	فُرِّ	يُفَرِّ	يُفَرِّ	يُفَرِّ يَفَرِّ
3. fem.	"	فُرَّتْ	تُفَرِّ	تُفَرِّ	تُفَرِّ تَفَرِّ
2. masc.	"	فُرِّتَ	تُفَرِّ	تُفَرِّ	تُفَرِّ تَفَرِّ
2. fem.	"	فُرِّتِ	تُفَرِّينَ	تُفَرِّى	تُفَرِّى
1.	"	فُرِّتُ	أُفَرِّ	أُفَرِّ	أُفَرِّ أَفَرِّ
3. masc.	dual.	فُرَّا	يُفَرِّانِ	يُفَرِّا	يُفَرِّا
3. fem.	"	فُرَّتَا	تُفَرِّانِ	تُفَرِّا	تُفَرِّا
2.	"	فُرِّتُمَا	تُفَرِّانِ	تُفَرِّا	تُفَرِّا
3. masc.	plur.	فُرُّوا	يُفَرِّونَ	يُفَرِّوا	يُفَرِّوا
3. fem.	"	فُرِّرنَ	يُفَرِّرنَ	يُفَرِّرنَ	يُفَرِّرنَ
2. masc.	"	فُرِّرْتُمْ	تُفَرِّونَ	تُفَرِّوا	تُفَرِّوا
2. fem.	"	فُرِّرْتُنَّ	تُفَرِّرنَ	تُفَرِّرنَ	تُفَرِّرنَ
1.	"	فُرِّرْنَا	نُفَرِّ	نُفَرِّ	نُفَرِّ نَفَرِّ

TABULA VIII

Paradigma stirpium verbi mediae geminatae contractarum.

	I	III	IV	VI	VII	VIII	X
Perfectum Activi	فَرَّ	فَارَّ	فَرَّ	فَقَّارَ	افْزَرَ	افْتَرَّ	اسْتَفَرَّ
Imperfectum "	يَفِرُّ	يَفَارُّ	يَفِرُّ	يَتَقَّارُ	يَنْفَرُّ	يَقْتَرُّ	يَسْتَفِرُّ
Imperativus "	اِفْرِ	اِفَارَّ	اِفِرَّ	تَقَّارْ	انْفَرَّ	اِفتَرَّ	اسْتَفِرَّ
Participium "	فَارٌّ	مَفَارٌّ	مَفِرٌّ	مَتَقَّارٌ	مَنْفَرٌّ	مَقْتَرٌّ	مَسْتَفِرٌّ
Perfectum Passivi	فُرِّ	فُرِّرَ	افْرُ	تَفُرِّرَ	انْفُرَّ	اُفْتَرَّ	اُسْتَفِرَّ
Imperfectum "	يُفَرُّ	يُفَارُّ	يُفَرُّ	يَتَقَّارُ	يَنْفَرُّ	يَقْتَرُّ	يَسْتَفِرُّ
Participium "	مَفُرٌّ	مَقَارٌّ	مَفِرٌّ	مَتَقَّارٌ	مَنْفَرٌّ	مَقْتَرٌّ	مَسْتَفِرٌّ
Infinitivus "	فَرٌّ	فَرَارٌ	اِفْرَارٌ	تَقَّارٌ	انْفَرَارٌ	اِفتَرَارٌ	اِسْتَفَرَارٌ

TABULA IX.

Paradigma formarum selectarum flexionis
verborum hamzatorum

		Verbi pr. هـ	Verbi sec. هـ	verbi tert. هـ
I. Perf.	Act.	أَثَرَ	كَتَبَ لَامَ	قَرَأَ
Impf.	"	يَأْتِرُ	يَكْتُبُ يَلَامَ	يَقْرَأُ
Imperat.	"	اِثْرُ x	اِكْتُبِ اِلَامَ	اِقْرَأْ
Partic.	"	أَثِرٌ	لَاثِمٌ	قَارِئٌ
Perf. Pass.		أُثِرَ	لُثِمَ	قُرِيَ
Imperf.	"	يُؤْتِرُ	يُلَامُ	يُقْرَأُ
II. Imperf. Act.		يُؤْتِرُ	يَلِثِمُ	يَقْرِي
Infin.	"	تَأْتِيرُ	تَلِثِمٌ	تَقْرِئَةٌ
IV. Perf. Act.		أَثَرَ	أَلَامَ	أَقْرَأَ
Perf. Pass.		أُثِرَ	أُلِثِمَ	أُقْرِيَ
VIII. Perf. Act.		(اِتَّخَذَ) اِثْتَرُ	اِلْتَامَ	اِقْتَرَأَ
Imperf.	"	(يَتَّخِذُ) يَأْتَثِرُ	يَلْتَثِمُ	يَقْتَرِي
Perf. Pass.		(اُتُّخِذَ) اُوتَثِرُ x	اُلْتِمَ	اُقْتَرِيَ
Imperf.	"	(يُتَّخِذُ) يُوتَثِرُ	يُلْتَامُ	يُقْتَرَأُ

TABULA X.

Paradigma flexionis verborum
primae radicalis , et ی

		Verbi pr. , Imperf. i	Verbi pr. , Imperf. a	Verbi pr. , sani	Verbi pr. ی
I. Perf.	Act.	وَصَدَ	وَدَعَ	وَسَخَ	يَسِرُ
	Imperf. "	يَصِدُ	يَدَعُ	يُوسَخُ	يَيْسِرُ
	Imperat. "	صِدْ	دَعْ	(أَوْسِنْ , اِجْلَدْ)	اِيسِرْ
	Imperf. Pass.	يُوصَلُ	يُودَعُ	يُوسَخُ	يُوسِرُ
	Infinit.	صِلَّةٌ	دَعَةٌ , وَدَعٌ	وَسَخٌ	يَسِرٌ
IV. Perf.	Act.	أَوْصَلَ	أَوْدَعَ	أَوْسَخَ	أَيْسِرَ
	Imperf. "	يُوصِلُ	يُودِعُ	يُوسِخُ	يُويسِرُ
	Partic. "	مُوصِلٌ	مُودِعٌ	مُوسِخٌ	مُويسِرٌ
	Infinit.	اِيصَالٌ	اِيدَاعٌ	اِيسَاخٌ	اِيسَارٌ
VIII. Perf.	Act.	اِتَّصَلَ	اِتَّدَعَ	اِتَّسَخَ	اِتَّسِرَ
	Imperf. "	يَتَّصِلُ	يَتَّدَعُ	يَتَّسِخُ	يَتَّسِرُ
	Perf. Pass.	اِتُّصِلَ	اِتُّدِعَ	اِتُّسِخَ	اِتُّسِرَ
X. Perf.	Act.	اِسْتَوْصَلَ	اِسْتَوْدَعَ	اِسْتَوْسَخَ	اِسْتَيْسِرَ
	Infinit.	اِسْتِيصَالٌ	اِسْتِيدَاعٌ	اِسْتِيسَاخٌ	اِسْتِيسَارٌ

TABULA XI.

Paradigma flexionis

Activi I verbi mediae radicalis ,

Persona	Numerus	Perfectum	Imperfectum			Imperativus
			Indicativus	Subjunctivus	Apocopatus	
3. masc.	sing.	قَالَ	يَقُولُ	يَقُولُ	يَقُلْ	
3. fem.	"	قَالَتْ	تَقُولُ	تَقُولُ	تَقُلْ	
2. masc.	"	قُلْتَ	تَقُولُ	تَقُولُ	تَقُلْ	قُلْ
2. fem.	"	قُلْتِ	تَقُولِينَ	تَقُولِي	تَقُولِي	قُولِي
1.	"	قُلْتُ	أَقُولُ	أَقُولُ	أَقُلْ	
3. masc.	dual.	قَالَا	يَقُولَانِ	يَقُولَا	يَقُولَا	
3. fem.	"	قَالَتَا	تَقُولَانِ	تَقُولَا	تَقُولَا	
2.	"	قُلْتُمَا	تَقُولَانِ	تَقُولَا	تَقُولَا	قُولَا
3. masc.	plur.	قَالُوا	يَقُولُونَ	يَقُولُوا	يَقُولُوا	
3. fem.	"	قُلْنَ	يَقُلْنَ	يَقُلْنَ	يَقُلْنَ	
2. masc.	"	قُلْتُمْ	تَقُولُونَ	تَقُولُوا	تَقُولُوا	قُولُوا
2. fem.	"	قُلْتُنَّ	تَقُلْنَ	تَقُلْنَ	تَقُلْنَ	قُلْنَ
1.	"	قُلْنَا	نَقُولُ	نَقُولُ	نَقُلْ	

TABULA XII.
Paradigma flexionis
Activi I verbi mediae radicalis ع

Persona	Numerus	Perfectum	Imperfectum			Imperativus
			Indicativus	Subjunctivus	Apocopatus	
3. masc.	sing.	سَارَ	يَسِيرُ	يَسِيرَ	يَسِرْ	
3. fem.	"	سَارَتْ	تَسِيرُ	تَسِيرَ	تَسِرْ	
2. masc.	"	سَرَتْ	تَسِيرُ	تَسِيرَ	تَسِرْ	سِرْ
2. fem.	"	سَرَتْ	تَسِيرِينَ	تَسِيرِي	تَسِيرِي	سِيرِي
1.	"	سَرْتُ	أَسِيرُ	أَسِيرَ	أَسِرْ	
3. masc.	dual.	سَارَا	يَسِيرَانِ	يَسِيرَا	يَسِيرَا	
3. fem.	"	سَارَتَا	تَسِيرَانِ	تَسِيرَا	تَسِيرَا	
2.	"	سَرْتُمَا	تَسِيرَانِ	تَسِيرَا	تَسِيرَا	سِيرَا
3. masc.	plur.	سَارُوا	يَسِيرُونَ	يَسِيرُوا	يَسِيرُوا	
3. fem.	"	سَرْنَ	يَسِرْنَ	يَسِرْنَ	يَسِرْنَ	
2. masc.	"	سَرْتُمْ	تَسِيرُونَ	تَسِيرُوا	تَسِيرُوا	سِيرُوا
2. fem.	"	سَرْتُنَّ	تَسِرْنَ	تَسِرْنَ	تَسِرْنَ	سِرْنَ
1.	"	سَرْنَا	نَسِيرُ	نَسِيرَ	نَسِرْ	

TABULA XIII.

Paradigma flexionis

Passivi I verbi mediae radicalis , vel ی

Persona	Nume- rus	Perfec- tum	Imperfectum		
			Indicativus	Subjunc- tivus	Apocopa- tus
3. masc.	sing.	قِيلَ	يُقَالُ	يُقَالَ	يُقَدُّ
3. fem.	"	قِيلَتْ	تُقَالُ	تُقَالَ	تُقَدُّ
2. masc.	"	قِلْتَ	تُقَالُ	تُقَالَ	تُقَدُّ
2. fem.	"	قِلْتِ	تُقَالَيْنِ	تُقَالِي	تُقَالِي
1.	"	قِلْتُ	أُقَالُ	أُقَالَ	أُقَدُّ
3. masc.	dual.	قِيلَا	يُقَالَانِ	يُقَالَا	يُقَالَا
3. fem.	"	قِيلْتَا	تُقَالَانِ	تُقَالَا	تُقَالَا
2.	"	قِلْتُمَا	تُقَالَانِ	تُقَالَا	تُقَالَا
3. masc.	plur.	قِيلُوا	يُقَالُونَ	يُقَالُوا	يُقَالُوا
3. fem.	"	قِيلْنَ	يُقَلْنَ	يُقَلْنَ	يُقَلْنَ
2. masc.	"	قِلْتُمْ	تُقَالُونَ	تُقَالُوا	تُقَالُوا
2. fem.	"	قِلْتُنَّ	تُقَلْنَ	تُقَلْنَ	تُقَلْنَ
1.	"	قِلْنَا	نُقَالُ	نُقَالَ	نُقَدُّ

tice à under 2nd radif
imperf active.

a vowel in the 2nd radif

PARADIGMATA.

TABULA XIV.
Paradigma stirpium verborum mediae, et y irregularium.

	I	I	I	IV	VII	VIII	X
	Verb. med.	Verb. med.	Verb. med.	Verb. med.	Verb. med.	Verb. med.	Verb. med.
	قَالَ	خَافَ	سَارَ	أَقَالَ	إِنْقَالَ	أَقْتَالَ	أَسْتَقَالَ
Perfect. Act.	قَالَ	خَافَ	سَارَ	أَقَالَ	إِنْقَالَ	أَقْتَالَ	أَسْتَقَالَ
(II. P. masc. S.	قُلْتُ	خِفْتُ	سَرْتُ	أَقُلْتُ	إِنْقُلْتُ	أَقْتُلْتُ	أَسْتَقُلْتُ
Imperf. "	يَقُولُ	يَخَافُ	يَسِيرُ	يُقِيلُ	يُنْقَالُ	يُقْتَالُ	يُسْتَقِيلُ
Imperat. "	قُلْ	خَفْ	سِرْ	أَقُلْ	إِنْقُلْ	أَقْتُلْ	أَسْتَقِلْ
Particip. "	قَائِلٌ	خَائِفٌ	سَائِرٌ	مُقِيلٌ	مُنْقَالٌ	مُقْتَالٌ	مُسْتَقِيلٌ
Perfect. Pass.	قِيلَ	خِيفَ	سِيرَ	أُقِيلَ	أُنْقَالُ	أُقْتَالُ	أُسْتَقِيلُ
Imperf. "	يُقَالُ	يُخَافُ	يُسَارُ	يُقَالُ	يُنْقَالُ	يُقْتَالُ	يُسْتَقَالُ
Particip. "	مَقُولٌ	مَخُوفٌ	مَسِيرٌ	مَقَالٌ	مُنْقَالٌ	مُقْتَالٌ	مُسْتَقَالٌ
Infinitivus	قَوْلٌ	خَوْفٌ	سَيْرٌ	إِقَالَةٌ	إِنْقِيَالٌ	إِقْتِيَالٌ	إِسْتِقَالٌ

TABULA XV.
Paradigma flexionis
Activi I verbi ultimae, فَعَلَ

Persona	Numerus	Perfectum	Imperfectum			Imperativus
			Indicativus	Subjunctivus	Apocopatus	
3. masc.	sing.	غَزَا	يَغْزُو	يَغْزُو *	يَغْزُ	
3. fem.	"	غَزَتْ	تَغْزُو	تَغْزُو	تَغْزُ	
2. masc.	"	غَزَوْتَ	تَغْزُو	تَغْزُو	تَغْزُ	أَغْزُ
2. fem.	"	غَزَوْتِ *	تَغْزَيْنِ	تَغْزِي	تَغْزِي	أَغْزِي
1.	"	غَزَوْتُ	أَغْزُو	أَغْزُو	أَغْزُ	
3. masc.	dual.	غَزَا	يَغْزَوَانِ	يَغْزُوا	يَغْزُوا	
3. fem.	"	غَزَتَا	تَغْزَوَانِ	تَغْزُوا	تَغْزُوا	
2.	"	غَزَوْتُمَا	تَغْزَوَانِ	تَغْزُوا	تَغْزُوا	أَغْزُوا
3. masc.	plur.	غَزَوْا	يَغْزُونُ	يَغْزُوا	يَغْزُوا	
3. fem.	"	غَزَوْنَ	يَغْزُونُ	يَغْزُونُ	يَغْزُونُ	
2. masc.	"	غَزَوْتُمْ	تَغْزُونُ	تَغْزُوا	تَغْزُوا	أَغْزُوا
2. fem.	"	غَزَوْتُنَّ	تَغْزُونُ	تَغْزُونُ	تَغْزُونُ	أَغْزُونُ
1.	"	غَزَوْنَا	نَغْزُو	نَغْزُو	نَغْزُ	

TABULA XVI

Paradigma flexionis

Activi I verbi ultimae فَعَلَ ي

Persona	Numerus	Perfectum	Imperfectum			Imperativus
			Indicativus	Subjunctivus	Apocopatus	
3. masc.	sing.	رَمَى	يَرْمَى	يَرْمَى	يَرَمْ	
3. fem.	"	رَمَتْ	تَرْمَى	تَرْمَى	تَرَمْ	
2. masc.	"	رَمَيْتَ	تَرْمَى	تَرْمَى	تَرَمْ	اِرَمْ
2. fem.	"	رَمَيْتِ	تَرْمِينَ*	تَرْمَى	تَرْمَى	اِرْمَى
1.	"	رَمَيْتُ	أَرْمَى	أَرْمَى	أَرَمْ	
3. masc.	dual.	رَمَيَا	يَرْمِيَانِ	يَرْمِيَا	يَرْمِيَا	
3. fem.	"	رَمَتَا	تَرْمِيَانِ	تَرْمِيَا	تَرْمِيَا	
2.	"	رَمَيْتُمَا	تَرْمِيَانِ	تَرْمِيَا	تَرْمِيَا	اِرْمِيَا
3. masc.	plur.	رَمَوْا	يَرْمُونَ	يَرْمُوا	يَرْمُوا	
3. fem.	"	رَمَيْنَ	يَرْمِينَ*	يَرْمِينَ	يَرْمِينَ	
2. masc.	"	رَمَيْتُمْ	تَرْمُونَ	تَرْمُوا	تَرْمُوا	اِرْمُوا
2. fem.	"	رَمَيْتُنَّ	تَرْمِينَ	تَرْمِينَ	تَرْمِينَ	اِرْمِينَ
1.	"	رَمَيْنَا	نَرْمَى	نَرْمَى	نَرَمْ	

TABULA XVII.

Paradigma flexionis

Activi I verbi ultimae , vel فَعَلَى

Persona	Numerus	Perfectum	Imperfectum			Imperativus
			Indicativus	Subjunctivus	Apocopatus	
3. masc.	sing.	رَضِيَ	يَرْضَى	يَرْضَى	يَرْضَ	
3. fem.	"	رَضِيَتْ	تَرْضَى	تَرْضَى	تَرْضَ	
2. masc.	"	رَضَيْتَ	تَرْضَى	تَرْضَى	تَرْضَ	اِرْضَ
2. fem.	"	رَضَيْتِ	تَرْضَيْنَ	تَرْضَى	تَرْضَى	اِرْضَى
1.	"	رَضَيْتُ	اَرْضَى	اَرْضَى	اَرْضَ	
3. masc.	dual.	رَضِيَا	يَرْضِيَانِ	يَرْضِيَا	يَرْضِيَا	
3. fem.	"	رَضِيَتَا	تَرْضِيَانِ	تَرْضِيَا	تَرْضِيَا	
2.	"	رَضَيْتُمَا	تَرْضِيَانِ	تَرْضِيَا	تَرْضِيَا	اِرْضِيَا
3. masc.	plur.	رَضَوْا *	يَرْضَوْنَ	يَرْضَوْا	يَرْضَوْا	
3. fem.	"	رَضَيْنَ	يَرْضَيْنَ	يَرْضَيْنَ	يَرْضَيْنَ	
2. masc.	"	رَضَيْتُمْ	تَرْضَوْنَ	تَرْضَوْا	تَرْضَوْا	اِرْضَوْا
2. fem.	"	رَضَيْتُنَّ	تَرْضَيْنَ	تَرْضَيْنَ	تَرْضَيْنَ	اِرْضَيْنَ
1.	"	رَضِينَا	نَرْضَى	نَرْضَى	نَرْضَ	

TABULA XIX.
Paradigma stirplum verborum ultimae, et ی

	I verbi ult. , فَعَلَ	I verbi ult. , فَعَلَ	I verbi ult. , فَعَلَ	I verbi ult. , فَعَلَ	II verbi ult. , فَعَلَ	III verbi ult. , فَعَلَ	IV verbi ult. , فَعَلَ
Perfectum Activi	عَرَا	رَمَى	رَضَى	رَضَى	قَضَى	قَضَى	أَقْضَى
Imperfectum "	يَعْرِزُ	يَرْمِي	يَرْمِي	يَرْمِي	يَقْضِي	يَقْضِي	يَقْضِي
Imperativus "	اعْرِزْ	ارْمِ	ارْمِ	ارْمِ	قَضِ	قَضِ	اقْضِ
Participium "	عَارِزٌ *	رَامٌ	رَامٍ	رَامٍ	مُقْضٍ	مُقْضٍ	مُقْضٍ
Perfectum Passivi	عُرِيَ	رُمِيَ	رُمِيَ	رُمِيَ	قُضِيَ	قُضِيَ	أُقْضِيَ
Imperfectum "	يُعْرَى	يُرْمَى	يُرْمَى	يُرْمَى	يُقْضَى	يُقْضَى	يُقْضَى
Participium "	مُعْرٍ	مُرْمٍ	مُرْمٍ	مُرْمٍ	مُقْضٍ	مُقْضٍ	مُقْضٍ
Infinitivus "	عُرُو	رُمَى	رُمَى	رُمَى	تَقْضِيَّةٌ	مُقْضَاٌ vel مُقْضَاً	أَقْضَاٌ

	V verbi ult. و vel ی	VI verbi ult. و vel ی	VII verbi ult. و vel ی	VIII verbi ult. و vel ی	X verbi ult. و vel ی
Perfectum Activi	تَقَضَّى	تَقَاضَى	انْقَضَى	اِقْتَضَى	اِسْتَقْضَى
Imperfectum "	يَتَقَضَّى	يَتَقَاضَى	يَنْقَضَى	يَقْتَضَى	يَسْتَقْضَى
Imperativus "	تَقْضِ	تَقَاضِ	انْقِضِ	اِقْتِضِ	اِسْتَقِضِ
Participium "	مُتَقَضٍّ	مُتَقَاضٍ	مُنْقِضٍ	مُقْتَضٍ	مُسْتَقْضٍ
Perfectum Passivi	نَقِضَ	نَقُوضَى	انْقَضِيَ	اِقْتَضِيَ	اِسْتَقْضِيَ
Imperfectum "	يَنْقَضَى	يُنْقَاضَى	يُنْقَضَى	يُقْتَضَى	يُسْتَقْضَى
Participium "	مَنْقُضٍ	مُنْقَاضٍ	مُنْقَضٍ	مُقْتَضٍ	مُسْتَقْضٍ
Infinitivus	تَقْضٍ	تَقَاضٍ	انْقِضَاءٌ	اِقْتِضَاءٌ	اِسْتِغْضَاءٌ

TABULA XVIII.

Paradigma flexionis

Passivi I verbi ultimae , vel ی

Persona	Numerus	Perfectum	Imperfectum		
			Indicativus	Subjunctivus	Apocopa- tus
3. masc.	sing.	قُضِيَ	يُقْضَى	يُقْضَى	يُقْضَ
3. fem.	"	قُضِيَتْ	تُقْضَى	تُقْضَى	تُقْضَ
2. masc.	"	قُضِيَْتَ	تُقْضَى	تُقْضَى	تُقْضَ
2. fem.	"	قُضِيْتِ	تُقْضَيْنِ	تُقْضَى	تُقْضَى
1.	"	قُضِيْتُ	أُقْضَى	أُقْضَى	أُقْضَ
3. masc.	dual.	قُضِيََا	يُقْضَيَانِ	يُقْضَيَا	يُقْضَيَا
3. fem.	"	قُضِيَتَا	تُقْضَيَانِ	تُقْضَيَا	تُقْضَيَا
2.	"	قُضِيْتُمَا	تُقْضَيَانِ	تُقْضَيَا	تُقْضَيَا
3. masc.	plur.	قُضُوا	يُقْضَوْنَ	يُقْضَوْا	يُقْضَوْا
3. fem.	"	قُضِينَ	يُقْضَيْنَ	يُقْضَيْنَ	يُقْضَيْنَ
2. masc.	"	قُضِيْتُمْ	تُقْضَوْنَ	تُقْضَوْا	تُقْضَوْا
2. fem.	"	قُضِيْتُنَّ	تُقْضَيْنَ	تُقْضَيْنَ	تُقْضَيْنَ
1.	"	قُضِينَا	نُقْضَى	نُقْضَى	نُقْضَ

TABULA XX.

Paradigma flexionis nominis

a) generis masculini

α) triptoti

	indeterminati	determinati cum articulo	determinati in statu constructo
Sing. Nom.	قَصَابٌ	الْقَصَابُ	قَصَابٌ
Gen.	قَصَابٍ	الْقَصَابِ	قَصَابٍ
Acc.	قَصَابًا	الْقَصَابَ	قَصَابَ
Dual. Nom.	قَصَابَانِ	الْقَصَابَانِ	قَصَابَا
Gen.-Acc.	قَصَابَيْنِ	الْقَصَابَيْنِ	قَصَابَيَّ
Plur. Nom.	قَصَابُونَ	الْقَصَابُونَ	قَصَابُو
Gen.-Acc.	قَصَابِينَ	الْقَصَابِينَ	قَصَابِي

β) diptoti

Sing. Nom.	آخِرٌ	الْآخِرُ	آخِرٌ
Gen.	آخِرٍ	الْآخِرِ	آخِرٍ
Acc.	آخِرًا	الْآخِرَ	آخِرًا
Dual. Nom.	آخِرَانِ	الْآخِرَانِ	آخِرَا
Gen. Acc.	آخِرَيْنِ	الْآخِرَيْنِ	آخِرَيَّ

	indeterminati	determinati cum articulo	determinati in statu constructo
Plur. Nom.	آخَرُونَ	الْآخَرُونَ	آخَرُو
Gen. Acc.	آخَرِينَ	الْآخَرِينَ	آخَرِي

TABULA XXL

b) generis feminini

α) triptoti

Sing. Nom.	سَاعَةٌ	السَّاعَةُ	سَاعَةُ
Gen.	سَاعَةٍ	السَّاعَةِ	سَاعَةٍ
Acc.	سَاعَةً	السَّاعَةَ	سَاعَةً
Dual, Nom.	سَاعَتَانِ	السَّاعَتَانِ	سَاعَتَا
Gen.-Acc.	سَاعَتَيْنِ	السَّاعَتَيْنِ	سَاعَتَيِ
Plur. Nom.	سَاعَاتٌ	السَّاعَاتُ	سَاعَاتُ
Gen.-Acc.	سَاعَاتٍ	السَّاعَاتِ	سَاعَاتِ

β) diptoti

Sing. Nom.	مِئَةٌ	ceterum idem
Gen. Acc.	مِئَةٍ	

TABULA XXII.

a) generis masculini in ‏ desinentis.

	indeterminati	determinati cum articulo	determinati in statu constructo
Sing. Nom.-Gen.	قَاضٍ	القَاضِي	قَاضِي
Acc.	قَاضِيًا	القَاضِيَّ	قَاضِيَّ
Dual. Nom.	قَاضِيَانِ	القَاضِيَانِ	قَاضِيَا
Gen.-Acc.	قَاضِيَيْنِ	القَاضِيَيْنِ	قَاضِيَيْنِ
Plur. Nom.	قَاضُونَ	القَاضُونَ	قَاضِر
Gen.-Acc.	قَاضِينَ	القَاضِينَ	قَاضِي

b) nominis in ‏, ‏ desinentis.

a) triptoti

Sing. Nom.-	}	مُصْطَفَى	المُصْطَفَى	مُصْطَفَى
Gen.-Acc.				
Dual. Nom.		مُصْطَفَيَانِ	المُصْطَفَيَانِ	مُصْطَفَيَا
Gen.-Acc.		مُصْطَفَيَيْنِ	المُصْطَفَيَيْنِ	مُصْطَفَيَيْنِ
Plur. Nom.		مُصْطَفَوْنَ	المُصْطَفَوْنَ	مُصْطَفَر
Gen.-Acc.		مُصْطَفِينَ	المُصْطَفِينَ	مُصْطَفَى

	indeterminati	determinati cum articulo	determinati in statu constructo
Sing. Nom.- Gen.-Acc. }	عَصَا	الْعَصَا	عَصَا
Dual. Nom.	عَصَوَانِ	الْعَصَوَانِ	عَصَوَا
	β) diptoti		
Sing. Nom.- Gen.-Acc. }	ذِكْرَى	الذِّكْرَى	ذِكْرَى
id.	ذُنْيَا	الدُّنْيَا	ذُنْيَا

TABULA XXIII.

Paradigma nominis cum suffixis.

a) nominis masc. in singulari positi قَصَابٌ; fem. جَارِيَةٌ.				
cum suffixo	1. pers. sing.		قَصَابِي fem.	جَارِيَتِي Kanat
"	"	2. " " masc.	قَصَابُكَ	Kassa buk
"	"	2. " " fem.	قَصَابُكِ	
"	"	3. " " masc.	قَصَابُهُ (gen. قَصَائِهِ)	
"	"	3. " " fem.	قَصَابُهَا	
"	"	2. " dualis	قَصَابُكُمَا	
"	"	3. " "	قَصَابُهُمَا (gen. قَصَائِهِمَا)	
"	"	1. " pluralis	قَصَابُنَا	
"	"	2. " " msc.	قَصَابُكُمْ	
"	"	2. " " fem.	قَصَابُكُنَّ	
"	"	3. " " msc.	قَصَابُهُمْ (gen. قَصَائِهِمْ)	
"	"	3. " " fem.	قَصَابُهُنَّ (gen. قَصَائِهِنَّ)	

b) *nominis in duali positi.*

ya

Kas

Nominativus cum suffixo 1. pers. sing.

قَصَابَيَّ

" " " 2. " " msc. قَصَابَاK etc.

Gen.-Acc.

"

"

1. " "

قَصَابِيَّ

" " " 2. " " msc. قَصَابَيْكَ

" " " 3. " " " قَصَابِيْعِ

" " " 3. " " fem. قَصَابِيْهَا etc.

c) *nominis masculini in plurali positi.*

Nominativus cum suffixo 1. pers. sing.

قَصَابِيَّ

Kas

" " " 2. " " msc. قَصَابُوكْ etc.

Gen.-Acc.

"

"

1. " "

قَصَابِيَّ

" " " 2. " " msc. قَصَابِيْكَ

" " " 3. " " msc. قَصَابِيْعِ

" " " 3. " " fem. قَصَابِيْهَا etc.

d) *nominis feminini in plurali positi.*

Nom.-Gen.-Acc. cum suff. 1. pers. sing.

سَاعَاتِيَّ

Kas

Nominativus

"

"

2. " "

msc.

سَاعَاتُكَ

" " " 3. " " " سَاعَاتُهَا etc.

Gen.-Acc.

"

"

2. " "

"

سَاعَاتِكَ

" " " 3. " " " سَاعَاتِهَا etc.

EXERCISES AND TEXTS.

I.

A. EXERCISES IN READING.

1. الكتاب معرفة يقبضون نظلم ذخيرة تهتدى جميع
وصلنا فريق غالب ثمين اسكنوا رجز حطط خلف
بالغ هروبة شمس فرزدق بصل عام اضطربت قال
يغلظ نحرث تغلح ماض تشبه سلوك طاف ججم باع ورش
حسنيات درج وظيفة شاه تقنص يلحقك حكاية
2. 3. قَتَلْ يُضْرَبْ دَاعِ ظُهُورُ نَوْمٍ يَكْلَبُ مِيزَانِ صَلَوَةٌ
ضَيْعَةٌ شَوَاطِ كُبْرَى تَيْهٍ رَضَى وَيَلَا مَشْرُوبٍ غِرَارَةٌ لَوْ مَا
يَشْتَبِهُونَ حَجَّكَ مُسْتَدَاقٍ سَفَلَى بُلُغُوا مُحَضَّرَةً سَقَرُوا
حُدَيَا مَحْتَمُومٍ تَزْدَلِجُ سِقُوا سَلِيمُنْ *
4. إِنْ لَيْسَ تَأْلُفُونَ أَسَدًا مُؤْنِ أَعْيَنَةً أَنْزَلَ إِمْضَاءَ
مَشْنُوءَةٍ صَانٍ يُطَاطِئُ مِلْدَ هَنِيئًا هَرَاءَ مُؤْتَمَرٍ كَثَبَ
بَطْوٍ زَائِلَ حَمْرَاءَ يَبْدَأُ مَلَاكٌ يَحْيَى *

5. وَبَكَتِ الْمَتَوَفَّى أَمْ يُسَيِّبُونَ النَّقْطَ الشَّيْبُغُ تَشْمُرَا
الطَّالِبِينَ مَقْضَى الدَّلُو الطَّحَّانَ الصَّدِيقُ الْحَيَّةُ
أَحْضَرُ الثَّرَاءُ الْقَثَاءُ الدَّهَبِيُّ اللَّهُمَّ أَلْصَقِ السَّيَّارَةِ
اللَّهُ الْقَصَابَ الْأَيْدِ الْمَفْتِشُ التَّطْهِيرُ يَرُدُّ *

6. قَامَ الرَّسُولُ * اِعْتَزَلَ الْفَرِيقُ * فَاتَّبَعُوهُ وَلَا تَتَّبِعُوا
السُّبُلَ * الضَّرْبُ * اِشْهَدُ * حَزْبُ اللَّهِ * ثُمَّ الْعَالِبُونَ *
عَلَى السَّطْحِ * عَمْرُ بْنُ الْحَرِثِ * قَوْمٌ أَفْتَرَقُوا * بِسْمِ
الرَّحْمَنِ * زَيْدُ الطَّيْلِ * إِنْ أَنْقَضَى الْأَمْرُ * لِلصَّبْرِ
الْحَبِيلُ * عُيُونًا أَنْبَسَطَ * مَاتَتِ الصَّبِيَّةُ فِي الْبَيْتِ *
اِشْتَرَوْا التَّيْرَانَ * عَنِ الطُّوفَانِ * عَيْنِي الْإِنْسَانِ *
الْإِفْتِرَاءُ * لِلدَّالِيَةِ *

7. مَلَأَنَ آخِرًا تَسَاءَلُوا سَائِقُ قَضَاؤُهُ آذَى أَقْرَبَاءَ آفَةٍ
وَزَرَءَ أَعْدَائِهِ يَحْيُونَ *

8. 9. أَلْعَالِمِينَ يُؤْمِنُ إِلَيْهِمْ كُلُّ مَادَّةٍ هُدًى رَحْمَةً وَدَعَا
يُفْتَرَى نَجَى يَنْظُرُوا وَلِيَّةُ السَّمَوَاتِ الرَّحْمَنُ تَأْتِيهِمْ
اِتَّبَعْنِي اسْتَجِدَّ الْمَلَائِكَةُ اِمْشِ تَحِيلُهُ اِخْتَلَفُوا بَشَرُ
أَمَدَكُمْ كَذَبُوهُ يُوبِقُهُنَّ بَيْنَهُمْ مَسْقُطَةٌ يَشَاءُ *

B. EXERCISES ON THE ETYMOLOGY.

16-29. بَشَّرَ اجْتَدَبَ تَحَارَبَ أَحْزَنَ حَسَنَ تَمَرَّغَ غَضِبَ
اسْتَحَبَّ اضْطَجَعَ انْطَلَقَ شَاهَدَ اخْضُرَّ اطَّلَعَ عَمِلَ
اقْبَلَ تَنْصَرَّ صَدَقَ تَزَلَّزَلَ اسْتَعِيدَ عُولَجَ اطْحَنَ انْتَزَعَ
تُقْبِلَ قُرَّبَ اُصْلِحَ تَقْوَصِرَ اضْطَرَبَ زَلَّزَلَ *

30-33. خَبِرْتُ خَتَمْنَا اَخْرَجْتَ يَرْكَبُ احْسَنُ ارْتَعَدْتُمْ تُرْصِعُ
ارْزُقُ يَرْجِعُونَ افْتَحَ حَمَلًا نَحِدُ اخْتَفِطُ يَدْفَعَانِ اَدْرَكُوا
تَسْتَرْ يَرْغَبُوا نَتَكَلَّمُ اقْعِدِي كَبُرْتُ يَنْكَرُ اُظْهَرْتَ
تَتَحَارَبُ لِقَبْتَا يَتَكَبَّرُ يُشَبِّهْنَ اخْتَبِرْتَ يَنْكَشِفُ
تُقْسِمُ افْتَرَقُوا نَكَرَهُ تَسْتَخْرِجِينَ تَقَدَّمُوا نَاشَدْنَا
يَنْتَزِعُ اَسْنَدُوا شَرِبْتُمْ تُسَلِّطِي امْتَنَعْنَا اَلْبَثُوا غَسَلْتُ
تُشْرِفُونَ تَفَاجَرُ يُفْتَحَنَّ يَسْتَنْكِحُ نَتَفَقَّدُ اَقْدَرْنَا
اعْلَمْنَا اَلْبَسُوا فَرَعْنَا تَعَرَّضُ يُسْنَدُوا اخْتَفَرُوا نَاكِحًا
34-36. رَدَدْنَا يَضْبُونُ احْبَبْتَ يَنْفَكُ صَبَّ نَرْتَدُّ شِدْدِي خَرُوا
اسْتَنْبَتَ يُقَرِّرُ هَمَمْتُ تُرْفِئُ تَنْقَضُ جُرُوا يَعْرِزْنَ اَجْبُوا
فَحَلَّ مَرَّ شَلِدَتْ نَسْتَقِرُّ تَصَدَّدَ *

have not & you have perfect. 3.

EXERCISES ON THE ETYMOLOGY.

33*

يَاكُلْ مَرُوا تَوَمِّنِينَ نَتَّخِذْ يَسْتَأْذِنُونَ تُوَخَّرْ اَيْتَلَفْنَا 37-38

اَيْلَفْ آكَلُوا بُوَسْنَا يَسْتَثِيرُ تَشَاءَ مَتْمُ يَبْطِي بَطُوتِ
اِبْدًا نُسْتَبْطُ تَنْبَأْتُ اِمْتَلَانِ تَخْطِئِينَ نَبْنَأُ يَطْأُطِي *

رَدُوا يَوْسَنُ اَوْسَعْتُ تَصِفُ تَرْتُوا اُسْتُوَلِدَ تَتَعَدُ 40.

تَوَاضَعَ يَصْلُوا تَفِدِينَ دَعُوا نَقِفُ يُوَكِّلُ تَوَجَّهَنَّ
يُوجِبُ يَبْنَأُ اِسْتَيْقِظْنَا تُرْقِطُ اِيَقِطُ تَرُدُ *

جَزَتْ نَقُومُ اَشْرَنَا صِرَ طَرْتُمُ اَقِمْ بَاعُوا تَسْتَعِينُ 41-44.

اِعَوَجَّتْ يَخْتَارُ يَمَيِّزُونَ اَمَتْ خَيْلَا كُنْ يَبْعَنُ اَبِينُوا
- خَفْتُمَا اُخْتَرْنَا نَنَامُ يُرِيدَانِ تَزَوَّجَتْ اَطْبِعُوا يَنْهَارُ
اِنْهَارَتْ يَسْتَعِيدُ اَطْلَتْ غَيَّرْتُمْ يَتَصَايَحُوا نَمَ لِمَنَا تَكَ
خَافُوا اُسْتَعِينُ يُرَدُّ جُدْنَا *

يَمْشِي اَمْسَيْتُ غَدَوْنَا اَمَضَ لَقَيْتُ نَتَعَدَّى عَمُوا 45-48. +

تَنْتَهِيَنَّ يَصْلُونَ اَفْشَى اَقْتَنَيْتُ تَنْجُوْ اِنْقَضَتْ بَكَيْتُ
بُلَيْنَا تُبَلِّوْا يَكْفِيَانِ غَنَّ نَادَيْتُمْ يَنْبَغِي اِسْتَنْثَيْتُ
تَغْفِينُ تُبْنَى اِشْتَرَوْا اِشْتَرَوْا اِشْتَرَوْا يُكْنَوْنَ يَنْتَحَ
اِرْمُوا اَذْرَيْتُ رَخَوْتُ اَرْضَى نَسَمَ نُودَيْتُ دَنَتْ *

يَلِي تُوَفِّيَتْ نَطْوَى تَشَاءَ يَوْمُونَ اِنْقَتَ جِنَا يَرُونَ 49.
تَرِينَ اَرَارَيْتَ نَجَى يَوْمَ *

جَعَلْنَاهُ نَشِيتَهَا تَرَمِيهِمْ اَجَبْنَاكُمْ يَبِيعُكَ حَرَكَتُهُ 53.
نَشْتَرِيهِ يَتْرُكُوكُمَا لَمْنِي يُجَبِّنَا يَفْتَحُهَا يُعَالِجُونَنِي مَنَعُونَ
ظَلَمْنَاهُمْ نَحَدُّنُكَ يَنَادِيهِمَا *

خَادِمٌ مُرْتَعِدٌ مَخْرَجٌ مُسْلَطٌ مَكْتُوبٌ مُخْتَصِرٌ مُتَحَارِبٌ 60-61
مُحَرِّكٌ مُجْتَمِعٌ ثَاكِدٌ مُتَبَعٌ مُضْطَجِعٌ مُنَاكِحٌ عَمَلٌ مُفَاخِرَةٌ
اِقْسَامٌ فَتَحٌ مُسْتَخْرَجٌ تَحْرِيمٌ تَحَارِبٌ اِلْتِصَاقٌ مُجَوِّدٌ
مُتَمَسِّكٌ اِظْهَارٌ تَكَلَّمَ نِكَاحٌ تَرَعَزَعُ اِنْكَشَافٌ اِسْتِقْبَالٌ
مَعْمُولٌ تَقْرِيْبٌ مُتَفَقِّدٌ *

سَمِ اِنْفِكَالٌ اَدْنٌ مُنْقَضٌ حَاجٌ اِسْتِثْبَابٌ حُبٌّ مُرْتَدٌّ 67-71.
مَرْفُوفٌ مُسْتَقَرٌّ اَعَزُّ اَكِلٌ مَأْمُورٌ اِيْمَانٌ مُتَخَذٌ مُؤَخَّرٌ
مَنْلُوهٌ قُرْآنٌ اِبْطَاءٌ مُمْتَلًى مُبْطَأٌ وَسَخٌ اِيسَاعٌ مُتَعَدٌّ
صِفَةٌ اِسْتِيلَادٌ مُوَجَّبٌ مُوقَظٌ وَضَعٌ تَوَكُّيدٌ بَيْعٌ خَوْفٌ
مُقِيمٌ صَائِرٌ اِخْتِيَارٌ نَائِمٌ مُبَيَّرٌ مُشَارٌ تَصَاوِيحٌ اِطَاعَةٌ
اِسْتِعَانَةٌ تَزْوُجٌ مُخَيَّلٌ مُنْهَارٌ مَيِّتٌ مُعْوَجٌ خَوْفٌ
تَمْرِوِيَتْ اِنْقِيَادٌ تَغْيِيرٌ مُسْتَقِيمٌ سَوْقٌ مَقَامٌ مَغِيْبٌ

مَشَى زَهْرٌ مَقْضَى مُنْسٍ اِقْتِنَا مَفْشَى مُتَعَدٍ غَارٍ
 مُنَادَاةٌ تَنْحَ مُسْتَتْنَى مَدْعُو اِنْبِغَا جَفَا رَضَى غَنَى
 مُعْطَى تَسْيِيَةٌ مُنْتَهَى بَقَا مُضَى عَدُو *

88. 89. سَيُوفٌ اَدْيَانُ زُؤُوسٌ رَجَالُ عُمَالُ عَسَاكِرُ جَحْمُ
 اَسْمِكَةٌ غَوَاشٌ جَحْمُ اَيَّاتٌ خُفٌ رُوسَاءُ اَرْجُلُ اَغْنِيَاءُ
 صُفْرٌ عَجَائِبُ عَيْدٌ عِبَادُ صُورٌ بَوَاطِنُ مَلَابِسُ اَمْكِنَةٌ
 رُعَاةٌ جُهْلٌ قَتَلَى رَعَايَا عَقَارِبُ اَقْرَبَاءُ اِلَهَةٌ سَكَارَى
 اَمْطَارُ مَمَالِكُ نَسَحَ نَجُومٌ نُوْقٌ ذِيْرَانُ اَيْتَامُ اَلْسُنُ
 كِرَادِيْسُ اَقْوَالُ عَشَائِرُ سُوْدٌ سُوْدَانُ سُرُوجٌ حِكَا ح
 مَلَايِكَةٌ مَرَايَ عُنَى دَوَابٌ دَرَاهِمُ رِيَا ح زَوَايَا سَوَاعِدُ
 سَادَةٌ شُهُودٌ اَثَارُ *

C. EXERCISES ON THE SYNTAX.

135-138. ضَرَبَ عَمْرُو غُلَامًا لَهُ¹ * نَزَلَ اَلْمُؤْمِنُونَ عَلَى بَابِ
 اَلدَّارِ * اُحْدِلْ لَكُمْ صَيْدُ اَلْبَحْرِ وَطَعَامُهُ * كَانَتْ²
 اَلنِّسَاءُ فِي اَلْجَاهِلِيَّةِ يُطْلِقْنَ اَلرِّجَالَ * كَانَ عَبْدُ

¹ § 130.² § 99c.

يَلِي تُوَفِّيَتْ نَطْرِي تَشَاءَ يَوْمُونَ اتَّقَتْ جِنَا يَرُونَ 49.
تَرَيْنَ أَرَأَيْتَ كَيْفَ يَوْمَ *

جَعَلْنَاهُ نُثْنَتَهَا تَرْمِيهِمْ أَجَبْنَاكُمْ يَبِيعُكَ حَرَكْتُمُوهُ 53.
نَشْتَرِيهِ يَتْرُكُوكُمَا لَمْنِي يُحْبِنَا يَفْتَحُهَا يَعَالِجُونِي مَنَعُونَ
ظَلَمْنَاهُنَّ يُحَدِّثُكُنَّ يُنَادِيهِمَا *

60-61 خَادِمٌ مُرْتَعِدٌ مُخْرَجٌ مُسْلَطٌ مَكْتُوبٌ مُخْتَصِرٌ مُتَحَارِبٌ
مُخْرَجٌ مُجْتَمِعٌ مُتَبَعٌ مُضْطَجِعٌ مُبَاكِمٌ مُعَدٌ مُفَاخِرَةٌ
إِقْسَامٌ مُفْتَحٌ مُسْتَخْرَجٌ مُخْرِمٌ مُخَارِبٌ مُتَصَاقٌ مُجُودٌ
مُتَمَسِّكٌ مُظْهَارٌ تَكَلَّمَ نِكَاحٌ تَزَعْرَعُ انْكِشَافٌ اسْتِقْبَالٌ

مَعْبُولٌ تَقْرِيْبٌ مُتَفَقِّدٌ *
67-71 سَمِ انْفِكَالٌ اَذُنٌ مُنْقَضٌ حَاجٌ اسْتِتْبَابٌ حُبٌّ مُرْتَدٌ
مَرْفُوفٌ مُسْتَقَرٌّ اَعَزُّ اَكِلٌ مَأْمُورٌ اِيْمَانٌ مُتَخَذٌ مُوَخَّرٌ
مَمْلُوءٌ قُرْآنٌ اِبْطَاءٌ مُمْتَلِيٌّ مُبْطَأٌ وَسَخٌ اِيْسَاعٌ مُتَعَدٌ
صِفَةٌ اسْتِيْلَادٌ مُوجِبٌ مُوقِظٌ وَضَعٌ تَوَكُّيدٌ بَيْعٌ خَوْفٌ
مُقِيمٌ صَائِرٌ اِخْتِيَارٌ نَائِمٌ مُبَيَّرٌ مُشَارٌ تَصَايُحٌ اِطَاعَةٌ
اسْتِعَانَةٌ تَزْوُجٌ مُخَيَّلٌ مُنْهَارٌ مَيِّتٌ مُعْرَجٌ مُخَوِّفٌ
تَمْوِيْتٌ اِنْقِيَادٌ تَغْيِيْرٌ مُسْتَقِيْمٌ سَوْقٌ مَقَامٌ مَغِيْبٌ

مَشَى زَهْرٌ مَقْضَى مُنِيسٍ اِقْتِنَاةٌ مُفْشَى مُتَعَدٍّ غَارِي
 مُنَادَاةٌ تَنْحَمُ مُسْتَتْنَى مَدْعُوٌّ اِنْبِعَاةٌ جَفَاةٌ رَضَى غِي
 مُعْطَى تَسْيِيَةٌ مُنْتَهَى بَقَاةٌ مُضَى عَدُوٌّ *

88 سَيُوفٌ اَدْيَانُ زُرُوسٌ رِجَالٌ عُمَالٌ عَسَاكِرُ جَحْمُ
 اَسْمَكَةٌ غَوَاشٍ جَحْمُ اَيَّاتٌ خُفٌّ رُوسَاءُ اَرْجُلٌ اَغْنِيَاءُ
 صُفْرٌ عَجَائِبُ عَبِيدُ عِبَادُ صُورٌ بَوَاطِنُ مَلَايِسُ اَمْكَنَةٌ
 رُعَاةٌ جُهْدٌ قَتَلَى رَعَايَا عَقَارِبُ اَقْرِبَاءُ اِلَهَةٌ سَكَارَى
 اَمْطَارٌ مَمَالِكُ نَسَحَ نَجُومٌ نُوْقٌ نِيرَانٌ اَيْتَامٌ اَلْسُنُ
 كَرَادِيْسُ اَقْوَالُ عَشَائِرُ سُوْدٌ سُوْدَانٌ سُرُوجٌ حِكَاةٌ
 مَلَايِكَةٌ مَرَاةٌ عُنَى دَوَابٌ دَرَاهِمُ رِيَاةٌ زَوَايَا سَوَاعِدُ
 سَادَةٌ شُهُودٌ اَثَارٌ *

C. EXERCISES ON THE SYNTAX.

13: صَرَبَ عَمْرُو غُلَامًا لَهُ¹ * نَزَلَ اَلْمُؤْمِنُونَ عَلَى بَابِ
 اَلدَّارِ * اُحْدِلْ لَكُمْ صَيْدَ اَلْبَحْرِ وَطَعَامُهُ * كَانَتْ²
 اَلنِّسَاءُ فِي اَلْجَاهِلِيَّةِ يُطْلِقْنَ اَلرِّجَالَ * كَانَ عَبْدُ

¹ § 130.² § 99c.

اللَّهِ عَاقِلًا مَاهِرًا¹ فِي الْعُلُومِ * قَالَتْ² الْيَهُودُ وَالنَّصَارَى
نَحْنُ أَبْنَاءُ اللَّهِ وَأَحِبَّاؤُهُ³ * وَلَى الْأَعْدَاءُ هَارِبِينَ⁴ *
كَانَ النَّبِيُّ يَعُودُ الْكَرِيمَ⁵ وَيَتَّبِعُ الْجَنَائِزَ وَيَجَالِسُ
الْفُقَرَاءَ * قَالَ قَائِلٌ⁶ مِنْهُمْ⁷ لَا تَقْتُلُوا⁸ يُوسُفَ *
تَمَرَّغَ مُوسَى بَيْنَ يَدَيِ اللَّهِ تَوَاضَعًا⁹ لَهُ * قَدْ جَعَلَ
اللَّهُ قُلُوبَهُمْ قَاسِيَةً¹⁰ * فَاتْلَهُمْ آبَنُ الْعَبَّاسِ¹¹ قِتْلًا
شَدِيدًا¹² * ^{النَّاسِ}

أَصْبَحَ¹³ النَّاسُ مِنَ النَّادِمِينَ * أَمَرَ اللَّهُ رَسُولَهُ
بِالْهَجْرَةِ وَفَرَضَ عَلَيْهِ جِهَادَ الْكُفَّارِ * أُنْزِلَتْ التَّوْرَةُ
عَلَى مُوسَى عَلَيْهِ السَّلَامُ * أَقَامَ مُحَمَّدٌ بِمَكَّةَ
ثَلَاثَ عَشْرَةَ سَنَةً¹⁴ * أَعُوذُ بِاللَّهِ مِنَ الشَّيْطَانِ
الرَّجِيمِ * يَقْبِضُ اللَّهُ الْأَرْضَ يَوْمَ الْقِيَامَةِ وَيَطْوِي
السَّمَاءَ بِيَمِينِهِ ثُمَّ يَقُولُ أَنَا الْمَلِكُ آيُنَ¹⁶ مُلُوكِ
الْأَرْضِ * أَتَّبِعُوا فِي هَذِهِ الدُّنْيَا لَعْنَةً¹⁷ * كَانَ وَرَقَةُ
آبَنُ¹⁸ نَوْفَلٍ قَدْ قَرَأَ¹⁹ الْكُتُبَ وَطَلَبَ الْعِلْمَ وَرَغِبَ²⁰ عَنْ

¹ § 110. 149. ² § 136 c 2. ³ § 124. ⁴ § 113 b. ⁵ § 118 c. ⁶ § 137 d.
⁷ § 121 a. ⁸ § 101 b. ⁹ § 113 d. ¹⁰ § 108. ¹¹ § 128. ¹² § 109. ¹³ § 110.
¹⁴ § 92 b. ¹⁵ § 113 a. ¹⁶ § 141. ¹⁷ § 108. ¹⁸ § 6 f 2. ¹⁹ § 98 e f. ²⁰ § 116.

عِبَادَةَ الْأَوْثَانِ وَبَشَرَ خَدِيجَةَ بِالنَّبِيِّ وَأَنَّهُ¹ نَبِيُّ
هَذِهِ الْأُمَّةِ وَأَنَّهُ سَيُؤَدِّي² وَيَكْدُبُ * التَّوَاضُّعُ سَلَمٌ
الشَّرَفُ *

13 الْعَبِيدُ ثَلَاثَةٌ عَبْدٌ رَقِي³ وَعَبْدٌ شَهْوَةٌ وَعَبْدٌ
طَمَعٌ * لَهُمْ مَغْفِرَةٌ وَأَجْرٌ عَظِيمٌ * لِكُلِّ شَيْءٍ رَأْسٌ
وَرَأْسُ الْمَعْرُوفِ تَحْجِيلُهُ * قُلُوبُ الْأَحْرَارِ قُبُورُ
الْأَسْرَارِ * السَّامِعُ شَرِيكَ الْقَائِلِ فِي الشَّرِّ * الْأَقَارِبُ
فُؤَادُ الْعَقَارِبِ * | التَّفَكُّرُ نُورٌ وَالْعَفْلَةُ ظُلْمَةٌ وَالْجَهَالَةُ
ضَلَالَةٌ وَالْعِلْمُ حَيَاةٌ * مِنْ عِلَامَةِ الْأَحْمَقِ الْجُلُوسُ
فَوْقَ الْقَدْرِ وَالْحَيُّ فِي غَيْرِ الْوَقْتِ * الْمُلُوكُ حُكَّامٌ
عَلَى النَّاسِ وَالْعُلَمَاءُ حُكَّامٌ عَلَى الْمُلُوكِ * أَحْسَنُ
الْكُنُوزِ حَبَّةُ الْقُلُوبِ * نَشَاطُ الْمُنْتَكَلِمِ بِقَدْرِ إِقْبَالِ
السَّامِعِ * قَالَ النَّبِيُّ الْفَخْرُ فِي الْإِسْلَامِ بِالتَّقْوَى *
الْعُدْرُ الْجَبِيدُ خَيْرٌ مِنَ الْمَطْلِ الطَّوِيلِ * إِحْدَى
مَوَاجِبِ الرَّحْمَةِ إِطْعَامُ الْأَخِ الْمُسْلِمِ الْجَائِعِ * الْبِطْنَةُ
تُذْهِبُ الْفِطْنَةَ * حُسْنُ الْخُلُقِ زِمَامٌ مِنْ رَحْمَةٍ

¹ § 147 a, 148 b note. ² § 99 a, cf. note b. ³ § 123.

اللَّهُ تَعَالَى فِي أَنْفِ صَاحِبِهِ وَالرِّمَامِ بِيَدِ الْمَلِكِ
 وَالْمَلِكِ يَجْرُهُ إِلَى الْخَيْرِ وَالْخَيْرُ يَجْرُهُ إِلَى الْجَنَّةِ *
 الْحُبُّ وَالْبَغْضُ يَتَوَارَكَانِ * الصَّدِيقُ الْأَلُوفُ لَا يُبَاعُ
 بِالْأَلُوفِ * الْمَنَافِقُ يُعْطِيكَ لِسَانَهُ وَيَمْنَعُكَ قَلْبَهُ *
 147. إِنَّ الطَّالِبِينَ لَهُمْ عَذَابٌ أَلِيمٌ * أَلَمْ تَرَ أَنَّ اللَّهَ
 أَنْزَلَ مِنَ السَّمَاءِ مَاءً فَتُصْبِحُ الْأَرْضُ مُخْضَرَّةً إِنَّ اللَّهَ
 لَطِيفٌ خَبِيرٌ * يَا أَيُّهَا النَّبِيُّ حَرِّضَ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ
 عَلَى الْقِتَالِ * إِنَّا أَنْزَلْنَا إِلَيْكَ الْكِتَابَ بِالْحَقِّ *
 إِنَّ اللَّهَ حَرَّمَ الْجَنَّةَ عَلَى الْمُتَكَبِّرِينَ * إِنَّ اللَّهَ يُحِبُّ
 الْمُحْسِنِينَ * يَا اللَّهُ إِنَّكَ أَنْتَ لَعَلَّامُ الْغُيُوبِ *
 إِنَّ الْآخِرَةَ هِيَ دَارُ الْقَرَارِ * إِنَّ اللَّهَ لَسَرِيعُ
 الْحِسَابِ * إِنَّ الْمَنَافِقَ يُسَىءُ كُلَّ يَوْمٍ فَلَا يُعْتَدِرُ *
 إِنَّ فِي ذَلِكَ لَآيَاتٍ * إِنَّ فِي ذَلِكَ لَعِبْرَةً لِّأُولِي
 الْأَبْصَارِ * إِنَّهُ لَا يَفْلَحُ الطَّالِمُونَ * جَلَسَ
 الْأَسْكَندَرُ لِلنَّاسِ يَوْمًا فَلَمْ يَسْأَلْهُ أَحَدٌ حَاجَةً فَقَالَ
 لِحُلَسَائِهِ إِنِّي لَا أَعُدُّ هَذَا الْيَوْمَ مِنْ أَيَّامِ مُلْكِي *

قَالَ بُقْرَاطُ اسْتَهِينُوا بِأَلَمَوْتِ فَإِنَّ مَرَارَتَهُ فِي حَوْرِهِ *
 كُنْ فِي الدُّنْيَا كَأَنَّكَ عَابِرُ سَبِيلٍ وَعَدِ نَفْسَكَ فِي
 أَصْحَابِ الْقُبُورِ * رَزَقَكُمْ اللَّهُ مِنَ الطَّيِّبَاتِ لَعَلَّكُمْ
 تَشْكُرُونَ *

تَمَامُ الْمَرْوَةِ خِدْمَةُ الرَّجُلِ ضَيْفُهُ¹ * الْقُلُوبُ
 أَوْعِيَةٌ وَالشِّفَاهُ أَقْفَالُهَا وَالْأَلْسُنُ مَفَاتِيحُهَا فَلْيَحْفَظْ²
 كُلُّ إِنْسَانٍ مِفْتَاحَ سِرِّهِ * تَصَدَّقَ أَبُو الْأَسْوَدِ عَلَى
 سَائِلٍ بِتَمْرَةٍ فَقَالَ³ لَهُ جَعَلَ⁴ اللَّهُ نَصِيبَكَ مِنَ الْجَنَّةِ
 مِثْلَهَا * لَا تُودِعْ سِرَّكَ إِلَى طَالِبٍ فَالطَّالِبُ لِلْسِرِّ⁵
 مُذِيعٌ *

مَا نَحْنُ بِتَارِكِي⁶ آلِهَتِنَا * الْكَفَّارُ مَا هُمْ بِخَارِجِينَ
 مِنَ النَّارِ * مَا رَبُّكَ بِظَلَّامٍ لِلْعَبِيدِ * الطَّالِمُونَ
 مَا لَهُمْ⁷ مِنْ وَلِيٍّ * مَا مِنْ أَلْعَمَالِ شَيْءٌ أَحَبُّ إِلَيَّ
 مِنْ ثَلَاثَةِ إِشْبَاعِ جَوْعَةِ الْمُسْلِمِ وَقَضَاءِ دِينِهِ وَتَنْفِيسِ
 كُرْبَتِهِ * لَا يَسْتَوِي الْحَيِثُ وَالطَّيِّبُ * قَالَ مُعَاوِيَةُ

¹ § 131.² § 101 a note.³ § 152.⁴ § 98 d.⁵ § 132.⁶ § 144.⁷ § 141.

كُلُّ النَّاسِ آقِدُرُ أَرْضِهِمْ إِلَّا¹ حَاسِدٌ نِعْمَةً فَإِنَّهُ لَا
يُرْضِيهِ إِلَّا زَوَالُهَا * لَا يَتَكَبَّرُ إِلَّا كُلُّ وَضِيعٍ وَلَا
يَتَوَاضَعُ إِلَّا كُلُّ رَفِيعٍ * مَا نُرْسِلُ الْمُرْسَلِينَ إِلَّا
مُبَشِّرِينَ² وَمُنذِرِينَ *

100. أَوْحَىٰ إِلَىٰ هَٰذَا الْقُرْآنَ لِأُنذِرَكُمْ بِهِ * يَتَّبِعِي
لِلْإِنْسَانِ أَنْ يَجْتَنِبَ مُعَاشَرَةَ الْأَشْرَارِ وَيَتْرَكَ مُصَاحَبَةَ
الْجُنَّارِ * لَا يَكُونُ الصَّدِيقُ صَدِيقًا حَتَّىٰ يَحْفَظَ
أَخَاهُ فِي ثَلَاثٍ فِي نَكَبَتِهِ وَغَيْبَتِهِ وَوَفَاتِهِ * نَهَى
رَسُولُ اللَّهِ أَنْ يُتَّبَعَ الرَّجُلُ بَصَرَهُ لِقَمَةِ أَخِيهِ *
إِنَّمَا يُرِيدُ الشَّيْطَانُ أَنْ يُوقِعَ بَيْنَكُمْ الْعَدَاوَةَ وَالْبَغْضَاءَ
فِي الْخَمْرِ وَالْمَيْسِرِ وَيَصُدَّكُمْ عَنْ ذِكْرِ اللَّهِ وَعَنِ
الصَّلَاةِ *

إِنَّ الْعَاقِلَ يَتَّعِظُ بِالْآدَبِ وَالْبَهَائِمِ لَا تَتَّعِظُ
إِلَّا بِالضَّرْبِ * قَالُوا آمَنَّا بِأَفْوَاهِهِمْ وَلَمْ تُؤْمِنْ
قُلُوبُهُمْ * أَوَأَمِنَ أَهْلُ الْقُرَىٰ أَنْ يَأْتِيَهُمْ بَأْسُنَا

¹ § 151.² § 113 b.³ § 157.

فُحِّى وَهُمْ يَلْعَبُونَ * سَوَاءٌ عَلَيْهِمْ أُنذَرْتَهُمْ أَمْ
لَمْ تُنذِرْهُمْ *

154 قَالُوا يَا أَمِيرَ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ هِيَ الدَّارُ الَّتِي كُنَّا
نَسْكُنُهَا مِنْ قَبْلُ * الَّذِينَ آمَنُوا وَعَمِلُوا الصَّالِحَاتِ
سَنُدْخِلُهُمْ جَنَّاتٍ تَجْرَى مِنْ تَحْتِهَا الْأَنْهَارُ خَالِدِينَ
فِيهَا أَبَدًا * قَالَ اللَّهُ يَا عِيسَى ابْنَ مَرْيَمَ أَنْتَ
قُلْتَ لِلنَّاسِ اتَّخِذُونِي وَأُمِّي إِلَهَيْنِ مِنْ دُونِ اللَّهِ *
قَاتَلَ جَيْشُ الْمُسْلِمِينَ الْأَعْدَاءَ حَتَّى أَنْهَرُمَا *
مَثَلُ الْمَلِكِ الَّذِي يُعَبِّرُ خَزَائِنَهُ بِأَمْوَالِ الرِّعَايَا
كَمَثَلِ الَّذِي يُطَيِّنُ سَطْحَ بَيْتِهِ بِالتُّرَابِ الَّذِي
يُقْتَلَعُ مِنْ أَسَاسِهِ * قِيلَ لَا يُحِبُّكَ مَنْ يُحِبُّ
عَدُوَّكَ * لَا تَسْتَخْفِرِ الرَّأْيَ الْجَلِيلَ يَأْتِيكَ بِهِ
الرَّجُلُ الْخَفِيرُ فَإِنَّ الدَّرَّةَ الْفَائِقَةَ لَا تُسْتَهَانُ لِهَوَانِ
غَايِصِهَا * كَذَّبَ الْقَوْمُ نوحًا فَأَتَجَنَّبُهُ وَالَّذِينَ مَعَهُ
فِي الْفُلِّكَ وَاعْرِقْنَا الَّذِينَ كَذَّبُوا بِآيَاتِنَا * الصَّاحِبُ
رُقْعَةً فِي الثَّوبِ فَلْيَنْظُرِ الْإِنْسَانُ بِمَ يَرْقُعُ ثَوْبَهُ *
أَدْنَى أَخْلَاقِي الشَّرِيفِ كِتْمَانُ السِّرِّ وَأَعْلَى أَخْلَاقِهِ

نَسِيَانُ مَا أُسِّرَ إِلَيْهِ * مَا نَدِمْتُ عَلَى مَا لَمْ أَفْعَلْ
 مَرَّةً وَنَدِمْتُ عَلَى مَا قُلْتُ مِرَارًا * سَوْفَ يُنَبِّئُهُمُ
 اللَّهُ بِمَا كَانُوا يَصْنَعُونَ * قِيلَ لِرَاهِبٍ مِنْ أَيْنَ
 تَأْكُلُ فَأَشَارَ إِلَى فِيهِ وَقَالَ الَّذِي خَلَقَ هَذِهِ الرَّحَى
 يَأْتِيهَا بِالطَّحِينَ * الْمَكْبَةُ شَجَرَةٌ أَصْلُهَا الرِّيَّارَةُ *

158 ff. لَا تَسْتَقِلَّ عَدُوًّا وَاحِدًا وَلَا تَسْتَكْثِرُ أَلْفَ صَدِيقٍ
 وَلَا تَسْتَبْدِلَ بِأَخٍ قَدِيمٍ أَخًا مُسْتَحْدَثًا مَا اسْتَقَامَ
 لَكَ * إِحْبَبِ النَّاسَ كَمَا تَحْبِبُ النَّارَ خُذْ مِنْ
 مَنَفْعَتِهَا وَاحْذَرْ أَنْ تُحْرِقَكَ * قَالَ الْإِسْكَندَرُ أَنْتَفَعْتُ
 بِأَعْدَائِي أَكْثَرَ مِمَّا أَنْتَفَعْتُ بِأَصْدِقَائِي * لَقَدْ
 كَذَبْتَ رُسُلًا مِنْ قَبْلِكَ فَصَبَرُوا عَلَى مَا كُذِّبُوا وَأَوْدُوا
 وَلَا مُبَدِّلَ لِكَلِمَاتِ اللَّهِ *

قَالَ عَلَى الرَّزْقِ رِزْقَانِ رِزْقٌ تَطْلُبُهُ وَرِزْقٌ يَطْلُبُكَ
 فَإِنْ لَمْ تَأْتِهِ أَتَاكَ * سِرُّكَ أَسِيرُكَ فَإِذَا تَكَلَّمْتَ بِهِ
 صِرْتَ أَسِيرَهُ * الْكَلَامُ كَالدَّوَاءِ إِنْ أَقَلَّتْ مِنْهُ نَفَعُ
 وَإِنْ أَكْثَرَتْ مِنْهُ قَتَلَ * نَظَرَ الْإِسْكَندَرُ إِلَى شَيْخٍ

خَضِيبٍ فَقَالَ لَهُ إِنَّ كُنْتَ خَضَبْتَ الشَّيْبَ فَكَيْفَ
 تَصْنَعُ أَثَارَ الْكِبَرِ * لِلْمُسْلِمِ عَلَى أَخِيهِ الْمُسْلِمِ مِنَ
 الْمَعْرُوفِ سِتٌّ يُسَلِّمُ عَلَيْهِ إِذَا لَقِيَهُ وَيَنْصَحُ لَهُ
 إِذَا غَابَ عَنْهُ وَيَعُودُهُ إِذَا مَرَضَ وَيُشَيِّعُ جِنَازَتَهُ
 إِذَا مَاتَ وَجُيِبُهُ إِذَا دَعَاهُ وَيُشَيِّتُهُ إِذَا عَطَسَ *
 قَالَ الرَّسُولُ إِذَا أَكَلَ أَحَدُكُمْ فَلْيَأْكُلْ بِيَمِينِهِ وَإِذَا
 شَرِبَ فَلْيَشْرَبْ بِيَمِينِهِ فَإِنَّ الشَّيْطَانَ يَأْكُلُ بِشِمَالِهِ
 وَيَشْرَبُ بِشِمَالِهِ * لِكُلِّ مَقَامٍ مَقَالٌ وَخَيْرُ الْقَوْلِ
 مَا وَافَقَ الْحَالَ * قَالَ النَّبِيُّ إِذَا قُمْتُمْ إِلَى الصَّلَاةِ
 فَاغْسِلُوا وُجُوهَكُمْ وَأَيْدِيَكُمْ إِلَى الْمَرَائِقِ وَامْسَحُوا
 بِرُءُوسِكُمْ وَأَرْجُلَكُمْ إِلَى الْكَعْبَيْنِ * الْكَلِمَةُ إِذَا
 خَرَجَتْ مِنَ الْقَلْبِ وَقَعَتْ فِي الْقَلْبِ وَإِذَا خَرَجَتْ
 مِنَ اللِّسَانِ لَمْ تُجَاوِزِ الْآذَانَ * مَنْ قَتَلَ نَفْسًا
 بِغَيْرِ نَفْسٍ أَوْ فَسَادٍ فِي الْأَرْضِ فَكَأَنَّمَا قَتَلَ النَّاسَ
 جَمِيعًا * إِذَا دَخَلَ أَحَدُكُمُ الْمَسْجِدَ فَلْيَقُلْ اللَّهُمَّ
 افْتَحْ لِي أَبْوَابَ رَحْمَتِكَ وَإِذَا خَرَجَ فَلْيَقُلْ اللَّهُمَّ
 إِنِّي أَسْأَلُكَ فَضْلَكَ * إِذَا دَخَلَ رَمَضَانُ فَتَحَتْ

أَبْوَابُ السَّمَاءِ وَغُلِقَتْ أَبْوَابُ جَهَنَّمَ وَسُلِسِلَتْ
 الشَّيَاطِينُ * تَبَاعَدُوا فِي الدَّارِ تَقَارَبُوا فِي الْمَوَدَّةِ *
 اِرْحَمُوا تُرْحَمُوا وَآغْفِرُوا يُغْفَرَ لَكُمْ *
 إِذَا قَرَّبَكَ السُّلْطَانُ فَكُنْ مِنْهُ عَلَى حَذَرٍ وَآخِذٍ
 أَنْقِلاَبُهُ عَلَيْكَ وَكَلِمُهُ بِمَا يَشْتَهِي وَلَا يَحْمِلَنَّكَ لُطْفُهُ
 بِكَ عَلَى أَنْ تَدْخُلَ بَيْنَهُ وَبَيْنَ أَهْلِهِ وَحَشِيهِ *
 مَثَلُ الْمُسْلِمِينَ فِي تَرَاحِيهِمْ وَتَوَادِدِهِمْ وَتَوَاصُلِهِمْ كَمَثَلِ
 الْجَسَدِ إِذَا اشْتَكَى عَضْوٌ مِنْهُ تَدَاعَى لَهُ سَائِرُ الْجَسَدِ
 بِالْحَمَى وَالسَّهَرِ * إِنَّ اللَّهَ خَلَقَ الْجَنَّةَ لِمَنْ أَطَاعَهُ
 وَلَوْ كَانَ عَبْدًا حَبِشِيًّا وَخَلَقَ النَّارَ لِمَنْ عَصَاهُ وَلَوْ
 كَانَ حُرًّا قُرَشِيًّا * قَالَ النَّبِيُّ لَا تَرْفَعُونِي فَوْقَ قَدْرِي
 فَتَقُولُوا فِي مَا قَالَتِ النَّصَارَى فِي الْمَسِيحِ فَإِنَّ اللَّهَ
 عَزَّ وَجَلَّ أَخَذَنِي عَبْدًا قَبْلَ أَنْ يَتَّخِذَنِي رَسُولًا *
 قِيلَ لِرَجُلٍ بِمِ سَادَتِكُمْ الْأَحْنَفُ فَوَاللَّهِ مَا كَانَ بِأَكْبَرِكُمْ
 سِنًا وَلَا بِأَكْثَرِكُمْ مَالًا فَقَالَ بِقُوَّةِ سُلْطَانِهِ عَلَى
 لِسَانِهِ * لَا يَقُولَنَّ أَحَدُكُمْ عَبْدِي وَأَمَتِي كُلُّكُمْ
 عِبِيدُ اللَّهِ وَكُلُّ نِسَائِكُمْ إِمَاءُ اللَّهِ وَلَكِنْ لِيَقْدُ

غَلَامِي وَجَارِيَّتِي وَفَتَايَ وَفَتَاتِي * مَنِ حَسَنَ
 خُلُقُهُ طَابَتْ عَيْشَتُهُ وَدَامَتْ سَلَامَتُهُ وَتَأَكَّدَتْ فِي
 النَّفُوسِ مَحَبَّتُهُ وَمَنِ سَاءَ خُلُقُهُ تَنَكَّدَتْ عَيْشَتُهُ
 وَدَامَتْ بَغْضَتُهُ وَفَرَّتِ النَّفُوسُ مِنْهُ * لَمَّا فَرَعَ نُوحٌ
 مِنْ بَنَاءِ السَّفِينَةِ دَعَا النَّاسَ إِلَى الرُّكُوبِ فِيهَا
 وَأَعْلَمَهُمْ أَنَّ اللَّهَ بَاعِثُ الطُّوفَانِ عَلَى الْأَرْضِ
 كُلِّهَا حَتَّى يُطَهِّرَهَا مِنْ أَهْلِ الْمَعَاصِي فَلَمْ يُجِبْهُ
 أَحَدٌ مِنْهُمْ * قِيلَ لِعَلِيٍّ بْنِ أَبِي طَالِبٍ عَلَيْهِ
 السَّلَامُ كَمْ بَيْنَ الْمَشْرِقِ وَالْمَغْرِبِ قَالَ مَسِيرَةُ يَوْمٍ
 لِلشَّمْسِ قِيلَ لَهُ كَمْ بَيْنَ السَّمَاءِ وَالْأَرْضِ قَالَ
 مَسِيرَةُ سَاعَةٍ لِدَعْوَةِ مُسْتَجَابَةٍ * قِيلَ لِبَعْضِ
 الْكُرَمَاءِ كَيْفَ اكْتَسَبْتَ مَكَارِمَ الْأَخْلَاقِ وَالتَّوَادُّعَ
 مَعَ الْأَضْيَافِ فَقَالَ كَانَتْ الْأَسْفَارُ تُخَوِّجُنِي إِلَى أَنْ
 أَفِدَ عَلَى النَّاسِ فَمَا اسْتَحْسَنْتُ مِنْ أَخْلَاقِهِمْ اتَّبَعْتُهُ
 وَمَا اسْتَقْبَحْتُهُ اجْتَنَبْتُهُ * حَضَرَ أَعْرَابِيٌّ عَلَى مَائِدَةٍ
 بَعْضُ الْخُلَفَاءِ فَقَدِمَ جَدِيٌّ مَشْوًى فَجَعَلَ الْأَعْرَابِيُّ
 يُسْرِعُ فِي أَكْلِهِ مِنْهُ فَقَالَ لَهُ الْخَلِيفَةُ تَأْكُلُهُ بِحَرْدٍ

كَأَنَّ أُمَّهُ نَطَحَتْكَ فَقَالَ أَرَأَيْكَ تُشْفِقُ عَلَيْهِ كَانَ أُمُّهُ
أَرْضَعَتْكَ *

كَانَ مِنْ سُنَنِ الْعَرَبِ نِكَاحُ الْمَقْتِ وَهُوَ أَنَّ
الرَّجُلَ إِذَا مَاتَ قَامَ وَلَدُهُ الْأَكْبَرُ فَأَلْقَى ثَوْبَهُ عَلَى
أَمْرَأَةٍ أَبِيهِ فَوَرِثَ نِكَاحَهَا فَإِنْ لَمْ يَكُنْ لَهُ بِهَا
حَاجَةٌ زَوَّجَهَا لِبَعْضِ إِخْوَتِهِ بِمَهْرٍ جَدِيدٍ فَكَانُوا
يَرِثُونَ أَلِالنِّكَاحِ كَمَا يَرِثُونَ أَلْمَالِ * كَانَ عَبْدُ اللَّهِ
أَبْنُ مَرْزُوقٍ مِنْ نَدَمَاءِ الْمَهْدِيِّ فَسَكِرَ يَوْمًا فَفَاتَتْهُ
الْصَّلَاةُ فَجَاءَتْهُ جَارِيَةٌ لَهُ بِجِمْرَةٍ فَوَضَعَتْهَا عَلَى رِجْلِهِ
فَأَنْتَبَهَ مَذْغُورًا فَقَالَتْ لَهُ إِذَا لَمْ تَصْبِرْ عَلَى نَارِ
الدُّنْيَا فَكَيْفَ تَصْبِرْ عَلَى نَارِ الْآخِرَةِ * دَخَلَ عَامِلٌ
لِعُمَرَ بْنِ الْخَطَّابِ رَضِيَ اللَّهُ عَنْهُ فَوَجَدَهُ مُسْتَلْقِيًا
عَلَى ظَهْرِهِ وَصَبِيَانُهُ يَلْعَبُونَ عَلَى بَطْنِهِ فَأَنْكَرَ ذَلِكَ
عَلَيْهِ فَقَالَ لَهُ عُمَرُ كَيْفَ أَنْتَ مَعَ أَهْلِكَ قَالَ إِذَا
دَخَلْتُ سَكَتَ النَّاطِقُ فَقَالَ لَهُ أَعْتَرِلَ فَإِنَّكَ لَا
تُرْفِقُ بِأَهْلِكَ وَوَلَدِكَ فَكَيْفَ تُرْفِقُ بِأُمِّهِ مُحَمَّدٍ صَلَّى
اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمَ *

قَالَ بَعْضُ أَلْبُلُوكِ لِبَعْضٍ وُزَرَائِي وَأَرَادَ حِثَّتَهُ مَا
 خَيْرُ مَا يُزَرِّقُهُ أَلْعَبْدُ قَالَ عَقْلٌ يَعْيشُ بِهِ قَالَ فَإِنْ
 عَدِمَهُ قَالَ فَادَّبَ يَتَحَكَّى بِهِ قَالَ فَإِنْ عَدِمَهُ قَالَ
 فَمَا لِي يَسْتُرُهُ قَالَ فَإِنْ عَدِمَهُ قَالَ فَصَاعِقَةٌ تُحْرِقُهُ
 فَتُرِيحُ مِنْهُ أَلْعِبَادَ وَأَلْبِلَادَ *

نَزَلَ رَجُلٌ بِصَوْمَعَةِ رَاهِبٍ فَقَدَّمَ إِلَيْهِ الرَّاهِبُ أَرْبَعَةَ
 أَرْغِفَةٍ وَذَهَبَ لِيُخْفِرَ إِلَيْهِ أَلْعَدَسَ فَحَمَلَهُ وَجَاءَ
 فَوَجَدَهُ قَدْ أَكَلَ الْخُبْزَ فَذَهَبَ فَاتَى بِخُبْزٍ فَوَجَدَهُ قَدْ
 أَكَلَ أَلْعَدَسَ فَفَعَلَ مَعَهُ ذَلِكَ عَشْرَ مَرَّاتٍ فَسَأَلَهُ
 أَلْرَاهِبُ ابْنَ مَقْصِدِهِ قَالَ إِلَى الْأُرْدُنِّ قَالَ لِمَاذَا قَالَ
 بَلَّغْنِي أَنَّ بِهَا طَبِيبًا حَازِقًا أَسَأَلُهُ عَمَّا يُصْلِحُ
 مَعِدَتِي فَإِنِّي قَلِيلُ الشَّهْوَةِ لِلطَّعَامِ فَقَالَ لَهُ الرَّاهِبُ
 إِنَّ لِي إِلَيْكَ حَاجَةً قَالَ وَمَا هِيَ قَالَ إِذَا ذَهَبْتَ
 وَأَصْلَحَتْ مَعِدَتُكَ فَلَا تَجْعَلَ رُجُوعَكَ عَلَيَّ *

II. †

ARABIC PROSE EXTRACTS.

رَعَمُوا أَنَّ مَلِكًا يُقَالُ لَهُ الْهَدَهَادُ خَرَجَ لِلصَّيْدِ
 فِي جَمَاعَةٍ مِنْ خَدَمِهِ وَخَاصَّتِهِ فَرَأَى غَزَالًا يَطْرُدُهُ
 ذَنْبٌ وَقَدْ أَضَاقَهُ إِلَى ضَيْقٍ لَيْسَ لِلْغَزَالِ مِنْهُ مَخْلَصٌ
 فَحَمَلَ الْهَدَهَادُ عَلَى الذَّنْبِ حَتَّى طَرَدَهُ عَنِ الْغَزَالِ
 وَخَلَصَ الْغَزَالُ مِنْهُ فَسَارَ فِي أَثَرِ الْغَزَالِ وَانْقَطَعَ عَنْهُ
 أَصْحَابُهُ فَبَيَّنَا هُوَ كَذَلِكَ إِذْ ظَهَرَتْ لَهُ مَدِينَةٌ عَظِيمَةٌ
 فِيهَا مِنْ كُلِّ شَيْءٍ مِنَ الشَّاءِ وَالنَّعِيمِ وَالتَّخْلِ
 وَالزَّرْعِ وَأَنْوَاعِ الْفَوَاكِهِ فَوَقَفَ دُونَهَا مُتَحَبِّبًا مِمَّا
 ظَهَرَ لَهُ إِذْ أَقْبَلَ رَجُلٌ مِنْ أَهْلِ تِلْكَ الْمَدِينَةِ الَّتِي
 ظَهَرَتْ لَهُ فَسَلَّمَ وَرَحَّبَ بِهِ ثُمَّ قَالَ لَهُ أَيُّهَا الْمَلِكُ
 إِنِّي أَرَاكَ مُتَحَبِّبًا مِمَّا ظَهَرَ لَكَ فِي يَوْمِكَ هَذَا فَقَالَ
 لَهُ الْهَدَهَادُ إِنِّي لَكَمَا قُلْتُ فَمَا هَذِهِ الْمَدِينَةُ وَمَنْ
 سَاكِنُهَا فَقَالَ هَذِهِ مَدِينَةُ مَارِبَ وَسَاكِنُهَا حَتَّى مِنْ
 آلِجَنٍّ وَأَنَا مَلِكُهُمْ وَصَاحِبُ أَمْرِهِمْ فَهُوَ مَعَهُ فِي هَذَا
 الْكَلَامِ إِذْ مَرَّتْ بِهِمَا امْرَأَةٌ لَمْ يَرَ الْبَرَادِينَ أَحْسَنَ

مِنْهَا وَجْهًا وَلَا أَكْمَلَ مِنْهَا خَلْقًا وَلَا أَظْهَرَ مِنْهَا
 ١ صَبَاحَةً وَلَا أَطْيَبَ رَائِحَةً فَانْتَنَنَ بِهَا الْهَدَّهَادُ وَعَلِمَ
 ٢ مَلِكُ الْجِنِّ أَنَّهُ قَدْ هَوِيَ بِهَا وَشَغِفَ بِهَا فَقَالَ إِنْ كُنْتُ
 ٣ قَدْ هَوَيْتَهَا فَهِيَ ابْنَتِي فَأَنَا أَرْوَجُكَهَا فَبَارَاهُ الْهَدَّهَادُ
 ٤ خَيْرًا فَقَالَ لَهُ الْجِنِّي هَلْ عَرَفْتَهَا قَالَ الْهَدَّهَادُ مَا
 ٥ رَأَيْتَهَا قَبْلَ يَوْمِي هَذَا قَالَ الْجِنِّي هِيَ الْغُرَالُ الَّتِي
 ٦ حَلَّصْتَهَا مِنَ الدِّبِّ وَلَا نُكَافِئُكَ عَلَى جَبِيلٍ فِعْلِكَ
 ٧ أَبَدًا بِأَحْسَنَ مِنْ أَنْ تَحْبُوكَ بِهَا فَتَأْهَبَ لِدُخُولِكَ
 ٨ عَلَيْهَا فَإِنِّي قَدْ زَوَّجْتُكَهَا بِشَهَادَةِ اللَّهِ تَعَالَى وَشَهَادَةِ
 ٩ مَلَائِكَتِهِ فَإِذَا أَرَدْتَ ذَلِكَ فَأَقْدِمْ إِلَيْنَا بِخَاصَّةٍ أَهْلِ
 ١٠ بَيْتِكَ وَمُلُوكِ قَوْمِكَ لِيَشْهَدُوا مَلَائِكَةً وَيَحْضُرُوا وَلِيَبْتَنَّا
 ١١ وَمِيْعَادَكَ الشَّهْرَ الدَّاخِلُ فَاَنْصَرَفَ الْهَدَّهَادُ عَلَى
 ١٢ الْبَيْعَةِ وَغَابَتِ الْمَدِينَةُ عَنْهُ فَإِذَا أَصْحَابُهُ حَوْلَهُ
 ١٣ يَدُورُونَ لَهُ فَقَالُوا أَيْنَ كُنْتَ فَتَحْنُ فِي طَلَبِكَ مِنْذُ
 ١٤ فَارَقْتَنَا وَلَمْ تَتْرِكْ شَيْئًا مِنْ هَذِهِ الْفُلُواتِ إِلَّا طَلَبْنَاكَ
 ١٥ فِيهِ فَرَعَمُوا أَنَّ الْهَدَّهَادَ خَرَجَ عَلَى الْبَيْعَةِ إِلَى
 ١٦ أَصْهَارِهِ مِنَ الْجِنِّ فِي خَاصَّةٍ قَوْمِهِ وَخَدَمِهِ حَتَّى وَافَقُوا

فَوَجَدُوا قَصْرًا بَنَاهُ لَهُ الْجِنُّ فِي فَلَاةٍ مِنَ الْأَرْضِ مَحْفُوفًا
 بِالنَّخْلِ وَالْأَعْنَابِ وَالْوَلَوِي الزَّرْعِ وَأَنْوَاعِ الْفَوَاكِحِ تَخْتَرِقُ
 فِيهَا آلِيَابَهُ الْجَارِيَةُ فَتَجَبَّبَ الْقَوْمُ مِنْ ذَلِكَ تَجَبُّبًا
 شَدِيدًا وَرَأَوْا مَلَكًا عَظِيمًا فَنَزَلُوا فِي الْقَصْرِ مَعَهُ عَلَى
 فُرُشٍ لَمْ يَرَوْا مِثْلَهَا وَقَرَّبَتْ لَهُمْ مَوَائِدَ عَلَيْهَا مِنْ
 طَيِّبَاتِ الْمَأْكُولِ وَالْوَانِيَا أَلْتَمَى لَمْ يَأْكُلُوا قَطُّ أَطِيبَ
 مِنْهَا طَعَامًا وَلَا أَرْكَى مِنْهَا رَائِحَةً وَشَرَبُوا مِنَ الشَّرَابِ
 مَا لَمْ يَشْرَبُوا قَطُّ أَلَدَّ وَلَا أَحَفَّ مِنْهُ فَمَكثُوا مَعَهُ
 ثَلَاثَةَ أَيَّامٍ (بَلِيَالِيهَا فِي ذَلِكَ) وَزَنَتْ إِلَى الْهَدَاهِدِ
 أَمْرَاتُهُ بِنْتُ مَلِكِ الْجِنِّ وَأَذِنَ الْهَدَاهِدُ لِبَنِي عَمِيهِ
 وَخَاصَّتِهِ وَعَشِيرَتِهِ بِالْإِنْصِرَافِ إِلَى مَوَاضِعِهِمْ وَصَارَ
 ذَلِكَ الْقَصْرُ دَارَ مَمْلَكَتِهِ فَرَعَمُوا أَنَّهُ مَكَثَ زَمَانًا مَعَ
 أَمْرَاتِهِ وَأَوْلَدَهَا بِلْقِيسَ *

أَجْمَعَتْ قُرَيْشٌ عَلَى قَتْلِ رَسُولِ اللَّهِ وَقَالُوا لَيْسَ
 لَهُ الْيَوْمَ أَحَدٌ يَنْصُرُهُ وَقَدْ مَاتَ أَبُو طَالِبٍ فَاجْتَمَعُوا
 جَمِيعًا أَنْ يَأْتُوا مِنْ كُلِّ قَبِيلَةٍ بَعْلَامٍ تَهْدِي فَيَجْتَمِعُوا
 عَلَيْهِ فَيَضْرِبُوهُ بِأَسْيَافِهِمْ ضَرْبَةً رَجُلٍ وَاحِدٍ فَلَا يَكُونُ

لَبِنَى هَاشِمٍ قُوَّةً بِمَعَادَاةِ جَمِيعِ قُرَيْشٍ فَبَلَغَ رَسُولُ اللَّهِ
ذَلِكَ وَلَمَّا اخْتَلَطَ الظَّلَامُ خَرَجَ وَمَعَهُ أَبُو بَكْرٍ وَخَلَفَ
عَلِيًّا عَلَى فِرَاشِهِ لِرَدِّ الْوَدَائِعِ الَّتِي كَانَتْ عِنْدَهُ وَصَارَ
إِلَى الْغَارِ الَّذِي كَانَ يَتَكَنَّتُ فِيهِ قَبْلَ النُّبُوَّةِ فَكَمِنَ
فِيهِ وَآتَتْ قُرَيْشٌ فِرَاشَهُ فَوَجَدُوا عَلِيًّا فَقَالُوا أَيْنَ ابْنُ
عَمِّكَ قَالَ قُلْتُمْ لَهُ أَخْرُجْ عَنَّا فَخَرَجَ عَنْكُمْ فَطَلَبُوا
الْآثَرَ فَلَمْ يَقْعُوا عَلَيْهِ وَأَعْمَى اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِمُ الْمَوَاضِعَ
فَوَقَفُوا عَلَى بَابِ الْغَارِ وَقَدْ عَشَّشَتْ عَلَيْهِ حَمَامَةٌ
فَقَالُوا مَا فِي هَذَا الْغَارِ أَحَدٌ وَأَنْصَرَفُوا فَخَرَجَ رَسُولُ
اللَّهِ مُتَوَجِّهًا إِلَى الْمَدِينَةِ فَعَلِمَتْ قُرَيْشٌ أَنَّهُ قَدْ مَضَى
إِلَى يَثْرِبَ وَاتَّبَعَهُ سُرَاقَةٌ فَلَمَّا لَحِقَهُ قَالَ رَسُولُ اللَّهِ
اللَّهُمَّ اكْفِنَا سُرَاقَةَ فَسَاخَتْ قَوَائِمُ فَرَسِهِ فَصَاحَ يَابَنَ
أَبِي تَحَكَّافَةَ قُلْ لِصَاحِبِكَ أَنْ يَدْعُو اللَّهَ بِإِطْلَاقِ
فَرَسِي فَلَعَبَرَنِي لَيْثُنٌ لَمْ يُصِبْهُ مِنِّي خَيْرٌ فَلَا يُصِبْهُ
مِنِّي شَرٌّ فَلَمَّا رَجَعَ إِلَى مَكَّةَ خَبَرَهُمُ الْخَبَرَ فَكَدَّبُوهُ * |
حُكِيَ عَنِ الرَّبِيعِ حَاجِبِ الْخَلِيفَةِ الْمَنْصُورِ قَالَ
مَا رَأَيْتُ رَجُلًا أَرْبَطَ جَأْشًا وَأَثَبَتْ جَنَانًا مِنْ رَجُلٍ

سُعَى بِهِ إِلَى الْمَنْصُورِ أَنَّ عِنْدَهُ وَدَائِعَ وَأَمْوَالًا لِبَنِي
أُمَيَّةَ فَأَمَرَنِي بِإِحْصَارِهِ فَأَحْضَرْتُهُ إِلَيْهِ فَقَالَ لَهُ الْمَنْصُورُ
قَدْ رُفِعَ إِلَيْنَا خَبَرُ الْوَدَائِعِ وَالْأَمْوَالِ الَّتِي عِنْدَكَ لِبَنِي
أُمَيَّةَ فَأَخْرِجْهَا لَنَا وَلَا تَكْتُمْ مِنْهَا شَيْئًا فَقَالَ يَا أَمِيرَ
الْمُؤْمِنِينَ أَنْتَ وَارِثُ لِبْنِي أُمَيَّةَ قَالَ لَا قَالَ فَرُصِي
لَهُمْ فِي أَمْوَالِهِمْ وَرَبَاعِهِمْ قَالُوا لَا قَالَ فَمَا مَسْأَلَتُكَ
عَمَّا فِي يَدَيَّ مِنْ ذَلِكَ (قَالَ) فَاطْرَقَ الْمَنْصُورُ وَتَفَكَّرَ
سَاعَةً ثُمَّ رَفَعَ رَأْسَهُ وَقَالَ إِنَّ بَنِي أُمَيَّةَ ظَلَمُوا الْمُسْلِمِينَ
فِيهَا وَأَنَا وَكِيلُ الْمُسْلِمِينَ فِي حُقُوقِهِمْ وَأُرِيدُ أَنْ أَخَذَ
مَا ظَلَمُوا الْمُسْلِمِينَ فِيهِ فَأَجْعَلُهُ فِي بَيْتِ أَمْوَالِهِمْ
فَقَالَ يَا أَمِيرَ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ فَكَيْفَ نَحْنُ إِلَى إِقَامَةِ بَيْنَةٍ عَادِلَةٍ
أَنْ مَا فِي يَدَيَّ لِبْنِي أُمَيَّةَ هُوَ الَّذِي غَضَبُوهُ مِنَ النَّاسِ
فَإِنَّ بَنِي أُمَيَّةَ قَدْ كَانَتْ لَهُمْ أَمْوَالٌ غَيْرُ أَمْوَالِ
الْمُسْلِمِينَ (قَالَ) فَاطْرَقَ الْمَنْصُورُ سَاعَةً ثُمَّ رَفَعَ رَأْسَهُ
وَقَالَ يَا رَبِيعُ مَا أَرَى الشَّيْخَ إِلَّا قَدْ صَدَقَ وَمَا
يَجِبُ عَلَيْهِ شَيْءٌ وَمَا يَسْغَنَا إِلَّا أَنْ نَعْفُو عَمَّا قِيلَ
عَنْهُ ثُمَّ قَالَ هَلْ لَكَ مِنْ حَاجَةٍ قَالَ نَعَمْ حَاجَتِي يَا

المفرد
نصفه

١٢

أَمِيرَ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ أَنْ تَجْمَعَ بَيْنِي وَبَيْنَ مَنْ سَعَى فِي
 إِثْمِكَ، فَوَاللَّهِ، الَّذِي لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا هُوَ، مَا فِي يَدَيَّ لِبْنِي
 أُمِّيَّةً مَالٌ وَلَا وَدِيعَةً، فَقَالَ الْخَلِيفَةُ يَا رَبِّيعُ أَجْمَعْ
 بَيْنَهُ وَبَيْنَ مَنْ سَعَى بِهِ، فَجَمَعْتُ بَيْنَهُمَا، فَلَمَّا رَأَتْ
 قَالَتْ هَذَا غُلَامِي أَخْتَلَسَ لِي ثَلَاثَةَ آلَافٍ دِينَارٍ مِنْ
 مَالِي، وَأَتَّقَى مِنِّي وَخَافَ مِنْ طَلَبِي لَهُ فَسَعَى بِي عِنْدَ
 أَمِيرِ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ (قَالَ) فَشَدَّدَ الْمَنْصُورُ عَلَى الْغُلَامِ وَخَوَّفَهُ
 فَأَثَرُ بَأْسِهِ غُلَامُهُ وَأَنَّهُ أَخَذَ الْمَالَ الَّذِي ذَكَرَهُ وَسَعَى
 بِهِ كَذِبًا عَلَيْهِ، وَخَوْفًا مِنْ أَنْ يَقَعَ فِي يَدِهِ، فَقَالَ لَهُ
 الْمَنْصُورُ سَأَلْتُكَ أَيُّهَا الشَّيْخُ أَنْ تَعْفُو عَنْهُ فَقَالَ قَدْ
 عَفَوْتُ عَنْهُ وَأَعْتَقْتُهُ وَوَهَبْتُهُ ثَلَاثَةَ آلَافٍ أَلْتِي أَخَذَهَا
 وَثَلَاثَةَ آلَافٍ أُخْرَى أَدْفَعُهَا إِلَيْهِ فَقَالَ لَهُ الْمَنْصُورُ
 مَا عَلَى مَا فَعَلْتَ مِنْ مَرِيدٍ قَالَ بَلَى يَا أَمِيرَ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ
 إِنَّ هَذَا كُلُّهُ لَقَلِيلٌ فِي مُقَابَلَةِ كَلَامِكَ لِي وَعَفْوِكَ
 عَنِّي ثُمَّ أَنْصَرَفَ قَالَ الرَّبِيعُ فَكَانَ الْمَنْصُورُ يَتَعَجَّبُ
 مِنْهُ وَكَلَّمَا ذَكَرَهُ يَقُولُ مَا رَأَيْتُ مِثْلَ هَذَا الشَّيْخِ
 يَا رَبِّيعُ *



رَوَى أَنَّ الإسْكَندَرَ وَهُوَ الَّذِي يُقَالُ لَهُ ذُو
 الْقَرْنَيْنِ مَلَكَ بَعْدَ أَبِيهِ وَكَانَ مُعَلِّمُهُ أَرْسَطَاطَالِسُ
 الْحَكِيمِ فَجَلَّ قَدْرُ الإسْكَندَرَ وَعَظُمَ مُلْكُهُ وَاشْتَدَّ
 سُلْطَانُهُ وَأَعَاتَتْهُ الْحِكْمَةُ وَالْعَقْلُ وَالْمَعْرِفَةُ وَكَانَ مَعَهُ
 نَجْدَةٌ وَبِأْسٌ وَهَيْمَةٌ عَالِيَةٌ دَعَتْهُ إِلَى أَنْ كَتَبَ إِلَى
 مُلُوكِ الْأَقَالِيمِ وَالْأَفَاقِ يَدْعُوهُمْ إِلَى طَاعَتِهِ وَمَنْ
 كَانَ قَبْلَهُ مِنْ مُلُوكِ الْيُونَانِيِّينَ يُودَى إِلَى مُلُوكِ
 أَرْضِ بَابِلَ مِنَ الْفَرَسِ خُرْجًا لِحِلَالَةٍ ذَلِكَ أَلْمَلِكَةُ
 وَعَظُمَ قَدْرُهَا وَصَغُرَ الْمَمَالِكُ فِي جَنْبِهَا فَلَمَّا كَتَبَ
 إِلَى مَلِكِ فَارِسَ يَدْعُوهُ إِلَى طَاعَتِهِ عَظُمَ عَلَيْهِ فَسَارَ
 الإسْكَندَرُ حَتَّى أَتَى أَرْضَ بَابِلَ وَمَلِكُ الْفَرَسِ يَوْمَئِذٍ
 دَارًا فِحَارَبَهُ حَتَّى قَتَلَهُ وَحَوَى خَزَائِنَ مُلْكِهِ وَتَزَوَّجَ
 ابْنَتَهُ. ثُمَّ صَارَ إِلَى أَرْضِ فَارِسَ وَقَتَلَ مَنْ فِيهَا مِنْ
 الْمَرَابِطَةِ وَالرُّوْسَاءِ وَأَفْتَتَحَ أَلْبِلَادَ ثُمَّ صَارَ إِلَى أَرْضِ
 الْهِنْدِ فَزَحَفَ إِلَيْهِ مَلِكُ الْهِنْدِ فِحَارَبَهُ حَتَّى قَتَلَهُ
 ثُمَّ صَيَّرَ الإسْكَندَرُ عَلَى الْهِنْدِ مَلِكًا مِنْ قِبَلِهِ مِنْ
 أَهْلِ الْهِنْدِ. ثُمَّ رَجَعَ إِلَى أَرْضِ بَابِلَ بَعْدَ أَنْ دَوَّخَ

الْأَرْضَ، فَلَمَّا صَارَ فِي آدَانِي الْعِرَاقِ مِمَّا يَلِي الْجَزِيرَةَ
 أَعْتَدْتُ فَأَشْتَدَّتْ عَلَيَّ فَلَمَّا يَتَسَّ مِنْ نَفْسِهِ وَعَلِمَ
 أَنَّ الْمَوْتَ قَدْ نَزَلَ بِهِ كَتَبَ إِلَى أُمِّهِ كِتَابًا يُعَزِّبُهَا
 عَنْ نَفْسِهِ وَقَالَ لَهَا فِي آخِرِهِ أَصْنَعِي طَعَامًا وَاجْمَعِي
 مَنْ قَدَرْتُ عَلَيْهِ مِنْ نِسَاءِ الْمَمْلَكَةِ وَلَا يَأْكُلُ مِنْ
 طَعَامِي مَنْ أَصِيبَ بِمُصِيبَةٍ قَطُّ فَعَلِمْتُ طَعَامًا
 وَجَمَعْتُ النَّاسَ ثُمَّ أَمَرْتُهُمْ إِلَّا يَأْكُلُ مَنْ أَصِيبَ
 بِمُصِيبَةٍ قَطُّ فَلَمْ يَأْكُلْ أَحَدٌ فَعَلِمْتُ مَا أَرَادَ وَمَاتَ
 الْأِسْكَندَرُ فِي مَوْضِعِهِ الَّذِي كَاتَبَ مِنْهُ فَاجْتَمَعَ أَهْلُكَ
 فَكَفَنُوهُ وَحَنَطُوهُ وَصَيَّرُوهُ فِي تَابُوتٍ مِنْ ذَهَبٍ ثُمَّ وَقَفَ
 عَلَيْهِ عَظِيمٌ مِنَ الْفَلَاسِفَةِ فَقَالَ | هَذَا يَوْمٌ عَظِيمٌ |
 (أَقْبَلَ مِنْ شَرِّهِ مَا كَانَ مُدِيرًا وَأَدْبَرَ مِنْ خَيْرِهِ مَا
 كَانَ مُقْبِلًا ثُمَّ أَقْبَلَ عَلَى مَنْ حَضَرَهُ مِنَ الْفَلَاسِفَةِ
 فَقَالَ يَا مَعْشَرَ الْحُكَمَاءِ لِيَقُلْ كُلُّ أَمْرٍ مِنْكُمْ قَوْلًا
 يَكُونُ لِلْخَاصَةِ مُعْزِيًا وَلِلْعَامَةِ ^{مَنْفَعَةً} وَإِعْظَا فَنَامَ كُلُّ وَاحِدٍ
 مِنْ تَلَامِيذِهِ أَرْسَطَاطَالِيَسَ فَضَرَبَ ^{بِيَدِهِ} عَلَى التَّابُوتِ
 ثُمَّ قَالَ أَيُّهَا الْمَلْطِيقُ | مَا أَخْرَسَكَ أَيُّهَا الْعَرَبِيُّ

(day) light upon
 [house] place
 the
 56* hunt (ed) net
 EXERCISES AND TEXTS.
 fall how hunt
 مَا أَذَلِكَ أَيُّهَا الْقَائِضُ أَنِّي رَفَعْتُ مَوْضِعَ الصَّيْدِ فِي شَرْكِ
 الَّذِي يَقْنِصُكَ. ثُمَّ قَامَ آخَرُ فَقَالَ هَذَا الْقَوِيُّ الَّذِي
 أَصْبَحَ الْيَوْمَ ضَعِيفًا وَالْعَزِيزُ الَّذِي أَصْبَحَ الْيَوْمَ ذَلِيلًا.
 وَقَامَ آخَرُ فَقَالَ قَدْ كَانَتْ سَيْوْفُكَ لَا تَخْجِفُ وَنَقِمَاتُكَ
 لَا تَوْمَنُ وَكَانَتْ مَدَائِنُكَ لَا تَرَامُ وَكَانَتْ عَطَايَاكَ لَا عَطِيَّةٌ
 تَبْرَحُ وَكَانَ ضِيَاؤُكَ لَا يَكْشِفُ فَأَصْبَحَ ضَوْؤُكَ قَدْ
 خَمَدَ وَنَقِمَاتُكَ لَا تَخْشَى وَأَصْبَحَتْ عَطَايَاكَ لَا تَرْجَى
 وَأَصْبَحَتْ سَيْوْفُكَ لَا تَنْتَضِي وَأَصْبَحَتْ مَدَائِنُكَ لَا تَمْنَعُ.
 وَقَامَ آخَرُ فَقَالَ قَدْ كَانَ صَوْتُكَ مَرْهُوبًا وَكَانَ مُلْكُكَ
 غَالِبًا فَأَصْبَحَ الصَّوْتُ قَدْ انْقَطَعَ وَالْمُلْكُ قَدْ انْقَضَ.
 وَقَامَ آخَرُ فَقَالَ حَرَكْنَا الْأَسْكَندَرُ بِسُكُونِهِ وَأَنْطَقْنَا
 بِصَوْتِهِ وَتَكَلَّمُوا بِهَذَا الْكَلَامِ. ثُمَّ أَطِيقَ التَّابُوتُ
 وَحَمِلَ إِلَى الْأَسْكَندَرِيَّةِ *

III.

TRANSLATION INTO ARABIC.

NOTE. The order of the words in the following sentences has been adapted, so far as possible, to that required by the Arabic translation. In addition, however, the student must bear especially in mind the difference of order (§§ 135, 139—142) which marks the cardinal distinction between verbal and nominal sentences (§ 139 note). The square brackets enclose words which in translation should be omitted, while those in curved brackets give the form of the sentence required by the Arabic idiom. — Past and perfect tenses are generally to be rendered by the Arabic perfect, present and future tenses by the Arabic imperf. The extensive use of the (generic) article in Arabic is to be noted. All nouns not in the construct state should have the (definite) article prefixed unless qualified in English by an indefinite article. — So far as lexical the footnotes to the exercises are only *supplementary* to the Glossary. It is, for example, only in special or exceptional cases that “oh” is to be rendered by  instead of by , and the notes draw attention to such cases. — The apology for violence done to the Queen’s English, in the interests of the learner, may be repeated from the first edition, from which the following is in the main reprinted.

A. Nominal Sentences.¹

1. The glory of the man [is] his sons, and the solicitude of the man [is] his dwelling and his neighbour.—2. The elegance of the man [lies] in his tongue, and the elegance of the woman in her understanding.—3. The liberal [man is] related to God.—4. The worst (of) repentance [is] at the day² of resurrection.—5. The love of the world [is] the beginning of every sin.—6. The promise of the king [is] a security.—7. The learned [men are] the heirs of the prophets.—8. Wisdom [is] for the character³ like medicine for the body.³—9. The world [is] the prison of the believer and the paradise of the unbeliever.—10. Contentment [is a part] of⁴ the nature³ of the domestic animals.—11. The malady of covetousness has no (not is⁵ for it a) cure; and the disease of ignorance has no (not is for it a) physician.—12. The nutriment of the body³ [is] (the) beverages and (the) viands, and the nutriment of the under-

¹ §§ 139 ff. ² § 113 a. ³ plur. ⁴ مِنْ ⁵ § 50.

standing [is] wisdom and learning.—13. Money has (to money [is]) a difficult entrance and an easy exit.—14. Verily¹ God [is] forgiving and² compassionate.—15. Verily ye³ [are] in a manifest error.—16. The nobles of⁴ Pharaoh's folk said⁵, "Verily this [is] surely⁶ a learned enchanter".—17. Verily in that⁷ [lies] surely an example for the unbelievers.—18. Flight in its [proper] time [is] better than endurance in its wrong time (in another than its [proper] time).—19. There is no (not⁸ [is there]) strength and no (not⁸) power except with⁹ God, the High and¹⁰ Mighty [One].—20. The best of gifts [is] understanding, and the worst of misfortunes [is] ignorance.—

B. The Strong Verb.

21. Jonah went out from the whale's belly.—22. Zaid killed Muhammed.—23. They gave¹⁵ (beat) Omar a violent beating¹¹.—24. The direction of prayer was shifted¹² from Jerusalem to Mecca.—25. God knoweth (knowing) what¹³ ye are doing.—26. Verily⁷ God provides for every one his sufficiency.—27. Learning and money [they] cover up¹⁴ every fault, and poverty

¹ § 147 a. ² § 149. ³ suffix. ⁴ مِّنْ. ⁵ perf. sing. § 136.
⁶ § 147 b. ⁷ § 147 a. ⁸ § 111. ⁹ ب. ¹⁰ § 122. ¹¹ § 109. ¹² § 136 b.
¹³ بِمَا, § 56 note a. ¹⁴ dual. § 136 d. ¹⁵ § 137 b.

were routed¹.—51. What is disliked in² the king [is] the being devoted to (the) pleasures, and the hearing of (the) songs and the spending of (the) time therewith (with that).—52. They said, “O our father! verily we³ “went away, running races⁴, and left Joseph with⁵ “our baggage; then the wolf ate him”.—53. Observe what [is] in the heart of thy brother by means of his eye, for⁶ the eye [is] the title-page of the heart!—54. In the fourth year from the birth of Muhammed the [two] angels⁷ cut open⁸ his belly and extracted⁹ his heart; then they cut it⁹ [his heart] open and extracted⁹ from it a black clot of blood; thereupon they washed⁹ his heart and his belly with snow.—55. They conversed¹⁰ about the case of the Apostle.—

56. Verily God hath (to God [are])¹¹ servants whom¹² he distinguishes (he distinguishes them) with his favours.—57. Restrain thyself from meat¹³ which¹⁴ causes thee to acquire an indigestion, and [from] an action which¹⁴ occasions thee regret¹⁵.—58. Thou hast fallen in love¹⁶ with a girl, a possessor of beauty¹⁵ and elegance¹⁵.—59. Muhammed said, “Help thy brother, “[whether he be] doing wrong¹⁷ or wronged¹⁷!” They

¹ fem. sing. ² ل. ³ § 96 d. ⁴ imperf. merely, § 157 b. ⁵ عِنْدَ with gen. ⁶ ف. ⁷ dual. ⁸ sing. § 136 a. ⁹ dual § 136 d. ¹⁰ § 137 a. ¹¹ § 147 a. ¹² without relative particle § 155. ¹³ indetermin. ¹⁴ without relative particle § 155. ¹⁵ indetermin. ¹⁶ § 98 e. ¹⁷ § 113 b.

asked, "O Apostle of God! how shall we help him, "[if he be] doing wrong¹?" He said, "By restraining "him from doing wrong!"—60. Do not turn away² a beggar!—61. A man (servant) does not believe, until he love for his neighbour (brother) what³ he loves for himself.—

C. The Weak Verb.

62. A poor [man] begged of me, so I gave him [two] pieces of money⁴.—63. Be mindful of death, for he⁵ takes hold of your forelocks; if⁶ ye fly from him, he overtakes you, and if⁶ ye stay, he seizes you.—64. Music [is] like the spirit and wine [is] like the body; then through their⁷ coming together is born joy.—65. The Apostle used to⁸ preach to his companions and to exhort them and to teach them the beauties of character⁹.—66. Verily¹⁰ our [true] friends will¹¹ entrust to us their secrets.—67. The lust¹² of the world entails care and sorrow, and abstinence with regard to it restores the heart and the body.—68. Moses said, "I have brought¹³ you an evidence from your "Lord; so let go¹⁴ along with me the Sons of Israel!"—69. Depend on the Living [one], who does not die!

¹ § 113 b. ² contracted § 36. ³ ما § 156 and note a. ⁴ dual.
⁵ pronoun with foll. part. ⁶ § 159. ⁷ dual-suffix. ⁸ see p. 61*
note 1. ⁹ pl. determ. ¹⁰ § 147 a. ¹¹ ما § 99 a. ¹² في. ¹³ § 98 e. ¹⁴ sing.

—70. He pleases me, who makes poetry to ¹ show his education, not to ¹ make gain, and applies himself to singing to ¹ enjoy himself, not to ¹ seek for himself [reward].

—71. Demand help of the good (people² of the good), and of those that act well (and of the acting well).—

72. Choose³ whichever of the pages thou wilt!—

73. Supplicate much (make much the supplicating), for thou⁴ dost not know when⁵ answer⁶ will be given thee!—74. Restrain your tongues and lower your glances and guard your continence!—

75. A (the) kingdom is made flourishing through justice and is protected by courage and is ruled through [good] government.—76. [Good] government [is], that⁷ the gate of the chief be guarded⁸ in the [proper] time of being guarded⁹, and opened in the [proper] time of being open⁹, and the gatekeeper friendly.—77. Jalâl-al-dîn used not to go to sleep¹⁰ except drunk¹¹, nor (and not) to arise in the morning except seedy and tipsy¹¹.—78. It is not seemly for the wise [man], that¹² he address the fool, like as it is not seemly for the sober [man], that he address the drunken [man].—79. People¹³ of the world [are] like folk in a ship, who¹⁴ are carried onwards

¹ inf. § 118 d. ² § 133. ³ fem. ⁴ § 96 d. ⁵ مَتَّبِعِي. ⁶ impf. pass. impers. ⁷ § 148 b. ⁸ كَانَ with part. § 110. ⁹ 61 c. ¹⁰ see p. 61* note 1. ¹¹ § 113 b. ¹² § 148 b. ¹³ § 133. ¹⁴ §§ 155, 156.

whilst they are sleeping¹.—80. The evil-doer [he] does not consider² mankind except [as] evil, because he³ sees them with⁴ the eye of his nature.—81. God elected Abraham [as] an [intimate] friend.⁷—82. Every affair in the world [is] transitory.—83. Wickedness [is] to be feared⁵, and no one (not) fears it except the intelligent [man]; and good [is] to be hoped for, and every one⁶ seeks it.—84. [To] a man (servant) shall not⁸ be given [anything] more ample than endurance.—85. I looked into Paradise, then I saw the most of its inhabitants [to be] the poor; and I looked into hell-fire, then I saw the most of its inhabitants [to be] (the) women.—86. He⁹ whose counsel is asked [is] one¹⁰ in whom one confides; and he¹⁰ who asks counsel [is] one¹⁰ who is to be aided.—87. Do not put off¹¹ the work of to-day till to-morrow¹².—88. Thou dost not¹³ find (see) in the creation of God any¹⁴ imperfection.—89. Little which¹⁰ continues [is] better than much which¹⁰ is interrupted.—90. Pharaoh said, “We will¹⁵ kill¹⁶ their sons and spare their women.”—91. A Bedouin looked at a gold-piece; then he said, “How small¹⁷ is thy size and how great¹⁷ thy value!”—

¹ § 157 a. ² § 139 d a. ³ suff. ⁴ ب. ⁵ § 60 c. ⁶ أَخَذَ.
⁷ خَدِيلًا. ⁸ لَنْ § 100 end. ⁹ part. ¹⁰ part. ¹¹ § 101 b.
¹² indetermin. ¹³ مَا. ¹⁴ مِنْ as used § 141. ¹⁵ سَ § 99 a.
¹⁶ § 19. ¹⁷ § 52.

92. The envious [man] is not well-pleased with thee¹, until thou diest!—93. Be [the] tail and be not [the] head! for² the tail escapes whilst³ the head perishes.

D. Various subordinate Sentences.

94. Muhammed said, "Do not anticipate (begin)⁴ Jews and Christians by the greeting, but when ye meet one of them⁵, (then)⁶ force him towards the narrowest place (his narrowest)".—95. When comes to thy knowledge concerning thy brother what is evil, then seek for him excuse; but if thou dost not⁷ find [one], then say, "Perhaps he has an excuse."—96. If⁸ thou eat little, thou shalt live long.—97. If⁸ ye talk in a good manner (make ye good the talk), ye shall enter Paradise.—98. Ali said,—may⁹ God be well pleased with him¹⁰—"O¹¹ mankind! do not hope except for your Lord, and do not dread [anything] except your transgressions; and be not he ashamed, who¹² doth not know, to¹³ learn, and be not he ashamed, who¹² knoweth, to¹³ teach!"—99. The subsistence which thou seekest is like the shadow (the likeness of the subsistence... [is] the likeness of the shadow) which moves on along

¹ verbal sentence. ² فَإِنَّ. ³ § 157 nomin. sent.
⁴ plur. ⁵ أَحَدٌ with gen. § 133 end. ⁶ § 161 c. ⁷ §§ 159, 101 c.
⁸ § 160 b. ⁹ § 98 d. ¹⁰ after the subject. ¹¹ أَيُّهَا § 85. ¹² مَنْ.
¹³ أَنْ with subj.

with thee; thou ¹ dost not overtake it in pursuing ² [it], then when thou turnest ³ away from it, it follows thee! ⁴—100. A man said to the Apostle of God: “O Muhammed, give me thy cloak!”; then he threw it down to ⁵ him; then he said: “I do not ⁶ want it”; then he [Muh.] said, “May ⁷ God combat thee! thou didst wish to ⁸ declare me to be niggardly, but (and) God has not made ⁹ me [to be] niggardly!”—101. Whoso ¹⁰ longs for Paradise, he is unmindful of lusts ¹¹.—102. That a man ¹² give in alms in his lifetime a drachma (the alms-giving ¹³ of a man—a drachma) [is] better for him than that ¹⁴ he give in alms a hundred drachmæ at his death.

103. The Prophet—may God bless ¹⁵ him and save him—said, “Whoso ¹⁶ drinketh wine in this world, [and] thereupon do not ¹⁷ repent, he shall be forbidden it ¹⁸ in the future life.”—104. If anyone light a lamp in a mosque, then verily ¹⁹ the angels [they] will beg forgiveness for him as long as ²⁰ that lamp continues ²¹ kindled ²².—105. The reed-pen [is] a tree, whose ²³ fruit [is] the ideas, and thought [is] a sea, whose ²⁴

¹ pronoun. ² part. 113 b. ³ § 158 a. ⁴ perf. ⁵ إِلَى. ⁶ مَا
with imperf. ⁷ § 98 d. ⁸ أَنَّ with subj. ⁹ § 101 c.
¹⁰ § 159. ¹¹ determ. ¹² inf. ¹³ مِنْ أَن § 148 b with subj.
¹⁴ § 11 end. ¹⁵ كَمَ §§ 160 c, 101 c. ¹⁶ § 108. ¹⁷ § 161 a. ¹⁸ § 158 b.
¹⁹ § 110. ²⁰ part. pass. § 110. ²¹ § 155. ²² مَرَّتْ.
E*

pearls [are] wisdom.—106. Verily the dead [man] and he who¹ has no religion (he who no² religion to him) [are] equal³; and there is no² trust in (to) him who¹ has no² piety.—107. Every woman that⁴ has no⁵ modesty [is] like a dish that has no⁵ salt.—108. If anyone's⁶ [whoso, his] tattle is much, his erring is much [also].—109. The anger of the noble [man], although his fire flare up⁷, [is] like smoke of wood⁸ in which [there is] no⁹ blackness.—110. To the ignorant [man] are forgiven¹⁰ seventy¹¹ transgressions, ere to the knowing [man] is forgiven one.

111. Be not¹² like the needle, which¹³ clothes mankind whilst¹⁴ it [is] naked, nor (and) like the wick, which¹⁴ gives light to mankind whilst it is consumed¹⁵.—112. The believer does not escape from the chastisement of God, until he leave off four things, lying, and pride, and niggardliness, and evil thinking (evil of the thinking).—113. It is seemly for the younger [ones] to¹⁶ precede the elders in three places; when¹⁷ they travel by night¹⁸, or wade through a stream, or encounter horsemen.—114. Do not drink (the) poison out of reliance¹⁹ on the antidote which thou hast

¹ مَن. ² § 111. ³ sing. ⁴ §§ 155, 156. ⁵ part.pass. § 110. ⁶ § 156. ⁷ § 159. ⁸ indetermin. § 155. ⁹ § 111. ¹⁰ § 136 a. ¹¹ § 92 b. ¹² لَا with energ. I. § 101 b. ¹³ § 155. ¹⁴ § 157 a. ¹⁵ § 157 a, pron. with imperf. ¹⁶ § 148. ¹⁷ § 158 a. ¹⁸ § 113 a. ¹⁹ § 113 d.

(that which [is] with¹ thee of² the antidote).—115. Paradise is desirous³ of four [kinds of] folk; the first⁴ of them⁵ [are] those who have fed⁶ a hungry [man], and the second [are] those who have clothed⁷ a naked [man], and the third [are] those who fast⁷ in⁸ the month of Ramadân⁹, and the fourth [are] those who read¹⁰ the Koran.—116. Socrates was asked, “Why hast thou not¹¹ mentioned in thy law-code the “punishment of him who kills¹² his brother?” He said, “I know not that this [is] a thing which exists.”—117. Every thing [it] begins small¹³, thereupon it becomes great, except misfortune¹⁴; for it begins great, thereupon it becomes small; and every thing [it] becomes cheap, when¹⁵ it becomes abundant, excepting education; for¹⁶ when it becomes abundant, it rises in value.

118. After Moses had returned to the Sons of Israel with the Thora (and along with him [was] the Thora), they refused to¹⁷ accept it and to do according to what [was] in it.—119. God commanded Moses to¹⁸ fast thirty¹⁸ days and to purify himself and to purify his garments, and to come to¹⁹ the mountain, that he might talk to him and give him the book.—120. After

¹ عَنْكَ. ² مِنْ. ³ part. ⁴ masc. ⁵ suffix in fem. sing.
⁶ perf. sing. ⁷ imperf. sing. ⁸ § 113 a. ⁹ § 128. ¹⁰ imperf. sing.
¹¹ § 101 c. ¹² § 159. ¹³ § 113 b. ¹⁴ accus. § 151. ¹⁵ § 158 a.
¹⁶ with suff. § 96 d. ¹⁷ أَن with subj. ¹⁸ § 113 a. ¹⁹ إِلَى

Damascus was taken¹, much folk² of³ its inhabitants joined Heraclius, whilst⁴ he was in⁵ Antioch.—121. A certain one of the wise men said, Nothing (not) repels the onslaught of the conquering enemy like⁶ being submissive and giving way, like as⁷ green plants are safe from the vehement wind through their pliancy, because they⁸ turn along with it, as (how)⁹ it turns.—122. They disagree¹⁰ concerning Waraka; and of¹¹ them [there are] those who assert¹² that¹³ he died a Christian¹⁴ and did not¹⁵ reach the appearance of the Prophet; and of¹⁶ them [there are] those who are of opinion¹⁷ that¹⁸ he died a Muslim.—123. O [ye two] companions of the prison! as to the one of you¹⁹, he shall serve to his lord wine²⁰, and as to the other, he shall be crucified, then shall²¹ the birds eat of²² his head; the affair is decreed²³ concerning which ye inquire!—124. The Apostle wrote to chieftains²⁴ of²⁵ the tribes, inviting²⁶ them to become Muslims²⁷.—125. A wise [man] was asked, “What [is] the thing, which [it] is not good that it be said, although it be²⁸ right?” He said, “A man’s eulogizing himself²⁹”.—126. Woe to

¹ fem. § 136 b. ² بَشَرٌ coll. ³ مِنْ. ⁴ § 157 a. ⁵ ب. ⁶ مِثْلٌ as subject, § 145 b. ⁷ كَمَا أَنَّ § 147 a. ⁸ sing. suff. ⁹ § 159. ¹⁰ § 98 b with قَدْ, § 137 a. ¹¹ مِنْ. ¹² § 147 a. ¹³ § 113 b. ¹⁴ § 101 c. ¹⁵ § 98 b. ¹⁶ § 98 b. ¹⁷ indeterm. ¹⁸ fem. sing. § 136 c, 2. ¹⁹ § 98 b. ²⁰ § 99 b. ²¹ infin. determ. ²² كَانَ § 159. ²³ § 131 w. Acc.

[him] who converses with lying, that he may make the people laugh by it!—127. This (the) world and the future life [are] as the East and the West; when thou approachest one of them¹, thou dost recede from the other.—128. Fear ye God in secret² and do not enter into what is not lawful for you!—129. The devotee without learning [is] like the ass of the mill³, who⁴ goes around and does not⁵ get through (cut) the distance.—130. The eye of hate [it] draws forth every fault, and the eye of love [it] does not find the faults.

E. Anecdotes.

131. An astrologer was being crucified; then he was asked⁶, “Hast thou⁷ seen this in thy star?” Then he said, “I saw a raising up⁸, however I did not⁹ know that it [was to be] upon a piece of wood.”

† 132. A man knocked at the door of¹⁰ ‘Amr the son of ‘Ubaid; so he said “Who [is] this?” He said, “I.” He [‘Amr] said, “I do not know (I am not I know¹¹) among our friends (brothers)¹² [any] one¹³, whose name [is] I.”

133. (The) thieves came¹⁴ in upon Abû Bekr al-Rabbânî, seeking¹⁵ something (a thing), and he saw

¹ dual suffix. ² determ. ³ § 123, note. ⁴ § 155 note. ⁵ § 157b
 لا w. impf. ⁶ 137 a. ⁷ with interrog. part. كَلَّ. ⁸ 73 c end.
⁹ § 101 c. ¹⁰ عَلَى. ¹¹ كَيْسَ § 50 and impf. ¹² order § 131 b.
¹³ أَحَدٌ. ¹⁴ § 136 a. ¹⁵ § 157 b imperf. alone.

them going around¹ in the house. Then he said, "O young men! This which ye are seeking² in the night³ we have⁴ already sought² in the day-time, but have not⁵ found it!" So they laughed and went out.

134. It is related⁶, that⁷ a certain one of the polite scholars eulogized a certain one of the princes; so he commanded [that] to him an [ass's] saddle and saddle-girth [should be given]. So he took them⁸ on⁹ his shoulder and went out from his presence¹⁰. Then a certain one of his companions saw him, then said, "What [is] this?" He said, "I eulogized the prince with the most beautiful of my poems, then he invested me with [something] of¹¹ the most glorious of his dresses".

135. Al-Mugîra, the son of Šu'ba said: No one (not)¹² has deceived me except (another than) a youth of¹³ the sons of al-Hârit. For I mentioned a woman of theirs (of¹⁴ them), that¹⁵ I should marry her; then he said, "O¹⁶ Prince! [There is] no good¹⁷ for thee in her." So I said, "And why [not]?" He said, "I saw a man kissing¹⁸ her." So I turned from her; then the young man married her. So I reproached him and said, "Didst thou not¹⁹ inform me that thou²⁰ hadst

⁷ imperf. ² with suffix. ³ § 118 a. ⁴ § 98 e. ⁵ مَا § 150 a.
⁶ § 98 b. ⁷ أَتَى. ⁸ dual suffix. ⁹ عَلَى. ¹⁰ مِنْ عِنْدِهِ. ¹¹ مِنْ.
¹² 101 c. ¹³ ل. ¹⁴ أَتَيْهَا. ¹⁵ § 111. ¹⁶ imperf. ¹⁷ أَلَمْ § 101 c.
¹⁸ أَتَى with suff.

seen a man kissing her?" He said, "Yes, I saw her father kissing her."

136. Al-Ḍaḥḥāk the son of Muzāḥim said to a Christian, "[How would it be] if ¹ thou wert to become a Muslim?" He said, "I have not ² ceased loving ³ Islām ⁴, except that ⁵ my love for wine ⁶ prevents me from it." So he said, "Become a Muslim and drink it!" So after he had become a Muslim, he said to him, "Thou hast ⁷ become a Muslim, so if thou drink it ⁸, we shall chastise thee; and if thou apostatize, we shall have thee killed ⁹, so choose for thyself". Then he chose Islām and his Islām was good. So he had taken ¹⁰ him by stratagem.

137. A Bedouin stole a purse in which (it) [were] pieces of money ¹¹, thereupon he entered the mosque to pray ¹²; and his name was ¹³ Moses. Then the leader of prayer recited, "And what is that ¹⁴ in ¹⁵ thy right hand, Oh Moses ¹⁶?" So he said, "By God, verily thou [art] an enchanter!" Thereupon he threw away the purse and went out.

• 138. A man claimed the (a) gift of prophecy in the days ¹⁷ of al-Rašid. So after he had appeared

¹ لَوْ § 102. ² مَا with perf. ³ § 110 with indetermin. part.

⁴ § 132 end. ⁵ §§ 147 c, 148 أَلَا أَنَّهُ with foll. verbal sentence.

⁶ § 131. ⁷ § 98 c with قَدْ. ⁸ § 159. ⁹ § 17, note b. ¹⁰ perf.

¹¹ indetermin. ¹² § 99 b. ¹³ كَانَ. ¹⁴ fem. ¹⁵ ب. ¹⁶ Surah 20, 18.

¹⁷ § 113 a.

before him [the Caliph], he asked him, "What [is that] which is said of thee?" He said, "that I¹ am a noble prophet." He asked, "But what² indicates the truth of thy claim?" He said, "Demand what³ thou wilt"⁴. He said, "I wish that⁵ thou make these⁶ beardless slaves, [who are] standing⁷ [there] this moment⁸ [to be furnished] with beards"⁹. Then he looked down for a while¹⁰, thereupon he raised his head and said, "How is it lawful that I make these¹¹ beardless [ones to be furnished] with beards⁹ and alter these⁶ beautiful¹² forms? but¹³ I will make the bearded ones (owners of beards) beardless in one twinkling." So al-Rašid laughed at him and pardoned him and commanded a present [to be given] to him.

139. A person pretended to prophecy¹⁴; then they besought of him in¹⁵ the presence of al-Ma'mûn a miracle. So he said, "I will cast for you a pebble into the water, then it will dissolve". He [al-Ma'mûn] said, "We are¹⁶ content." So he brought out a pebble [which he had] along with him¹⁷, then cast it into the water; then it dissolved. So they said, "This¹⁸ is a

¹ § 96 d. ² أَيَّ شَيْءٍ ٢. ³ § 5, note b. ⁴ perf. § 159. ⁵ أَنْ. ⁶ § 120 d; the dem. in sing., the adj. in broken pl. ⁷ determ. § 120 a. ⁸ § 118 a. ⁹ indetermin. ¹⁰ § 113 a. ¹¹ plur. ¹² § 120 fem. sing. ¹³ وَأَتَمَّا. ¹⁴ § 22. ¹⁵ ب. ¹⁶ § 98 c. ¹⁷ مَعَهُ § 121 a. ¹⁸ § 143.

trick; however, we will give¹ thee a pebble of our own², and let³ it dissolve!“ Then he said, “Ye are not⁴ more illustrious⁵ than Pharaoh and I am not (and not I⁶) mightier in wisdom⁷ than Moses, and Pharaoh did not⁸ say to Moses, ‘I am not⁹ content with what thou doest¹⁰ with thy staff, so that¹¹ I will give thee a staff of my own¹², which¹³ thou shalt make [into] a serpent.”” So al-Ma'mûn laughed and let him pass on.

140. It is said¹⁴ that Abû Dulâma¹⁵ the poet was standing¹⁶ before al-Saffâh on¹⁷ a certain day (a certain one of the days). Then he said to him, “Ask of me what thou dost want (thy want)!” So Abû Dulâma said to him, “I want a hunting-dog”. So he said, “Give ye it¹⁸ to him!” Then he said, “And I want a horse, on¹⁹ which I may go forth to hunt.” He said, “Give ye it to him!” He said, “And a page²⁰, who²¹ will lead the dog and hunt with him.” He said, “And give ye him a page!” He said, “And a slave-girl²², who²³ will prepare the game and give us to eat of it.” He said, “Give ye him a slave-girl!” He said, “These,

¹ imperf. ² مِنْ عِنْدِكَ. ³ imper. of. وِدِع w. suff.; then imperf. ⁴ كَيْسَى § 110. ⁵ § 63 b. ⁶ وَلَا أَكَا. ⁷ § 113 c. ⁸ § 101 c. ⁹ كَمْ. ¹⁰ § 156. ¹¹ حَتَّى with subj. ¹² مِنْ عِنْدِي. ¹³ §§ 155—56. ¹⁴ § 98 c. ¹⁵ 147 a. ¹⁶ كَانَ with part. § 110. ¹⁷ فِي. ¹⁸ with إِتَا, which stands last, § 54 b. ¹⁹ عَلَى (after the verb) § 155. ²⁰ accus. ²¹ § 155. ²² accus. ²³ § 155.

O Prince of the Believers! have need of ([there is] no¹ escape for them from) a dwelling, which² they may inhabit." So he said, "Give ye him a dwelling, which² will contain them!" He said, "And if they have not (and if not is³ to them) an estate, then wherefrom shall they live?" He said, "I grant⁴ thee ten cultivated⁵ estates and ten waste estates⁵." He said, "And what [are] the waste⁵ [ones] O Prince of the Believers?" He said, "In which⁶ [there are] no plants⁷." He said, "I⁴ grant thee, O Prince of the Believers, a hundred⁸ waste estates of⁹ the deserts of the Sons of Asad." Then he laughed at him and said, "Make them¹⁰ all of them¹⁰ cultivated!¹⁰"

141. It is related¹¹, that Harûn al-Rašîd had (that to H. was¹²) a black slave-girl, of ugly mien¹³. Now he scattered one day gold-pieces¹⁴ among (between) the slave-girls; so the slave-girls set about¹⁵ gathering¹⁶ up the gold-pieces, whilst¹⁷ that slave-girl stood still, looking¹⁸ at the face of al-Rašîd. Some one asked (it was asked), "Dost thou¹⁹ not pick up the

¹ § 111. ² §§ 155—56. ³ لَمْ تَكُنْ. ⁴ § 98 c with قَدْ. ⁵ § 87 a. ⁶ مَا and prep. with pronoun at the end of the sentence. ⁷ § 111. ⁸ § 92 c. ⁹ مِنْ. ¹⁰ fem. sing. ¹¹ § 98 c. ¹² أَنَّهُ كَانَ لِ. ¹³ § 147 c. ¹⁴ determ. § 134. ¹⁵ indetermin. ¹⁶ § 136 a. ¹⁷ §§ 152 note b, 136 d (impf. pl. fem.) ¹⁸ § 157 a with part. ¹⁹ § 157 b impf. alone. ²⁰ أَلَا w. impf. fem.

gold-pieces?" Then she said, "Verily what¹ they seek [is] the gold-pieces, but (and) what¹ I seek [is] the owner of the gold-pieces." Then her speech pleased him; so he placed her near [to him] and brought good upon her. Then the report got to the grandees, that² Harûn al-Rašid was enamoured³ of a black slave-girl. So after that had come to his knowledge, he sent for the whole of the grandees, until he had assembled⁴ them in his presence⁵. Then after he had commanded the bringing in⁶ of the slave-girls, he gave every one of⁷ them a goblet of⁷ chrysolite⁸ and commanded it to be thrown down⁶. But they declined [doing it] in a body (as a whole⁹). Then the turn came to (the affair got to) the ugly slave-girl; but she threw down the goblet and broke it. So they said, "Look¹⁰ at this girl, her name [is] ugly, and her manner [is] ugly, and her action [is] ugly". Then said to her the Caliph, "Why then didst thou break¹¹ it"? Then she said, "Thou didst¹² command me to break it¹³; so I was of opinion that¹⁴ in¹⁵ its being broken [lay] a detriment¹⁶ with regard to the

¹ part. pass. with suffix. ² بَانَ. ³ imperf. ⁴ § 152, note c.
⁵ عِنْدَهُ. ⁶ ب with infinitive § 131. ⁷ مِنْ § 119 a.
⁸ determ. ⁹ § 113 b. ¹⁰ plur. ¹¹ 2nd. pers. fem. perf. w. suff.
 § 53 a. ¹² § 98 e. ¹³ ب with inf. ¹⁴ أَتَى. ¹⁵ فِي. ¹⁶ § 147 a.

treasure of the Caliph, and in its not being broken (in the lack of its being broken) a detriment¹ with regard to his command; and the detriment with regard to the first is fitter to keep intact² the inviolability of the command of the Caliph. And I was of opinion that in its being broken [lay] my being called (qualified³ as⁴) the crazy [one], and in keeping it intact my called being (qualified³ as⁴) the disobedient [one]; and the first [is] more agreeable to me than the second." Then the grandees found⁵ that⁶ to be beautiful of⁷ her and praised her for⁸ it and excused the Caliph for⁹ loving her. And God knows best ([is] most knowing¹⁰).

¹ § 147 a. ² § 113 d, indetermin. inf. with following ل § 131.

³ § 61 c. ⁴ ب. ⁵ § 136 a. ⁶ at the end. ⁷ مِن. ⁸ عَلَى.

⁹ فِي. ¹⁰ elative.

GLOSSARY A.

pl. = plural, see §§ 88—90. The numbers within parentheses after the broken plurals refer to the forms as numbered in these sections.

Aaron هَارُونُ.

Abraham إِبْرَاهِيمُ.

abstinence زُهْدٌ.

Abū Bekr al-Rabbāni أَبُو بَكْرٍ الرَّبَّانِيُّ.

Abū Dulāma أَبُو دُلَامَةَ.

abundant *see much*.

accept (to) قَبِلَ *impf. a.*

acquire (to cause to) كَسَبَ

IV with two accus.

act well (to) حَسَنَ *IV*.

action فِعْلٌ. *See also bring.*

address (to) خَطَبَ *III*.

affair أَمْرٌ.

after, after that *conj.* لَمَّا

§ 98 f.

after *prep.* خَلْفَ.

agreeable to *elat.* أَحَبُّ

with إِلَى.

aid (to) عَانَ *med. و IV*

with acc.

‘Alī عَلِيٌّ.

all كُلُّ *with determ. noun*

or suffix § 119 b.

alms (to give in) صَدَقَ

V with ب of the gift.

along with *prep.* مَعَ.

already قَدْ § 98 e.

alter (to) غَارَ *med. ي II*.

although وَإِن § 159.

among فِي.

ample وَاسِعٌ *elat.* § 63 b.

'Amr عَمْرٍو § 90 n.

and وَ.

angel مَلَأَك pl. مَفَاعِلَةٌ (28).

anger غَضَبٌ.

animal (domestic) بَهِيمَةٌ

pl. فَعَائِلٌ (25).

another than غَيْرٌ with fol-
lowing gen.

answer (to give) to جَاب

X med. و. with لِ.

antidote دِرْيَاقِي.

Antioch أَنْطَاكِيَّةُ.

any مِنْ (prep.), cf. § 141.

apostatize رَدَّ VIII.

apostle رَسُولٌ.

appear (to) مَثَلَ.

appearance ظُهُورٌ.

apply oneself to (to) عَطَا

VI with acc.

approach (to) قَرَّبَ impf.

u, with مِنْ.

arise (to, in the morning)

صبح IV.

as see like.

as to أَمَّا with nom. and ف
in the apodosis.

Asad أَسَدٌ.

ashamed (to be) حَيَّ X
§ 49 c.

ask (to) قَال med. و. with
لِ. — to ask something
of سَأَلَ impf. a, with two
acc. § 38 b.

ass جَمَارٌ.

assemble (to) جَمَعَ impf. a.

assert (to) زَعَمَ impf. u.

astrologer مُنْتَجِمٌ.

at (one's house) prep. عِنْدَ.

Bagdad بَغْدَادُ.

baggage مَتَاعٌ.

be, exist (to) كَانَ med. و.

— not to be لَيْسَ § 50.

beard فَعَلَ pl. لَحِيَّةٌ (3); cf.

§ 71 b.

- beardless ^٩أَمْرُد *pl. فَعْلٌ* (1). beseech of (to) ^٩طَلَب *III*
 with *acc. of person and*
 beat (to) ^٩ضَرَبَ *impf. i, inf.* ^٩ب *of thing.*
^٩ضَرَبَ.
 beauty ^٩حُسْن — beauties
^٩حَسَنِ.
 beautiful ^٩حَسَن *fem. ٩*; ^٩بَيْن
elat. § 63 b. — to find
 to be beautiful ^٩حَسَن *X.*
 because ^٩لَآن § 147 *a.*
 Bedouin ^٩أَعْرَابِي.
 before (of place) = be-
 tween the two hands
 of (dual stat. constr.).
 beg of (to) ^٩سَأَلَ *impf. a,*
with acc.
 beggar *part. act. of* ^٩سَأَلَ.
 begin, begin with (to) ^٩بَدَأَ
impf. a, with acc.
 beginning ^٩رَأْس (lit. head).
 believe (to) ^٩أَمِن *IV; —*
 believer *id. part. act.*
 belly ^٩بَطْن.
- best *elat. of good.*
 better *elat. of good.*
 between ^٩بَيْن.
 beverage ^٩مَشْرَب *pl. مَقَاعِلُ*
 (23).
 birds *coll.* ^٩طَيْر.
 birth ^٩مَوْلِد.
 black ^٩أَسْوَد *fem. § 74 b.*
 blackness ^٩سَوَاد.
 bless (to) ^٩صَلَا *II* with ^٩عَلَى.
 body ^٩جَسَد *pl. أَفْعَالُ* (17).
^٩بَدَن (no. 67).
 book ^٩كِتَاب.
 born (to be) ^٩وَلَد *V.*
 bottom ^٩غَيَابَة.
 break (to) ^٩كَسَرَ *impf. i.*
 bring (to) ^٩جَاءَ *med. ي.*
 — to bring an action
 against one another

- VI. — to bring in ^{حکم}
 IV. — to bring ^{حضر}
 into ^{دخل} IV. — to
 bring out ^{خرج} IV. —
 to bring upon ^{أنى} IV
 with ^{على}.
 brother ^{أخ} § 90 a, c; pl.
 § 88, 5; pl. when =
 "friends" § 88, 21.
 bury (to) ^{دفن} *impf. i, inf.*
^{دفن}.
 but ^ف.
 by, by means of ^ب; in
 oaths = ^و *v. the gen.*
 § 95 i.
 Byzantines (the) *coll.* ^{الروم}.
 Caliph ^{خليفة}.
 care ^{هم}.
 carry onwards (to) ^{سار}
med. ب, with ^ب.
 case ^{خبر}.
 cast (to) ^{طرح} *impf. a.*
- cease (to) ^{زال} *med.* و (for
^{زول} § 42 d, § 44).
 certain one (a) ^{بعض} with
pl. of follow. noun.
 character ^{خلق} *pl.* ^{أفعال}
 (17).
 characteristic ^{علامة}.
 chastise (to) ^{حد} *impf. u.*
 chastisement ^{عذاب}.
 cheap (to become) ^{رخص}
impf. u.
 chief ^{رئيس} *pl.* ^{فُعلاء} (20).
 choose (to) ^{خار} *med.* ^ي
VIII.
 chrysolite ^{ياقوت}.
 Christian ^{نصراني} *pl.* ^{فعالي}
^{نصاري}; (29).
 claim (to) ^{دعا} *VIII* § 25,
note.
 claim ^{دعوى}.
 cloak ^{رداء}.
 clot of blood ^{علقة}.

clothe (to) كَسَا *impf. u.*

city مَدِينَةٌ.

cognizant of عَلِيمٌ بِ.

combat (to) قَتَلَ *III.*

come (to) أَتَى *impf. i.* —

to come to one's know-

ledge (concerning) بَلَغَ

impf. u, with acc. (and

عَنْ). — to come in

upon دَخَلَ *impf. u, with*

عَلَى. — to come out

from خَرَجَ *impf. u, with*

مِنْ.

come together جَمَعَ *VIII.*

command (to) أَمَرَ *impf. u.*

— to command anyone
to do a thing, id. *with*

acc. and أَنْ with the

subj. — to command

anything to be given

to anyone, id. *with لِ*

of pers. and بِ of thing.

— to command any
thing to be done, id.
with بِ and infin.

command أَمَرَ.

companion صَاحِبٌ *pl.*
أَفْعَالٌ (17).

compassionate رَحِيمٌ.

concerning فِي.

confide in (to) أَمِنَ *VIII.*

conquering *part. act. of*

قَهَرَ.

consider as (to) ظَنَّ *impf.*
u, with acc.

consumed (to be) حَرَقَ
VIII.

contain (to) جَمَعَ *impf. a.*

content (to be) رَضِيَ *impf.*

a. — to be content with,

id. *with بِ.*

contentment قَنَاعَةٌ.

continence فُرُوجٌ (*pl. of*
فَرْجٌ).

- continue (to) دَام *med.* و
§ 110.
contradict (to) خَلَف *III.*
converse (to) حَدَّثَ *V.* —
to converse about, id.
with بِ.
counsel (to ask) شَارَ *med.*
و *X.*
country بَلَدٌ *pl.* فِعَالٌ (9).
courage شَجَاعَةٌ.
cover up (to) سَتَرَ *impf. u.*
covetousness حَرَصٌ.
cradle مَهْدٌ.
crazy *part pass. of* جَنَّ
fem. مَ.
creation خَلَقٌ.
crucify (to) صَلَبَ *impf. i.*
cultivated *part. act. of*
عَمَرَ *fem.* مَ.
cure شَفَاءٌ.
cut (to) قَطَعَ *impf. a.* —
to cut open شَقَّ *impf. u.*
ad-Dahhāk اَلدَّهَّاکُ.
Damascus دِمَشْقُ.
daughter بِنْتُ § 90 i.
day يَوْمٌ *pl.* أَيَّامٌ §§ 88, 17;
90 s. — one day يَوْمًا.
to-day أَلْيَوْمَ.
day-time نَهَارٌ.
dead مَيِّتٌ.
death مَوْتُ.
deceive (to) خَدَعَ *impf. a.*
decline (to) مَنَعَ *VIII.*
decree (to) قَضَى *impf. i.*
demand (to) a thing سَأَلَ
impf. a, with عَنْ § 38 b.
depend on (to) وَكَلَ *V, with*
عَلَى.
desert فَيْفَاءٌ *pl.* فَعَالٍ (26);
فَيَّابٍ.
desirous of (to be) شَاقٌ
med. و VIII, with إِلَى or
عَلَى.
detriment نَقْصٌ.

- devoted to (to be) هَبَكَ dog كَلْبٌ⁹; hunting-dog
VIII with فِي. كَلْبٌ صَيْدٌ.
- devotee *part. act. of* عَبْد domestic *see* animal.
V. door بَابٌ⁹.
- die (to) مَاتَ *med.* و. drachma دِرْهَمٌ⁹.
- difficult عَسِيرٌ⁹. draw forth (to) بَرَزَ *IV.*
- disagree (to) خَلَفَ *VIII.* dread (to) خَشِيَ *impf. a.*
- disease دَاءٌ. dress مَلْبَسٌ *pl.* فَعَالِلٌ (23).
- disgraceful قَبِيحٌ⁹. drink (to) شَرِبَ *impf. a.*
- dish طَعَامٌ. drunk, drunken سَكْرَانٌ.
- dislike (to) كَرِهَ *impf. a.* dwelling دَارٌ⁹ (*fem.*).
- disobedient *part. act. of* early *see* morning.
عَصَى. East مَشْرِقٌ⁹.
- dissolve (to) ذَابَ *med.* و. easy يَسِيرٌ⁹.
- distance مَسَافَةٌ. eat (to) أَكَلَ *impf. u; imp.*
- distinguish (to) خَصَّ § 38 b. — to give to
impf. u. eat of طَعِمَ *IV with acc.*
- do (to) عَمِلَ *impf. a; فعَل* pers. and مِنْ.
- impf. a* (no. 139). — to education أَدَّبَ — to show
do according to عَمِلَ one's education اَدَّبَ *V.*
- with* بِ. elder أَفَاعِلٌ *pl.* أَكْبَرُ (23).

- elect (to) صَفَى *VIII*.
 elegance جَمَالٌ.
 enamoured of (to be) estate ضَيْعَةٌ *pl. فِعَالٌ* (9).
 عاشَقَ *impf. a, with acc.* eulogize (to) مَدَحَ *impf.*
 enchanter سَاحِرٌ. *a.; id. VIII* (no. 134).
 encounter (to) لَقِيَ *III*. evening (late) عَشَى.
 endurance صَبْرٌ. every كُلٌّ *with indetermin.*
 enemy عَدُوٌّ. *noun. § 119 b.*
 enjoy oneself (to) طَرِبَ *V*. evidence بَيِّنَةٌ.
 entail (to) وَرَثَ *IV*. evil (to be) سَاءَ *med. و.*
 enter (to) دَخَلَ *impf. u.* — to do evil *id. IV.*
see § 107 note. evil-doer *part act. of*
id. IV.
 entertain (to) قَرَى *impf. i.* evil سُوءٌ.
inf. قَرَأَ. example عِبْرَةٌ.
 entrance مَدْخَلٌ.
 entrust (to) anyone with excellent فَاضِلٌ *elat. § 63 b.*
 ودَعَ *X with two accus.* except إِلَّا (= إِنْ لَا) § 151.
 envious *part. act. of حَسَدٌ.* — except that إِلَّا أَنَّهُ
 equal سَوَاءٌ. § 147 c.
 ere, conj. قَبْلَ أَنْ § 100. excepting مَا خِلَا *with acc.*
 err (to) غَلَطَ *inf. غَلَطٌ.* excuse (to) عَذَرَ *impf. i.*
 error ضَلَالٌ. excuse عَذْرٌ.

- exhort (to) ⁹وَعَظَّ *impf. i*, § 40 *a*.
 exist (to) ⁹كَانَ *med.* *و*.
 exit ⁹خَرَجَ.
 exterior ⁹عَلَانِيَّةَ.
 extract (to) ⁹خَرَجَ *X*.
 eye ⁹عَيْنَ *fem.* § 72.
 face ⁹وَجْهَ.
 fast (to) ⁹صَامَ *med.* *و*.
 father ⁹أَبَ § 90 *a*.
 fault ⁹عُيُوبَ *pl.* (10).
 favour ⁹فِعْلَ *pl.* (3).
 fear (to) ⁹خَافَ *med. و impf.* *a*, § 42 *d*.
 feed (to) ⁹طَعَمَ *IV*.
 fight (to) with one another
 ⁹قَتَلَ *VI*.
 find (to) ⁹وَجَدَ *impf. i*, § 40 *a*.
 fire ⁹نَارَ.
 first ⁹أَوَّلَ.
 fit ⁹أَوَّلَى *elat.* ⁹وَلَّى.
- five ⁹خَمْسَ §§ 91, 92 *a*.
 flare up (to) ⁹أَجَّ *V*.
 flight ⁹هَرَبَ.
 flourishing (to make) ⁹عَمَرَ
 impf. u.
 fly (to) from ⁹فَرَّ *impf. i*,
 with ⁹مِنْ.
 folk ⁹قَوْمَ *pl.* § 88, 17; ⁹بَشَرَ
 coll. (no. 120).
 follow (to) ⁹تَبَعَ *impf. a*.
 fool *part act of* ⁹جَهْلَ.
 for *prep.* ⁹لِ § 95 *h*; *conj.*
 ⁹فَإِنَّ § 96 *d*.
 forbid (to) a thing to any-
 one ⁹حَرَّمَ *impf. i*, with
 two accus.
 force (to) ⁹ضَرَّ *VIII*. § 25
 note.
 forelock ⁹فَوَاعِلَ *pl.* ⁹نَاصِيَةَ
 (24).
 forgive (to) ⁹غَفَرَ *impf. i*.
 forgiving ⁹غَفُورَ.

- forgiveness (to beg) غفر *X*.
 form ⁹صُورَةٌ *pl. فَعْلٌ* (4).
 four ⁹أَرْبَع §§ 91, 92 *a*.
 fourth ⁹رَابِعٌ.
 friend ⁹صَاحِبٌ (*see* p. 85*).
 — of God = Abraham
 خَلِيلٌ.
 — intimate صَدِيقٌ *pl.*
 أَفْعَلَاءُ (18).
 friendly لَطِيفٌ.
 from *prep.* مِنْ.
 fruit ⁹ثَمَرَةٌ.
 future life *see* life.
 gain (to make) كَسَبَ *V*.
 game صَيْدٌ.
 garment ⁹ثَوْبٌ *pl. فِعَالٌ* (9).
 gate بَابٌ.
 gate-keeper بَوَّابٌ.
 gather up (to) لَقَطَ *VIII*.
 get to (to) نَهَى *VIII with*
 إِلَى — to get through
 قَطَعَ *impf. a*.
 gift مَوْهَبٌ *pl. مَفَاعِلٌ* (23).
see also prophecy.
 girl ⁹جَارِيَةٌ.
 give (to) عَطا *IV with two*
acc. — to give way inf.
 خَضَعُ.
 glad *see* tidings.
 glance ⁹بَصَرٌ *pl. أَفْعَالٌ* (17).
 glorify (to) سَبَحَ *II*.
 glorious ⁹فَاحِرٌ *elat. § 63 b.* ف.
 glory شَرَفٌ.
 go round (to) دَارَ *med. و.*
 — to go away دَهَبَ
impf. a. — to go on
 مَشَى *impf. i. — to go*
 out خَرَجَ *impf. u. —*
 to let go رَسَلَ *IV*.
 goblet ⁹قَدَحٌ.
 god إِلَهٌ; God اَللَّهُ, by God
 وَاللَّهُ.
 gold-piece ⁹دِينَارٌ *pl. § 90 k.*
 good *noun and adj.* خَيْرٌ

- elat. id.* — to be good hate ⁶بُغِضَ.
⁹حُسِّنَ *impf. u.* — to have (to), is expressed by
 make good طاب *med.* the subject in the dative
 ي *IV.* (with ل) followed by the
 government رِئَاسَةً or object in the nom. (as
 رِياسَةً. لَّهُ مَالٌ he has money);
 governor وَلِيٌّ occasionally a form of
 grandee مَلِكٌ *pl.* § 88, 10. كَانَ to be stands before
 grant (to) قَطَعَ *IV* with the subject (as لَّهُ كَانَ
 two accus. مَالٌ he had money). —
 grateful (to be) شَكَرَ *impf. u.* not to have either as in
 great كَبِيرٌ — to be, be the last example, but
 come great كَبَرَ *impf. u.* with لَيْسَ (§ 50) instead
 green (fresh) رَطَبٌ. of لَيْسَ لَّهُ مَالٌ كَانَ
 greeting سَلَامٌ. or لَا with following ob-
 guard (to) صَانَ *med.* و; ject (§ 111) and dative
 inf. صَوَّنَ. of subject (لَهُ لَا مَالٌ).
 guest ضَيْفٌ. he هُوَ § 12 a. — he who
 hand يَدٌ § 90 r. مَنْ § 14 b.
 al-Hārītُ الْحَارِثُ head رَأْسٌ.
 Hārūn ar-Rashīd هَارُونُ hear (to) سَمِعَ *impf. a, inf.*
 الرَّشِيدُ سَمَاعٌ.
 heart قَلْبٌ *pl.* (10). فُؤُولٌ

- heaven سَمَاءٌ *pl. سَمَوَاتٌ* hunt (to) صَادَ *med. ي. —*
 § 76 b. to go forth to hunt *id. V.*
 heir *part. act. of* وَرِثَ *pl.* hunt, chase صَيَّدَ.
 (6). وَرَثَةٌ hurry (to) عَجَلَ *II.*
 hell-fire النَّارُ. al-Husain اَلْحُسَيْنُ.
 help (to) نَصَرَ *impf. u. —* hypocrisy (religious) رِيَاءٌ.
 to demand help of عَانَ hypocrite *part. act. of*
med. و. X with ب. نَفَقَ *III.*
 Heraclius هِرَقْلُ. اَنَا I.
 high عَلِيٌّ. ignorance جَهْلٌ.
 holy see war. ignorant *part. act. of* جَهَلَ.
 hope for (to) رَجَا *impf. u,* idea مَعْنَى *pl. مَعَالٍ* (23).
with acc. if اِنْ § 159; in hypothe-
 horse دَابَّةٌ. tical clauses لَوْ *with the*
 horsemen *coll.* خَيْلٌ. *perf. —* if anyone مَنْ
 house بَيْتٌ. § 159.
 how كَيْفَ. illustrious جَلِيلٌ *elat.*
 however وَلَٰكِنْ *with follg.* § 63 b.
verb. imperfection *inf. of* فَات
 humble (to be) وَضَعَ *VI.* *med. و. VI.*
 hungry *part. act. of* جَاعَ *in prep. فِي.*
med. و. incumbent on (to be) وَجَبَ
 hundred مِائَةٌ §§ 91, 92 c. *impf. i, with* عَلَى § 40 a.

- indicate (to) دَلَّ *impf. u.* Islam اَلْإِسْلَامُ.
 with عَلَى.
 indication دَلِيلٌ.
 indigestion بَشَمٌ.
 inform (to) خَبَّرَ *III*.
 inhabit (to) سَكَنَ *impf. u.*
 inhabitants أَهْلٌ.
 inquire concerning (to) بَ.
 في *X with* فِتَى.
 intelligent *part. act. of* Joseph يُوسُفُ.
 عقل.
 interior سَرِيرَةٌ.
 interrupted (to be) قَطَعَ
 VII.
 intimate *see* friend.
 into *prep.* فِي.
 invest (to) anyone with عَلَى *impf. a, with* خَلَعَ
 of pers. and acc. of thing.
 inviolability حُرْمَةٌ.
 invite to (to) دَعَا *impf.*
 u, with إِلَى.
 Israel إِسْرَائِيلُ.
 Jalāl ad-dīn جَلَالُ الدِّينِ.
 Jerusalem اَلْقُدْسُ.
 Jews (the) *coll.* اَلْيَهُودُ.
 join (to) لَحَقَ *impf. a, with*
 بَ.
 Jonah يُونُسُ.
 joy سُرُورٌ.
 justice عَدْلٌ.
 keep from (to) مَنَعَ *impf.*
 a, with acc. and مِنْ.
 keep intact (to) بَقِيَ *IV*.
 kill (to) قَتَلَ *impf. u.*
 kindle (to) وَكَدَ *impf. t.*
 king مَلِكٌ.
 kingdom مَمْلَكَةٌ.
 kiss (to) قَبَلَ *II*.
 knock (to) at the door of

- عَلَى *impf. u, with* تَرَكْ leave, leave off (to)
of pers. and acc. of door. impf. u.
- know (to) عَلِمَ *impf. a;* let (to) وَدَعَ *impf. a* § 40 a.
 عَرَفَ *imp. i* (no. 132), liar (to declare anyone to
 be a) كَذَبَ II.
 دَرَى *impf. i* (no. 73).
 knowing *part. act. of* عَلِمَ; liberal بَخِي.
elat. § 63 b.
 Koran الْقُرْآنُ.
 lack عَدَمٌ.
 lamp سِرَاجٌ.
 laugh (to) ضَحِكَ *impf. a. —* life-time حَيَاةٌ.
 to laugh at id. *with* مِنْ light (to) سَرَجَ IV. — to
 — to make laugh id. give light to ضَاءَ *med.*
 IV *with* بِ of means. و IV, *with* ل.
 law-code شَرِيعَةٌ.
 lawful (to be) حَلَّ *impf. i.* like (like as) *prep.* كَ; *conj.*
 lead (to) قَادَ *med. و.* كَمَا أَنْ, كَمَا
 leader *see* prayer. (nom. sent.).
 learn (to) عَلِمَ V. likeness مَثَلٌ.
 learned عَلِيمٌ *pl. فُعَلَاءُ* live (to) عَاشَ *med. ي.*
 (20). living حَيٌّ.
 learning عِلْمٌ. long طَوِيلٌ.

- long for (to) شاق *med.* و *antith. to woman* (nos. 2, 43, 102), § 90 e.
VIII, with عَلَى.
- look at (to) نَظَرَ *impf. u.* manifest *part. act.* بان
with إِلَى.—to look down *med.* ى IV.
- look into طرق IV.—to look into mankind *coll.* النَّاسُ.
- طلع VIII, with فى § 25, manner وَضَعَ.
- note. marry (to) زام *med.* و V.
- lord رَبٌّ.
- love, fall in love with (to) Mary مَرِيَمُ.
- love حُبٌّ.
- love inf. حَبَّهٗ.
- lower (to) غَضَّ *impf. u.* meat لَحْمٌ.
- lust رَغْبَةٌ.—lusts شَهَوَاتٌ.
- Mecca مَكَّةُ.
- make, make to be (to) جَعَلَ *impf. a.* (with two accus.). medicine طِبٌّ.
- to make (poetry) قَالَ *med.* و.
- meet (to) لَقِيَ *impf. a.*
- malady سَقَامٌ.
- mention (to) ذَكَرَ *impf. u.*
- al-Ma'mūn الْمَأْمُونُ.
- mien مَنْظَرٌ.
- mighty عَظِيمٌ *elat.* § 63 b.
- mill طَاحُونَةٌ.
- mindful of (to be) ذَكَرَ *impf. u.* with acc.
- miracle مُعْجَزَةٌ.
- misfortune مُصِيبَةٌ *pl.*
- man مَرءٍ; فَعَائِلٌ (25).
- man رَجُلٌ *pl.* فِعَالٌ (9); مَرءٍ

modesty حَيَاءٌ.

moment (this) السَّاعَةُ.

money مَالٌ. — piece of

money دِرْهَمٌ *pl.* فَعَالِلٌ

(23).

month شَهْرٌ.

morning (early) بُكْرَةٌ.

morrow, to-morrow غَدٌ.

Moses مُوسَى.

mosque مَسْجِدٌ.

most *elat.* of much.

mountain جَبَلٌ.

much كَثِيرٌ *elat.* § 63 *b.* —

to be much, abundant

كَثُرَ *impf. u.* — to make

much كَثُرَ *IV.*

al-Mugīra الْمَغِيرَةُ.

Muḥammed مُحَمَّدٌ.

music سَمَاعٌ.

Muslim (to become a) سَلِمَ

IV. — Muslim *id.* *part.*

act.

Muzāḥim مُزَاهِمٌ.

naked عُرْيَانٌ *fem.* عُرْيَانَةٌ.

name اِسْمٌ.

narrow ضَيِّقٌ (= ضَيِّيقٌ)

elat. أَضْيَقٌ.

nature طَبْعٌ *pl.* § 88, 9.

near (to place) قَرَبٌ *II.*

needle اِبْرَةٌ.

neighbour جَارٌ.

niggardly بَخِيلٌ. — to de-

clare anyone to be n.

بَخِلَ *II.*

niggardliness بُخْلٌ.

night لَيْلٌ.

noble كَرِيمٌ. — nobles *coll.*

مَلَأَ.

not see § 150.

now *conj.* فَ.

nutriment قُوتٌ.

O! يَا § 85; *also* أَيُّهَا.

obedient to (to be) قَنَتَ

impf. u. with لِ.

- observe (to) عَبر VIII.
occasion (as a consequence) (to) عَقِب IV,
with two accus.
Omar عُمَرُ.
on account of *prep.* لِ.
one *as pronoun or adj.*
وَاحِدٌ ⁹fem. سَـة; *with*
pron. suffix أَحَدٌ.
only إِنَّمَا.
onslaught بَاسٌ.
open (to) فَتَحَ ⁹impf. a;
inf. فَتَحَ.
opinion (to be of) رَأَى
impf. a, § 49 b.
or أَوْ.
other آخَرُ.
overtake (to) دَرَك IV.
owner صَاحِبٌ *pl.* أَصْعَالُ
(17).
page boy غُلَامٌ.
Paradise الْجَنَّةُ.
pardon (to) عَفَا *impf. u,*
with عَلَى.
part (= some) بَعْضٌ
(§ 133).
pass on (to let) جَازَ *med.*
IV.
pearls *coll.* لُؤْلُؤٌ.
pebble حَصَاةٌ.
people أَهْلٌ.
perhaps لَعَلَّ § 147 a.
perish (to) هَلَكَ *impf. i;*
— to cause to p. id. IV.
person (man) إِنْسَانٌ.
Pharao فِرْعَوْنُ.
physician طَبِيبٌ.
pick up (to) لَقَطَ *impf. u.*
piece, *see* § 73 c.
piety دِيَانَةٌ.
place (occasion) مَوْطِنٌ *pl.*
مَفَاعِلُ (23).
place (to) وَضَعَ *impf. a.*
§ 40 a.

- plants *coll.* نبات⁹ (*masc.*).
 please (to) عَجِبَ *IV.* —
 to be well pleased with
 عَنْ *impf. a. with* رَضِيَ
 pleasure لَذَّةٌ *pl.* § 76.
 pliancy لِينٌ.
 poem, poetry شِعْرٌ *pl.* أَفْعَالٌ
 (17).
 poet شَاعِرٌ.
 poison سَمٌ.
 polite scholar ظَرِيفٌ *pl.*
 (20). فُعَلَاءٌ.
 poor فَقِيرٌ *pl.* (20). فُعَلَاءٌ.
 possessor ذَاتُ, *fem.* ذُو
 § 90 l.
 poverty فَقْرٌ.
 power قُوَّةٌ.
 praise (to) حَمِدَ *impf. a.*
 praise (God) ذَكَرَ.
 pray (to) صلا *II.*
 prayer صَلَاةٌ (= صَلَوةٌ
 § 43 note) *pl.* صَلَوَاتٌ
 (§ 83). direction of
 prayer قِبْلَةٌ.—leader of
 prayer إِمَامٌ.
 preach to (to) خَطَبَ *impf.*
u, with acc.
 precede (to) قَدَمَ *V.*
 prepare (to) صَلَحَ *IV.*
 presence حَاضِرَةٌ.
 present (gift) صِلَةٌ (*inf. of*
 وصل).
 preserve (to) حَفِظَ *impf. a.*
 pride كِبَرٌ.
 prince أَمِيرٌ *pl.* (20). فُعَلَاءٌ.
 prison سِجْنٌ.
 promise وَعْدٌ.
 prophecy (gift of) نُبُوَّةٌ —
 to pretend to prophecy
 نبأ *V.*
 prophet نَبِيٌّ *pl.* أَنْبِيَاءٌ.
 (18).
 prostrate oneself (to) سَجَدَ
impf. u.

- protect (to) حَرَسَ *impf. u, i.* reflection *inf. of* فَكَرَ *V.*
- provide for (to) رَزَقَ *impf. u, with two accus.* refuse (to) أَبَى *impf. a. —*
to r. to do, id. with أَنْ
and subj.
- punishment عُقُوبَةٌ.
- purify (to) طَهَرَ *II. — to oneself id V.* regard, with r. to فِي.
- purse صُرَّةٌ.
- pursue (to) تَبَعَ *VIII.* regret نَدِمَ.
- put (to) جَعَلَ *impf. a. —* relate (to) حَكَى *impf. i.*
- to put off till آخر *II. with J.* related to قَرِيبٌ *with مِنْ.*
- qualify (to) *inf.* وَصَفَ.
- reliance *inf. VIII, see rely.*
- raise, raise up (to) رَفَعَ *impf. a; inf.* religion دِينَ.
- rely on (to) وَكَلَ *VIII, with* عَلَى § 40 *d.*
- repel (to) رَدَّ *impf. u.*
- repent (to) تَابَ *med. و.*
- repentance نَدَامَةٌ.
- report خَبَرٌ.
- reproach (to) لَامَ *med. و.*
- restore (to) رَاحَ *med. و IV.*
- restrain from (to) كَفَّ *impf. u, with acc. and* عَنْ. —
to r. one's self from id.
with عَنْ.
- recite (to) قَرَأَ *impf. a.*
- reed-pen قَلَمٌ.

- resurrection ⁹قِيَامَةٌ.
 return to (to) رَجَعَ *impf. i.*
 with إِلَى.
 right (due) حَقٌّ.
 right, right hand يَمِينٌ.
 rise in value (to) غَلَا *impf. u.*
 roof سَقْفٌ.
 routed (to be) هَزَمَ VII.
 rule (to) سَاسَ *med. u.*
 run races (to) سَبَقَ VIII.
 saddle (of an ass) بَرْدَعَةٌ.
 — saddle-girth حِزَامٌ.
 safe (to be) سَلِمَ *impf. a.*
 as-Saffāh السَّفَّاحُ.
 salt مِلْحٌ.
 save (to) سَلَّمَ II.
 say (to) قَالَ *med. u.* — to
 say of anyone, *id. with*
 عَنْ. — to s. to anyone,
 id. with لِ.
 scatter (to) نَثَرَ *impf. u, i.*
- sea بَحْرٌ.
 second ثَانٍ.
 secret سِرٌّ *pl. أَسْرَارٌ* (17).
 security ضَمَانٌ.
 see (to) رَأَى *impf. a.*, § 49 b.
 seedy *part. pass. of* خَمَرَ.
 seek (to) طَلَبَ *impf. u.* —
 to seek for one'sself, *id. V.*
 seemly (to be) بَغَى VII.
 seize (to) أَخَذَ *impf. u.*
 self نَفْسٌ § 12 e.
 send (to) رَسَلَ IV; for
 خَلَفَ; *with* بِ.
 serpent ثُعْبَانٌ.
 servant (i. e. of God) عَبْدٌ
 pl. فُعَالٌ (9).
 serve wine to (to) سَقَى
 impf. i, with two acc.
 set about (to) صَارَ *med. u.*
 with impf. § 99 note a.
 seventy سَبْعُونَ.
 shadow ظِلٌّ.

- shift (to) صَرَفَ *impf. i.*
 ship سَفِينَةٌ.
 shirt قَبِيصٌ.
 shoulder كَتِفٌ.
 sign آيَةٌ *pl.* § 76.
 silent (to be) *inf.* صَمَتَ.
 sin خَطِيئَةٌ.
 singing (art of) غِنَاءٌ.
 sit with (to) جلس *III, with acc.*
 size قَامَةٌ.
 slave مَمْلُوكٌ *pl.* مَفَاعِيلُ
 (27). — slave-girl جَارِيَةٌ
pl. فَوَاعِلُ (24).
 sleep, go to sleep (to) نَامَ
med. و, impf. a; part. act.
pl. § 88, 9.
 small صَغِيرٌ. — to become
s. صَغُرَ *impf. a.*
 smoke دُخَانٌ.
 snow ثَلَجٌ.
 so *conj.* فَ.
- sober *part. act. of* هَمَا.
 Socrates سُقْرَاطُ.
 solicitude هَمٌّ.
 son ابْنٌ § 90 *b* (pluralis
 sanus with names of
 tribes).
 song أَغْنِيَةٌ *pl.* أَغَانٍ.
 sorrow حُزْنٌ.
 spare (to) حَيَّ *X, § 49 c.*
 speech قَوْلٌ.
 spend (to) (*of time*) *inf.*
 قَطَعَ.
 spirit رُوحٌ.
 staff عَصَا.
 stand (to) قَامَ *med. و; part.*
act. pl. § 88, 9. — to
 stand still وَقَفَ *impf. i.*
 star نَجْمٌ.
 start off (to) وَجِهَ *V. w.* اِلَى.
 stay (to) قَامَ *med. و IV.*
 steal (to) سَرَقَ *impf. i.*
 stratagem حِيلَةٌ.

stream سَيْلٌ.

strength حَوْلٌ.

Šu'ba شُعْبَةٌ.

submissive (to be) ذَلٌّ *V.*

subsistence رِزْقٌ.

sufficiency كِفَايَةٌ.

supplication دُعَاءٌ.

surely لَ (after إِنَّ).

tail ذَنْبٌ.

take (to) أَخَذَ *impf. u.* —
(of a city) فَتَحَ *impf. a.*to t. away ذَهَبَ *impf. a.*
with بَ. — to t. hold of
أَخَذَ *impf. u.*, with بَ.talk to (to) كَلِمَ *II*, with
acc. — to t. to one an-
other, *id.* *V.*

talk كَلَامٌ.

tattle لَفْظٌ.

teach (to) عَلَّمَ *II*, with two
*accus.*ten عَشْرٌ §§ 91, 92 *a.*than مِنْ § 63 *b.*that *pron.* ذَلِكَ § 13 *c.*that (in order that) لَ *with*
subj. § 100.that *conj.* أَنْ (before a
verb) § 148 *b.*; أَنْ (before
a noun) § 147 *a.*

that which مَا.

then فَ.

thereupon ثُمَّ.

thief لِصٌّ *pl.* فُعُولٌ (10).thing شَيْءٌ *pl.* أَفْعَالٌ (17)
but without the nuna-
tion أَشْيَاءٌ.think (to) ظَنَّ *impf. u.*, with
two *accus.*; *inf.* ظَنَّ.third ثَالِثٌ § 93 *a.*thirty ثَلَاثُونَ §§ 91, 92 *b.*this هَذَا § 13 *b.*

Thora (the) التَّوْرَةُ.

those who مَنْ § 14 b.

thou أَنْتَ.

thought فِكْرٌ.

three ثَلَاثٌ §§ 91, 92 a.

through (by means of)
prep. بِ.

throw away (to) رَمَى *impf.*

i. — to throw down لَقَى
IV.

tidings, to give glad tid-
ings to anyone of a
thing بَشْرٌ II, with acc.
of pers. and بِ.

time زَمَانٌ. — (proper) time
وَقْتُ.

tipsy نَشْوَانٌ.

title-page عُنْوَانٌ.

to (direction) prep. إِلَى;
(sign of the dative) لِ.

tongue أَفْعَلَةٌ pl. لِسَانٌ (16).

towards prep. إِلَى,

transgression ذَنْبٌ pl.
فُعُولٌ (10).

transitory part. act. of فَنَى.

travel (to) سَارَ *med.* ي.

treasure خَزِينَةٌ.

tree شَجَرَةٌ.

tribe قَبِيلَةٌ pl. فَعَائِلٌ (25).

trick حِيلَةٌ.

trust أَمَانَةٌ.

truth صِدْقٌ.

turn (to) مَالَ *med.* ي. —

to turn from عَرَضَ VI,
with عَنْ. — to t. away

(act.) رَدَّ *impf.* u. — to
t. away from (neut.) وَلَى

II, with مِنْ.

twinkling لَحْظَةٌ.

‘Ubaid عُبَيْدٌ.

ugly قَبِيحٌ *fem.* سَاءَةٌ.

unbeliever part. act. of كَفَرَ
pl. § 76.

uncover (to) كَشَفَ *impf.* i.

understanding عَقْلٌ.

- unmindful of (to be) سَلَا waste غَامِرٌ *fem.* مَآءٌ — to
V, with عَنْ render waste خَرَب *II.*
 until conj. حَتَّى generally water مَآءٌ § 90 *q.*
with subj. (cf. § 152 *c*). well جُبٌّ.
 upon prep. فَوْق well-pleased *see* please.
 used to كَانَ *med.* و *with* West مَغْرِبٌ.
folllg. impf. § 99 *c*; *subj.* whale حُوتٌ.
gen. betw. كَانَ *and impf.* what *rel. interr.* مَا.
 value قِيَمَةٌ when *rel. interr.* مَتَى; *conj.*
 vehemence حِدَّةٌ 158.
 vehement عَاصِفٌ 158.
 verily إِنَّ §§ 147, 96 *d.* where? أَيْنَ — from
 viand مَطْعَمٌ *pl.* مَقَاعِلَةٌ (28). where, whence مِنْ أَيْنَ.
 violent شَدِيدٌ which *relat.* الَّذِي.
 wade through (to) خَاض whichever أَيَّ § 14 *c.*
med. و, *with acc.* while (a) سَاعَةً.
 want (to) رَادَ *med.* و *IV.* whilst cf. § 157.
 want حَاجَةٌ who *rel.* الَّذِي; *interr.* مَنْ.
 war (holy) *inf.* فِعَالٌ of whoever, whoso مَنْ §§ 14 *b*,
 جهد *III.* 159.
 Waraka وَرَقَةُ whole جَمِيعٌ.
 wash (to) غَسَلَ *impf. i.* why? لِمَ; why then? لِمَاذَا.

wick دُبَالَةٌ.

wickedness شَرٌّ.

will (to) شَاءَ *med.* ي.wind رِيحٌ *fem.* § 72.

wine خَمْرٌ.

wisdom حِكْمَةٌ.

wise حَكِيمٌ *pl.* فُعَلَاءٌ (20).wish (to) رَادَ *med.* و. *IV.*

with مَعَ (in company w.);

بِ (in union w., by

means of).

without بَغَيْرِ (*with gen.*).

woe to! وَيْلٌ لِّ.

wolf ذِئْبٌ.

woman امْرَأَةٌ, مَرَأَةٌ. —

plur. نِسَاءٌ § 90 *f.*

wood عَوْدٌ. — piece of

wood خَشَبَةٌ.

word كَلِمَةٌ.

work عَمَلٌ *pl.* أَعْمَالٌ (17).

world (the, this) الدُّنْيَا.

worst شَرٌّ § 63 note.

write to (to) كَتَبَ *impf. u.**with* إِلَى.

wrong (to, to do) ظَلَمَ

impf. i; inf. ظَلَمَ.

Yazīd يَزِيدٌ.

ye أَنْتُمْ.

year سَنَةٌ *pl.* § 90 *m.*

yes نَعَمْ.

young صَغِيرٌ *elat.* § 63 *b.**pl.* أَفَاعِلٌ (23).young man فَتَى *pl.* فُعْلَانٌ

(21).

youth غُلَامٌ.

Zaid زَيْدٌ.

GLOSSARY B.

- ^أ *part. interr.* often before the first half of an alternative question.
^{أَب} *st. c.* ^{أَبُو} (§ 90a) father.
^{أَبَدَ} *impf. i* to stay, remain.
^{أَبَدًا} *adv.* always, for ever; with neg. never.
^{أَبَقَ} *impf. i* to run away.
^{أَبْنَى} *v.* ^{أَبْنَى}.
^{أَتَى} *impf. i; c. acc.* come, come to. *c. acc. p. et ب* *r.* to bring, to give somethg. to some one.
^{أَثَرَ} *impf. u* to make an impression.
^{أَثَرًا} *pl.* ^{أَثَرًا} trace, sign, mark.
^{أَجَرَ} wages, hire, reward.
- ^{أَحَدٌ} *fem.* ^{أَحَدِي} one, some one.
^{أَخٌ} (§ 90c) *pl.* ^{أَخَوَةٌ} brother, neighbour.
^{أَخَذَ} *impf. u* to take, to sieze, catch hold of.
^{أَخَذَ} *VIII* to make; w. 2 Acc. to adopt, regard (as).
^{أَخَّرَ} *II* to put off, postpone.
^{أَخِرَ} the last, second, end.
^{أَلْآخِرَةُ} the next world.
^{أُخْرَى} *fem.* ^{أُخْرَى} other.
^{أَدَبَ} *V* to conduct one's self with propriety.
^{أَدَبٌ} good breeding, politeness, education, polite reproof.

⁹إِدَاوَةٌ vessel for holding water, made of skins.

أدى *II* to pay (tribute).

إِذَا lo! see! when lo!

إِذَا *conj.* when, if; *adv.* lo! see!

أَذِنَ *impf. a; c. ل pers. et rei* to allow, permit.

X to ask permission.

أُذُنٌ *pl.* أَذَانٌ ear.

أَذِنَ *inf. I* permission.

أَذَى *IV* to injure, molest.

الْأُرْدُنُّ Jordan, the Jordan district.

أَرِسْطَاطَالِيْس Aristotle.

أَرْضٌ *fem.* earth, land, country, ground.

أَسَاسٌ foundation.

أَسَرَ *impf. i* to tie, bind, take captive.

أَسِيرٌ a captive.

الْإِسْكَندَرُ (the Arabs have treated the first two letters of the name as the article) Alexander.

الْإِسْكَندَرِيَّةُ Alexandria.

سِمَا *v. اسم*.

أَصْلٌ the root, the chief thing.

أَفَقٌ *pl.* آفَاقٌ region, district.

أَقَالِيمٌ *pl.* أَقَالِيمُ (xλῖμα) region, country.

أَكَدَ *V* to gather strength, become confirmed.

أَكَلَ *impf. u* to eat; to get to eat.

III to eat with some one.

أَكَلَ *inf. I* eating.

مَأْكُولٌ various kinds of food.

أَنَّ *part.* composed of أَنْ and لَا.

إِلَّا (= لَّا إِنْ) except
(§ 151).

الَّذِي *fem.* الَّتِي (§ 14a) he
that; whoso, who, which.

أَيْفَ *impf. a* to become
familiar with ...

VIII to be on intimate
terms, familiarly ac-
quainted (with).

أَلْف *pl.* آلَاف or أُلُوفُ
thousand.

أَلُوفٌ intimate, familiar.

أَلِمَ *impf. a* to feel, suffer
pain.

أَلِيمٌ painful.

إِلَهَ *pl.* آلِهَةٍ a god.

إِلَهَ *ex* آلِ *et* (the
true) God, Allah. عَبْدُ

اللَّهِ name of a man.

اللَّهُمَّ O God!

إِلَى *prep.* (§ 96b) towards,
in the direction of, to,
till, as far as.

أَمْ *part. interr. or.*

أَمْ *impf. u*, to direct one's
course by something.

أُمٌّ *pl.* أُمَّهَاتُ mother.

أُمَّةُ the people of a
(particular) religion,
nation, people.

أَمَرَ *impf. u, c. acc. p. et*
r. to order, command.

أَمْرٌ command, power;
affair, matter. صَاحِبُ

الْأَمْرِ commander.

أَمِيرٌ commander,
prince.

أَمِيرُ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ the prince
of the (true) believers,
commander of the faith-
ful = the Caliph.

أَمِنَ *impf. a, c. acc.* to be
safe from ...

IV to believe.

أَمَّاءُ *pl.* إِمَاءُ female slave.

أُمَيَّةُ Umayya (man's name).

أَنَّ (§ 100, 148*b*) that.

أَنَّ (§§ 147, 148*a*) that.

إِنْ (§§ 159, 160) if.

إِنَّ (§ 147) lo! truly, verily
(often untranslatable).

أَنَا *pron.* (§ 12) I.

أَنْتَ *pron.*; *fem.* أَنْتِ, thou.

أَنْسَ *impf. a* to have fami-
liar intercourse with.

إِنْسَانٌ *coll.* نَاسٌ man.

أَنْفٌ nose.

إِنَّمَا *part.* (composed of
إِنَّ and مَا) only (refers
in this sense usually to
last word of sentence),
but.

أَنْيَ *part.* whence? how?

أَهْبَ *V c.* لِي *rei* to equip
one's self, to be prepar-
ed (for any thing).

أَهْلٌ *coll.* one's kinsfolk,
family, people (cf. § 133),
inhabitants.

أَوَّلُ *fem.* أُولَى first (*determ.*
also beginning.)

أُولُو *gen. and acc.* أُولِي *v.* ذُو.

أَيْنَ *part.* where? whither?

إِلَى أَيْنَ whither? مِنْ

أَيْنَ (from) whence?
where?

آيَةٌ sign, revelation.

أَيَّهَا (§ 85) particle of ex-
clamation.

بِ *präp.* in, on, at; with, by
means of; for (of price),

by (in oaths). إِذَا هُوَ بِ

lo! there was . . .

بَابِلُ Babylon, Babylonia.

بَوَسَ *impf. u* to be brave,
courageous.

بَاسٌ courage, strength,
power.

بَحْرٌ sea, great river.

بَدَأَ *impf. a* to begin.

بدل *II c acc.* to exchange,
alter, change.

X c. acc. et ب to take
something in exchange
for (something else).

بَرَحَ *impf. a* to go away,
cease.

بَشَرَ *II. c acc. pers. et ب*
r. to tell some one
something as a piece of
good news.

بَصَرَ or بَصَّرَ to glance,
perceive; to understand
something thoroughly.

أَبْصَارُ *pl. بَصَرٌ* glance,
intelligence.

بَطَرٌ to come too late.

IV to delay.

X to find that sthg.
comes too late.

بَطْنٌ belly; bottom (of a
valley).

بَطْنَةٌ repletion.

بَوَاطِينُ *pl. بَاطِنٌ* the
lowest part; the heart
or secret thoughts of
a person.

بَعَثَ *impf. a* to arouse,
awaken; to send.

بَعَدَ *impf. u or بَعِدَ impf.*
a to be distant, far off.
VI to be far distant
from each other.

بَعْدَ *prep.* after, after
the departure, death
of . . . مِنْ بَعْدِ after
the death of.

بَعْضُ one (§ 133), part,
portion; some (of).

بَغِضَ *impf. a* to hate.

بُغْضٌ hatred.

بُغْضَةٌ *id.*, state of
being hated.

بَغْضَاءُ hatred.

بَغَى *impf. i* to seek, strive.

- VII to be necessary, meet, behoove.
- بُقْرَاطُ Hippocrates.
- بَقِيَ *impf. a* to remain, remain over, continue in life.
- بَقَاؤُ *inf.*
- أَبُو بَكْرٍ Abū Bekr, name of the first Caliph.
- بَكَى *impf. i* to weep.
- بَلَدٌ *pl.* بِلَادٌ country, village (*plur. coll. country*).
- بَلَغَ *impf. u, c. acc.* to reach, attain to; to come to one's ears.
- بِلْقِيسُ Bilkis, queen of Sheba.
- بَلَا *impf. u* to try, afflict.
- بَلَى *part.* certainly; nay, on the contrary.
- بِمَ (*ex* بِمَا) wherewith? by what means?
- بَنَى *impf. i* to build.
- بِنَاءٌ *inf.*
- أَبْنُ (§ 90 *b*, بَنُ § 6 *f. 2*; 126) *pl.* أَبْنَاءُ son.
- بِنْتُ ابْنَةٍ (§ 90 *i*) daughter.
- بَهَائِمٌ *pl.* بَهِيمَةٌ animal, a brute beast.
- بَابٌ *pl.* أَبْوَابٌ gate, door.
- بَيْتٌ *pl.* بُيُوتٌ, أُبْيَاتٌ house, family.
- بَيْتُ الْأَمَالِ treasury.
- بَاعَ *impf. i* to sell, buy.
- بَيَّعَ *inf.* *I* selling, sale.
- بَانَ *med.* بَانَ *IV* to be evident.
- بَيْنَ (§ 114) *prep.* between. ... بَيْنَ يَدَيَّ *prop. bet. the hands of* before, in presence of.
- بَيْنَا *conj.* with a nom. sentence: while, whilst.
- بَيِّنَةٌ evidence, proof.

قَابُوتٌ *masc.* coffin.

تَبَّ *X* to be well arranged,
be in good order.

تَبِعَ *impf. a, c. acc.* to follow.

IV c. 2 acc. to make
sthg. follow, to attach
sthg. to, some one.

VIII to follow, en-
deavour to aquire.

تَحْتَ *prep.* under. مِنْ

تَحْتِ *id.*

تُرَابٌ earth, morsel of
earth.

تَرَكَ *impf. u* to aban-
don, leave, give up,
omit.

تَقْوَى (cf. وقى) *fem.* (or.
تَقْوَى *msc.*) piety.

تِلْكَ *fem.* (§ 13 c) that
(woman).

تَلْمِيذٌ *pl.* تَلَامِيذٌ pupil,
disciple.

تَمَّ *impf. i* to be finished.

تَمَامٌ perfect.

تَمْرَةٌ *nom. unit.* a date.

التَّوْرَةُ (§ 2 d note.) the
Torah (five books of
Moses).

تَأَرَّ *X* to ask help in se-
curing (blood) revenge.

تَثَبَّتَ *impf. u* to be or stand
firm, to be fixed.

IV to fix, establish.

ثَابِتٌ *Elat.* أَثْبَتَ con-
stant, fixed, firm.

تَكَلَّ *impf. a*, to lose a child
(*acc.*) by death (said of
a mother).

ثَلَاثٌ *fem.* ثَلَاثَةٌ three.

ثَلَاثَ عَشْرَةَ thirteen.

ثُمَّ *adv.* thereupon, then.

ثَنَى *impf. i* to bend.

X to make an ex-
ception of.

⁹ثَوْب garment.

⁹جَاش strength of character.

⁹جَدِيد new.

⁹جَدَى kid.

⁹جَدَب VIII to draw to oneself.

⁹جَرَّ *impf.* u to drag, pull.

⁹جَرَى *impf.* i to run, flow.

⁹جَارِيَة pl. جَوَارِ (§ 89)

female slave, young girl.

⁹جَزِيرَة island; ⁹الْجَزِيرَة Meso-
potamia.

⁹جَزَى *impf.* i to reward,
requite.

III to pray God to re-
quite some one for sthg.

⁹جَسَد the body.

جَعَلَ to place; make, pre-
pare; c. 2 *acc.* to make
to be sthg.; to begin
(§ 99 note a).

جَفَّ *impf.* i to become dry.

جَفَا *impf.* u to be rude.

جَفَاة *inf.* tyranny.

جَلَّ *impf.* i to be great,
powerful, exalted.

⁹جَلِيل great, illustrious,
sound (in judgment).

⁹جَلَالَة might, majesty.

جَلَسَ *impf.* i to sit down;
c. ل to give an audience.

III c. *acc.* to sit down
by some one, sit with.

⁹جُلُوس *inf.* sitting.

⁹جُلَسَاء pl. جَلِيس

companion one sits
with.

⁹جَمْرَة a live coal.

جَمَعَ *impf.* a to bring to-
gether, gather, collect.

with 2 بَيْن to bring
about a meeting of two
parties, to have them
both come into one's
presence.

IV أَجَعَّ رَأْيُهُ عَلَى
(also without رَأْيُهُ and
with أَنْ) to decide upon,
resolve to do sthg.

VIII to come together,
to assemble.

جَمِيعٌ the whole, all
(جَمِيعًا as acc. of con-
dition: all together).

جَمَاعَةٌ a number,
party (of people).

جَمِيلٌ to be beautiful.

جَمِيلٌ beautiful, hand-
some, elegant, kind.

جَنَّ impf. u to cover over,
conceal.

جَنَّ pl. جَنَّاتٍ garden
of trees, Paradise.

جَنَانٌ interior, heart,
soul, character.

جِنُّ coll. demons, Jinn.

جِنِّي belonging to the
demons, a demon.

جَنَّبَ VIII to avoid.

جَنْبٌ side. فِي جَنْبٍ
in comparison with.

جَنَازَةٌ pl. جَنَائِزُ corpse,
funeral bier.

جَهَدَ impf. a to take trouble
about sthg., exert one's
self.

III to fight, do battle,
esp. w. unbelievers i. e.
non-Moslems.

جَهَلَ impf. a to be igno-
rant. جَهَالَةٌ inf.

جَاهِلٌ pl. جَاهِلُونَ igno-
rant.

جَاهِلِيَّةٌ the state of
ignorance, i. e. (pre-
islamic) heathenism.

جَهَنَّمَ hell.

جَاب med. و IV c acc.

pers. et إِلَى *r.* to give or grant an answer, an audience to some one, listen to, promise, conceded sth. to one, comply with his request.

X to hear, in the sense of answer (a petition).

جَادَ *med.* و. to be generous.

جَاَزَ *med.* و. *c. acc.* to pass by.

III c. acc. to pass beyond, exceed, transgress.

جَاعَ *med.* و. to be hungry.

جَوْعَةٌ (*nom. unit.* § 73 *c*) hunger.

جَاءَ *med.* ي. *c. acc.* to come.

c. بِ to bring.

جَعَى *inf.*

جَيْشٌ army.

حَبَّ *IV* to love.

حُبٌ love.

حَبِيبٌ (*elat. أَحَبُّ c.*

إِلَى *pro dativ. pers.*) *pl.*

أَحِبَّاءٌ dear to some one, beloved, friend.

حَبَّةٌ love, friendship.

حَبَشِيٌّ Abyssinian.

حَبَا *impf. u c. acc. pers. et* بِ *rei* to present some one with sth.

حَتَّى until; so that; for the purpose of; (*sometimes* = finally).

حَجَّ *impf. u* to make the pilgrimage to Mecca.

حَجَّجَ *pl.* حَجَّجَةٌ the pilgrimage to M.

حُجَّةٌ *pl.* حُجَجٌ good reason or excuse.

حَكَبَ *impf. a* to prevent, exclude.

حِجَابٌ curtain, veil.

- حَاجِبٌ porter, gate-keeper, chamberlain.
- حَدَّثَ *impf. u* to be new.
II c. acc. pers. to inform, relate.
X to newly adopt, get sthg. new.
- حَدِيثٌ ^s a story, narrative (applied esp. to the traditions respecting Muhammed).
- حَذَرَ *impf. a, c. acc. vel* مِنْ to be on one's guard against . . .
- حَذَرٌ ^s *inf.*
- حَذِيقَ *impf. a* to be clever, skilled.
- حَرَّرَ (حَرَرْتُ) *impf. a* to be free.
- حَرٌّ ^{pl.} free, noble.
- حَرَبَ *III* to make war upon, fight with some one.
VI to carry on war with each other.
- حَرَدَ *impf. i* to strive eagerly after.
- حَرْدٌ ^s eagerness, zeal, anger.
- حَرَضَ *II c. على r.* to incite (to), stir up (to).
- حَرَقَ *IV* to burn, singe.
- حَرَكَ *II* to move, to stir up, agitate.
- حَرَّمَ *impf. u, c. على* to be forbidden to one, to be legally prohibited one.
II to pronounce unlawful, declare to be forbidden, to prohibit.
- حَزَنَ to be troubled, sad.
IV to trouble, make sad.
- حَسَبَ *impf. u* to reckon.
 حِسَابٌ reckoning.
- حَسَدَ *impf. u* to envy.
- حَسَنَ *impf. u* to be beautiful, good.
IV to do good.

X to find to be good.

⁹حُسْن beauty, goodness.

: أَحْسَن *elat.* beautiful, good.

⁹حَشَم *coll.* suite, servants, escort.

حَضَرَ *impf. u, c. acc. pers.*
vel عَلَى to be present with or at.

IV to bring forward, esp. to bring before a sovereign or ruler.

VIII c. acc. to come upon one (said of death).
Pass. to be near to death.

حَفَّ *impf. u* to surround.

حَفَرَ *impf. i* to dig.

VIII to dig for one's self.

حَفِظَ *impf. a* to take care of, to guard, to be attentive.

VIII c. ب r. to take care, give heed.

حَقَّ *impf. i* to be right.

حَقُّ truth, certainty; right, claim.

حَقَّرَ *impf. u* to be despised.
X to despise.

⁹حَقِير despised.

حَكَمَ *impf. u* to decide, give judgement.

⁹حِكْمَة wisdom.

⁹حَكِيم *pl.* حُكَمَاء wise, learned.

⁹حَاكِم *pl.* حُكَّام governor, ruler, judge.

حَكَى *impf. i* to relate.

حَلَّ *impf. u* to loosen, untie; *impf. i* to be allowed.

IV or *X* to pronounce sthg. allowed, declare lawful, to allow.

حَلَّى *V* to adorn one's self.

حَمَّ (1. pers. حَمَيْتُ) *impf. a.*
to be hot.

حُمَّى *fem.* fever.

حَمَامَةٌ pigeon.

حَمَدَ *impf. i* to praise.

مُحَمَّدٌ Muḥammed (the
praised one).

حَمَقَ *impf. u* to be foolish.

أَحْمَقُ foolish, stupid.

حَمَلَ *impf. i* to load, carry;

bring; transport. *c.* عَلَى

to attack; *c. acc. pers.*

et عَلَى *r.* to make s. o.

sit upon sthg.; to in-

cite to some action.

حَنِتَ to commit sin.

√ to purify one's self
from sin.

حَنَطَ *II* to embalm.

أَلْأَحْنَفُ al-Aḥnaf, (a man's
name).

أَخْرَجَ *IV* (§ 44) *med.* حَاجَ

note b) *c.* إِلَى to compel.

VIII c. إِلَى to require,
be in need of.

حَاجَةٌ *c.* بِ need, want;

c. إِلَى request.

حَوْلَ *prep.* round, round
about.

حَالٌ state, condition,
situation.

حَوَى *impf. i*, to gather
together, take posses-
sion (of everything).

حَيَّ *impf. § 49 c.* to live.

حَيَّ tribe, clan.

حَيْرَةٌ life.

خَبَثَ *impf. u* to be bad,
wicked.

خَبِيثٌ bad, vile,
vicious, profligate.

خَبَرَ *II c. 2 acc.* to relate,
tell some one sthg.

VIII to test, try,
prove.

- ⁹اَخْبَارُ *pl.* ⁹خَبَرُ information, news, affair.
⁹خَيْر well informed, wise.
⁹خَبَزَ *impf. i* to make bread, to bake.
⁹خُبْز a cake of bread, bread.
⁹خَتَمَ *impf. i* to seal up, put one's seal to.
⁹خَدِيجَة Hadīḡa (Muhammed's first wife).
⁹خَدَمَ *impf. u* to serve.
⁹خِدْمَة *inf.*
⁹خَدَمَ *coll.* (the staff of) servants.
⁹خَادِم a servant.
⁹خَرَّ *impf. i* to prostrate one's self, to fall down.
⁹خَرَجَ *impf. u* to go out, come out, go out from, depart from.
⁹IV to bring forth or forward, to produce, to expel.
⁹X bring out, draw out.
⁹خَرَجَ tribute.
⁹خَرَسَ *impf. a* to be dumb.
⁹خَرَقَ *impf. i* to make a hole in, to pierce.
⁹VII to have a hole put through, be pierced.
⁹VIII to break through, flow through.
⁹خَزَنَ *impf. u* to store up.
⁹خَزَائِنُ *pl.* خَزَانَة treasure, treasure-house.
⁹خَشِيَ *impf. a, c. acc. r.* to fear sthg.
⁹خَصَّ *impf. u* to be some one's special property.
⁹خَاصَّ, *coll.* خَاصَّة an intimate friend; persons of distinction.
⁹خَضَبَ *impf. i* to dye (esp. the hair).

^سخَضِب dyed.
 خَضِر IX to be or become
 green.

خَطِي *impf. a* to sin.
 الْحَطَّابُ al-Hattāb (a man's
 name).

خَف *impf. i* to be light
 (opp. of heavy).

خَفِيف *el.* أَخَف light.

خَلَد *impf. u* to be ever-
 lasting, to remain.

خَلَس VIII to appropriate
 to oneself secretly.

خَلَص II *c. acc. pers. et*
 مِنْ to rescue, to free.

مَخْلَص escape, way of
 escape.

خَلَط VIII *prop.* to become
 commingled; to come
 on (said of the darkness
 in which objects can
 no longer be disting-
 uished).

خَلَف *impf. u* to be behind,
 to succeed.

II to leave behind.

خَلِيفَة *pl.* خُلَفَاء Ca-
 liph.

خَلَق *impf. u* to create,
 form.

خَلَق 1) one's out-
 ward form; 2) *coll.*
 people.

أَخْلَاق *pl.* خُلُق one's
 (natural) disposition,
 character, mental and
 moral traits.

خَمَد *impf. u* to go out (of
 fire and light).

خَمَرَ to ferment.

خَمْر *fem.* fermented
 drink, wine.

خَاف *med.* و (§ 42 d; 44)
impf. a to fear.

II to put in fear.

خَوْف fear.

خَار *med.* ي to be good.

VIII to choose, select
for one's self.

خَيْرٌ (also as *elat.*) good
(adj. and noun), pro-
sperity.

خَالَ *med.* II to imagine
something.

دَارًا Darius.

دَبَّ *impf.* i to walk slowly.

دَابَّةٌ *pl.* دَوَابٌّ beast of
burden and for riding.

دَبَّرَ IV to turn one's back,
go away.

دَخَلَ *c. acc.* to enter, to
come; *c.* عَلَى to come to
see one, to consummate
marriage with (*coire*);

c. بَيْنَ to interfere.

IV to bring into, in-
troduce.

دُخُولٌ *inf.* I.

دَاخِلٌ entering, future,
next.

دُرٌّ *coll., nom. unit.* دُرَّةٌ,
pearl.

دَرَكَ IV to attain, reach,
comprehend.

دِرْهَمٌ *pl.* دِرَاهِمٌ a dirhem,
a silver coin.

دَرَى *impf.* i to know.

IV *caus.*

دَعَا *impf.* u to call, to call
upon, invoke; *c.* ب to
pray to God for some-
thing, to call to one's
aid, to name; *c. acc. et*

إِلَى to induce s. o. to do
sthg., invite, summon.

VI to call to one an-
other, *c.* بِ to bring a
complaint against . . .

دَعْوَةٌ prayer.

دَفَعَ *impf.* a to push; hand
over, deliver up.

دَنَا *impf.* u, *c.* مِنْ to come
near.

- ^٥دَنِي *elat.* اَدْنَى low, humble, trivial, near;
pl. اَدَانِ the nearest parts.
 دُنْيَا *fem.* world.
 دَاخَ *med.* و II to subdue.
 دَارَ *med.* و c. ل to surround.
 دَارَ *pl.* دُور dwelling-place, house, abode, court.
 دَامَ *med.* و to remain, continue, be durable.
 دُونَ *prep.* on this side of, below, beneath; other than, exclusively of, besides, before. مِّنْ دُونَ *id.*
 دَوَى *impf. a* to be indisposed.
 IV to treat medically.
 دَوَا medicine.
 دَانَ *med.* ع to be in subjection.
- دَيْنٌ debt.
 اَدْيَانُ *pl.* دِينِ religion.
 دِينَارٌ denar, a gold coin.
 دَا *pron.* (§ 13 a) this.
 مَا دَا (§ 15) what (then)?
 ذُئْبٌ wolf.
 ذَعَرَ *impf. a, c. acc.* to frighten.
 ذَكَرَ *impf. u, c. acc.* to think of, mention, name, speak of. *Inf.* ذَكَرٌ.
 ذَلَّ *impf. i* to be insignificant, feeble.
 ذَلِيلٌ miserable, feeble.
 ذَلِكْ *fem.* تِلْكَ *pron.* (§ 13 c) that.
 ذَهَبَ *impf. a* to go, go away.
 IV to cause to disappear.
 ذَهَبٌ gold.

رُ the (man) of, possessor
of cf. §§ 901, 133.

ذَاع *med.* ي to become
known, spread abroad.

IV to make public,
publish.

رَاس *pl.* رُوس head, the
chief thing.

رَاس *pl.* رُوس leader,
general.

رَأَى *impf.* يَرَى (§ 49 b)
to see, be of opinion,
think, believe, consider
advisable, *c. 2 acc.* to
regard or esteem a per-
son or thing as, hold
to be.

IV أَرَى *c. 2 acc.* to show.

رَأَى insight, counsel,
advice.

رَب lord, God.

رَبَط *impf.* u to tie, fasten.

أَرَبَط *elat.* رَبِط se-
curely fastened, firm.

رَباع *pl.* رِبَاع house, *pl.* real
estate.

الرَّبِيع ar-Rabī', (a
man's name).

أَرْبَع *fem.* أَرْبَعَة four.

رَجَعَ *impf.* i to turn back,
return.

رُجُوع *inf.*

أَرْجُل *fem. pl.* أَرْجُل foot,
leg.

رَجَال *pl.* رَجَال a man.

رَجَمَ *impf.* u to stone.

رَجِيم stoned, accursed.

رَجَا *impf.* u, *c. acc.* to hope
for sthg.

رَحَب to be wide, broad.

II c. ب to bid anyone
welcome (مَرْحَبًا).

رَجِمَ *impf.* a, *c. acc. pers.*

to have pity on, com-
passion for, some one.

VI to take compassion
on each other.

رَحْمَةٌ loving kindness
(esp. of God), deed of
kindness.

رَخِي fem. mill.

رَخَوُ vel *رَخِيَ* to be flaccid,
soft.

رَدَّ impf. *u* to bring back,
give back.

VIII to turn back.

رَدَّ inf. *I* giving back.

رَزَقَ impf. *u*, *c.* 2 *acc.* to
present, grant, furnish,
bless with, give food.

رِزْقٌ food (esp. as given
by Allah), sustenance.

مَرْزُوقٌ Marzūk, (man's
name).

رَسَلَ *IV* to send.

رَسُولٌ pl. *رُسُلٌ* mes-
senger, apostle (esp. of
God).

رَضَعَ *II* to set (of jewels),
inlay.

رَضِعَ impf. *a* to suck (at
the breast).

IV to give suck.

رَضِيَ impf. *a*, *c.* *acc.* to be
content with, acquiesce
in, take pleasure in.

رَضِيَ اللَّهُ عَنْهُ God be
gracious unto him!

IV to satisfy, render
content.

رَضَى inf. *I* pleasure,
delight (in sthg.).

رَعَدَ *VIII* to shake, tremble.

رَعَى impf. *a* to watch, tend.

رَاعٍ pl. *رُعَاةٌ* herdsman,
shepherd.

رَعِيَّةٌ pl. *رَعَايَا* subjects
(also *sing. coll.*).

مَرَاعٍ pl. *مَرَاعٍ* pasture-
ground.

رَغِبَ *impf. a* to have a strong craving for; *c.*

عَنْ to give up the craving for sthg., to shun, relinquish.

رَغِيفَ *pl. أَرْغَفَةٌ* (flat) cake.

رَفَعَ *impf. a* to raise, lift up (the voice); *c. إِلَى* to bring sthg. before the judge.

رَفِيعٌ high, noble.

رَفَقَ *IV c. ب* to be kind, gentle with . . .

مَرَفَقٌ *pl. مَرَفِقٌ* elbow.

رَقَّ *impf. i* to be or become thin, abject, mean.

رَقٌّ bondage, slavery.

رَقَعَ *impf. a* to mend, patch.

رُقْعَةٌ patch.

رَكِبَ *impf. a, c. acc.* to mount on horse-, camel-back &c., to ride.

رَكِبَ *inf.* stepping into, aboard (a ship).

رَمَضَانُ name of a month.

رَمَى *impf. i, c. ب* *r.* to throw, pelt with.

رَهَبَ *impf. a, c. acc. rei* to be afraid of sthg.

رَاهِبٌ monk.

رَاحَ *IV med. و, c. acc. et* to rid . . . of.

رِيحٌ (for رَوْحٌ) *fem.,*

pl. رِيَّاحٌ wind.

رَائِحَةٌ smell, scent.

رَادَ *med. و, IV c. acc.* to will, wish, intend, endeavour to.

رَامَ *med. و* to seek, desire, attack.

رَوَى *impf. i* to relate.

زَحَفَ *impf. a* to advance slowly.

زَرَعَ *impf. a* to sow.

- زَرْعٌ ^s coll. seed, green corn, green crop, different sorts of grain.
- زَعَزَعَ to shake violently.
II (reflexive).
- زَعَمَ ^s *impf. u* to assert, relate.
- زَفَّ ^s *impf. u* to conduct a bride to her husband's house.
- زَكَ ^s *ult.* , to increase, to be good, pure.
- زَكِيٌّ ^s *elat.* أَزْكَى pure, delicate, dainty.
- زَلَزَلَ to shake (trans.). II to shake (int.), tremble.
- زَمَّ ^s *impf. u* to fasten securely.
- زِمَامٌ ^s bridle (nose-rein).
- زَمَانٌ ^s time, space of time.
- زَهَا ^s *impf. u* to shoot up, to flourish, prosper.
- زَهْوٌ ^s *inf.*
- زَاجٌ ^s *med.* , II c. 2 *acc.* vel c. *acc.* et لِي vel لِي to marry some one to, join in wedlock; c. *acc.* to take in marriage.
V c. *acc.* reflex.
- زَارَ ^s *med.* , *impf. u* to visit.
زِيَارَةٌ ^s *inf.*
- زَالَ ^s *med.* , *impf. a* to cease.
زَوَالٌ ^s *inf.* cessation. Noon or afternoon.
- زَوَى ^s *impf. i* to remove, clear away.
- زَوَايَا ^s *pl.* زَاوِيَةٌ corner.
- زَادَ ^s *med.* يَ *impf. i*, c. 2 *acc.* to give more, to add to.
- زَايِدٌ ^s *inf.*; increase, addition.
- زَادَ ^s *part.* § 95 d; 99 a.
- سَبَرَ ^s *impf. a* to be or remain over.

- سَائِر remaining, the
 rest, all..
 سَأَلَ *impf. a, c. 2 acc. to*
ask one for sthg. c. acc.
pers. et عَنْ to enquire
for, ask respecting.
 سَائِل beggar.
 سَأَلَةٌ the asking, a
 question.
 سَبِيل *masc. or fem. way,*
right way, road.
 سِتٌّ *fem. سِتَّة six.*
 سَتَرَ *impf. u or i to hide,*
shield (e. g. from the
gossip of the people).
 سَجَدَ *impf. u, c. ل, to*
prostrate one's self
προσκυνεῖν.
 سُجُود *inf.*
 مَسْجِدٌ mosque.
 سَرَّ *IV c. إِلَى pers. to tell*
s. o. sthg. as a secret.
 سِرٌّ *pl. أَسْرَار secret.*
- سُرُج *pl. سُرُج saddle.*
 سَرَعَ *IV to be in haste, c.*
في to make haste with...
 سَرِيع, *elat. أَسْرَع,*
 quick, swift, speedy.
 سُرَاكَةٌ Surākā, (a man's
 name).
 سَطَحَ *impf. a to spread out.*
 سَطْحٌ the flat roof of
 eastern houses.
 سَاعِدٌ *pl. سَوَاعِدُ the fore-*
 arm.
 سَعَى *impf. i, c. ب vel في*
pers. to lodge informa-
tion against, denounce.
 سَفَرٌ *pl. أَسْفَار journey.*
 سَفِينَةٌ ship.
 سَكَتَ *impf. u to become*
 or be silent.
 سَكِرَ *impf. a to be or be-*
 come drunk.

سَكَارَى *pl.* سَكَارَانُ
drunk.

سَكَنَ *impf. u* to dwell, inhabit, rest, be quiescent.

سُكُونُ *rest, quiescence.*

سَكَّانُ *pl.* سَاكِنُ in-
habitant.

سَلَسَلَ to put in chains.

سَلَّطَ *impf. u* to be or become powerful.

II to make, install as ruler.

سُلْطَانُ عَلَى *c.* authority over, rule; ruler, sultan.

سَلِمَ *impf. a* to be whole, intact.

II to bestow health and prosperity; عَلَى *c.* to greet, salute.

IV c. لِلَّهِ to declare one's self resigned to to God; to become a Moslem.

سُلَّمُ ladder.

سَلَامُ immunity from ills, prosperity, welfare.

عَلَيْهِ السَّلَامُ peace be with him! (parenthetically placed after the names of high religious personalities).

سَلَامَةٌ peace and prosperity.

إِسْلَامُ (*inf. IV*) Islām.

سَمَّ *impf. u* to put poison into anything, to poison.

سَمُّ poison.

سَمِعَ *impf. a* to hear.

سَمَكٌ *pl.* أَسْيَكَةٌ fish.

سَمَا *II c. 2 acc. vel c. acc.*

et بِ to call by name, to give a name to.

إِسْمٌ (§ 56 a) name.

سَمَاوَاتُ heaven.

سَّنَّ *impf. u* 1) to sharpen,
2) ordain, institute.

سِّنَّ *tooth, age.*

سُنَّةٌ *pl. سُنَنٌ regulation,*
institution, tradition,
(of the Moslems).

سَنَدٌ *IV to support.*

سَنَةٌ *pl. nom. سِنُونٌ (§ 76 b;*
90 m) *year.*

سَهَرَ *impf. a to keep awake.*

سَهَرٌ *inf.*

سَاءَ *med. to be bad, wicked.*

IV to spoil, corrupt,
to do ill.

سَاخَ *med. و to sink into*
the ground.

سَادَ *med. و c. acc. to be-*
come lord, ruler, over...

سَوْدَاءُ *fem. سَوْدَاةٌ pl.*

سَوْدٌ *black.*

سَادَةٌ *pl. سَيِّدٌ lord,*

ruler, chief.

سَاعَةٌ *hour, short space*
of time, moment.

سَوَّفَ *part. § 95 d; 99 a.*

سَاقٍ *med. و to drive.*

أَسْوَاقٌ *pl. سُوقٌ mar-*
ket, bazaar, lane.

سَوَّى *VIII to be equal, alike,*
simultaneous with.

سَوَاءٌ *c. عَلَى (quite)*
the same, indifferent to.

سَارَ *med. سَى impf. i to jour-*
ney, go along, go. فِي أَثَرٍ
to follow one's track.

مَسِيرَةٌ *distance travel-*
led.

أَسْيَافٌ *pl. سَيْفٌ sword,*
sabre.

شَآمَ *VI to find a bad omen.*

شُومٌ *a bad omen.*

شَبَعَ *impf. a to be satiated.*

IV to satiate, satisfy.

شَبَهَ *II to compare.*

شَجَرَ *impf. u* to be intricate, intertwined.

شَجَرَةٌ *nom. unit.* شَجَرٌ tree, shrub.

شَدَّ *impf. u* to bind, tie.

II c. عَلَى to press hard on one.

VIII to become strong, powerful, heavy.

أَشَدُّ *elat.* شَدِيدٌ powerful; vehement.

شَرَّ (1. pers. شَرَرْتُ) *impf. a* to become bad.

أَشْرَارٌ *(elat. id.) pl.* شَرٌّ bad, wicked. Mischief, woe, war.

شَرِبَ *impf. a* to drink.

شَرَابٌ wine, strong drink.

شَرُفَ *impf. u* to be high.

IV to be high, lofty.

شَرَفٌ height, fame, nobility.

أَشْرَافٌ *pl.* شَرِيفٌ noble, aristocratic, respected.

شَرَقَ *impf. u* to rise (of the sun).

مَشْرِقٌ place of the sun's rising = the East.

شَرِكَ *impf. a c. acc.* to be one's companion.

شَرِكٌ net.

شَرِيكٌ companion, ally.

شَرَى *impf. i* to buy, sell.

VIII to buy, negotiate.

شَغِفَ *impf. a, c.* بِ pers. be deeply struck with.

شَفَاةٌ *pl.* شَفَاةٌ lip.

شَفَقَ *IV c.* عَلَى to be tenderly solicitous for...

شَكَرَ *impf. u* to thank, be thankful.

شَكَا *impf. u*, to complain.

VIII to complain.

شِمْتُ *II c. acc.* to say "God

bless you" to a person
(*e. g.* sneezing).

شَمْسٌ *fem.* sun.

شِمَالٌ left (hand or side).

شَهِدَ *impf. a c. acc.* to be
present at sthg., to wit-
ness, to give evidence.

III c. acc. to see, be
an eye-witness.

شَاهِدٌ *pl.* شُهُودٌ wit-
ness.

شَهَادَةٌ testimony,
guarantee, security, a
bearing testimony.

شَهْرٌ *pl.* أَشْهُرٌ month.

شَهَا *VIII* to desire, wish.

شَهْوَةٌ sensual desire,
appetite.

شَاةٌ *coll. nom. unit.* شَاةٌ
small cattle, sheep and
goats; *nom. unit.* a single
head of these.

شَارَ *med.* إِلَى *IV c.* to
point to.

Socin, Arabic Grammar.²

شَوَى *impf. i* to roast.

شَاءَ *med.* شَى *impf. a* to will,
wish.

شَيْءٌ a matter, thing,
something.

شَابَ *med.* شَى *to become*
gray-haired.

شَيْبٌ gray hairs.

شَاخَ *med.* شَى *to become*
an old man.

شَيْخٌ old man.

شَيْطَانٌ *pl.* شَيَْاطِينٌ devil,
Satan.

شَاعَ *med.* شَى *to spread a-*
broad, become public.

II to accompany, to
follow.

صَبَّ *impf. u* to pour, pour
out.

صَبَّحَ *impf. u* to be attrac-
tive, good-looking.

IV to enter the time of

early morning. *c. acc.* become sthg. early, soon.

⁹صَبَاحَةٌ beauty, loveliness.

⁹صَبَرَ *impf. i, c.* عَلَى to have patience with, to put up with, endure.

⁹صَبَغَ *impf. u or a* to dye.

⁹صَبَا *impf. u* to be foolish; youthful.

⁹صَبِيَّانَ *pl.* صَبِيَّ little boy.

⁹صَمَّ *impf. i* to be in good health, sound.

⁹صَحَّحَ *pl.* ⁹صَحَّاحٌ *elat.*

⁹أَصَمَّ right, correct.

⁹صَحِبَ *impf. a, c. acc.* to keep company with, have to do with.

III to take for companion.

X to take with one as an associate.

⁹أَصْحَابُ *pl.* صَاحِبٌ

associate; friend, companion; owner, inhabitant of (cf. § 133).

⁹صُفَّةٌ *pl.* صُفٌّ leaf.

⁹صَدَّ *impf. u* to turn away from, alienate.

⁹صَدَقَ *impf. u* to speak the truth, be truthful, sincere.

II to consider sthg. to be true, right, to believe one.

V c. عَلَى *pers. et rei* to give one sthg. as alms.

⁹أَصْدِقَاءُ *pl.* صَدِيقٌ friend.

⁹صَرَفَ *impf. i* to turn from.

VII to turn, go, away, return (home).

⁹صَاعِقَةٌ thunderbolt.

⁹صَغُرَ *impf. u,* to be small, little.

- ⁹صَغْر *inf.* littleness.
⁹صَف *impf. u* to place in a row, draw up.
VIII to arrange (themselves), to stand in a row.
⁹صَفْر *IX* to be yellow.
⁹أَصْفَر *pl. صُفْر* yellow.
⁹صَفَى *VIII* to choose.
⁹مُصْطَفَى man's name.
⁹صَلَّمَ *impf. a* to be good, be in order.
IV to put in order, set right.
⁹صَالِحَةٌ a pious action, good deed.
⁹صَلَا *II* to pray, perform divine service, to worship. صَلَّى اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ contracted to وَسَلَّم § 11.
⁹صَلَاةٌ ⁹صَلَاةٌ divine service, worship, prayer.
⁹صَمَتَ *impf. u* to be quiet.
- ⁹صُبُوتٌ silence.
⁹صَنَعَ *impf. a* to make, prepare, to do.
⁹صَهْرٌ *pl. أَصْهَارٌ* relation (by marriage).
⁹صَابَ *med. و IV* to befall, fall to one's share.
⁹مُصِيبَةٌ misfortune.
⁹صَوْتٌ voice.
⁹صُورَةٌ *pl. صُورٌ* figure, shape, form.
⁹صَوْمَعَةٌ cell.
⁹صَاحَ *med. ي* to cry out.
VI to shout at each other.
⁹صَادَ *med. ي* to hunt.
⁹صَيْدٌ *inf.* hunting, what is caught, game.
⁹صَارَ *med. ي, c. acc.* to become or be sthg.; to repair to.
II to cause to become; to appoint, to place.

ضَجَعَ *VIII* to lie on one's side.

ضُكِّي forenoon.

ضَرَبَ *impf. i* to strike, beat.

VIII refl. to beat against each other.

ضَرَبَ *inf. I* striking, beating.

ضَرْبَةٌ a single blow, a beating.

ضَعَفَ *impf. u* to be weak.

ضَعِيفٌ weak.

ضَلَّ *impf. i* to err.

ضَلَالَةٌ erring, error.

ضَمَّ *impf. u* to put close to, press against, to gather.

ضَاءَ *med. و* to be clear, bright, shining.

ضَوْءٌ light, brightness.

ضِيَاءٌ brightness.

ضَيْفٌ *pl.* أَضْيَافٌ guest.

ضَاقَ *med. ي IV* to press hard, hem in.

ضَيْقٌ straits, distress.

طَأَّطَأَ to sink (trans.).

طَبَّ *impf. u or i* to treat medically.

طَبِيبٌ physician, doctor.

طَبَقَ *IV* to cover with a lid.

VII to be covered up.

طَحَنَ *impf. a* to grind.

طَحِينٌ flour.

طَرَدَ *impf. u* to chase away, drive away, pursue.

طَرَّقَ *IV* to cast down one's eyes.

طَعِمَ *impf. a* to eat.

IV to feed (trans.).

طَعَامٌ *inf. I* eating, taste, a meal, food, a (particular) dish.

طَلَبَ *impf. u* to seek, search after; wish for.

طَلَبٌ *inf. I* seeking, a search.

أَبُو طَالِبٍ Abū Tālib (Muhammed's uncle).

طَلَعَ *impf. u* to stand up, get up, rise (of the sun).

VIII c. عَلَى to look at, see.

طَلَّقَ II c. *acc.* to set free, give divorce to.

IV to set free.

VII to go away, depart.

طَمِعَ *impf. a* to strive to obtain, to covet, sthg.

طَمَعٌ *inf.* covetousness, greed.

طَهَّرَ *impf. u* to be clean, pure.

II to cleanse, purify.

طَاعَ *med. و* to obey, be compliant.

IV id.

طَاعَةٌ *inf.*, obedience, subjection.

طَافَ *med. و* to go round.

طُوفَانٌ flood.

طَالَ *med. و IV* to lengthen, protract; to be long over sthg.

طَوِيلٌ long, lasting long.

طَوَى *impf. i* to fold, fold up or together.

طَابَ *med. ي* to be good, pleasant, excellent.

طَيِّبٌ *Elat. طَيِّبٌ* good, excellent, nice to the taste, sweet (scent).

طَيِّبَةٌ something good, a dainty.

طَارَ *med. ي* to fly.

طَان *med.* *II* to plaster
with clay or mud (طِين).

ظَلَمَ *impf. i* to treat unfairly,
injure, do wrong to.

IV to grow dark.

ظُلْمَةٌ darkness.

ظَلَامٌ darkness, dusk.

ظَلَامٌ one that acts injuriously,
oppressor.

ظَهَرَ *impf. a* to appear, to
come in sight.

IV to bring to sight.

ظَهْرٌ the back, upper
part, surface.

أَظْهَرَ *elat.* ظَاهِرٌ prominent,
striking.

عَبَدَ *impf. u* to worship.

عَبْدٌ *coll.* عَبِيدٌ slave,
servant; *pl.* عِبَادٌ man
(as the servant of God).

عَبْدُ اللَّهِ 'Abdallāh (a
man's name).

عِبَادَةٌ adoration, worship.

عَبَرَ *impf. u* to cross, to
pass along (a certain
road).

عِبْرَةٌ an example (from
which to take warning).

عَبَسَ *impf. i* to look stern,
black-browed.

الْعَبَّاسُ al-'Abbās,
(man's name).

عَبَاءَةٌ mantle, cloak.

عَتَقَ *impf. i* to be or be-
come free.

IV to free, liberate.

عَتَقٌ nobility, high
rank.

عَتِيقٌ free, noble, old.

عُتْمَانُ 'Uṭmān, (man's
name).

عَجِبَ *V c.* مِنْ to wonder
at sthg.

- عَجَبَةٌ *pl.* عَجَائِبُ *coll.* the Arabs.
 a wonder, miracle.
- عَجَلَ *II* to expedite.
 عَدَّ *impf. u, c. 2 acc.* to
 count, reckon as . . .
- عَدَسٌ lentils.
- عَدَلَ *impf. i* to be just.
 عَادِلٌ just, impartial.
- عَدِمَ *impf. a, c. acc.* to be
 without sthg.
- عَدَا *V c. acc.* to cross over,
 go beyond.
III c. acc. to treat
 as an enemy, attack.
- عَدُوٌّ *pl.* أَعْدَاءُ enemy.
 عَدَاوَةٌ enmity.
- عَذَبَ *II* to torture, punish.
 عَذَابٌ torture, punish-
 ment.
- عَذَرَ *VIII* to excuse one's
 self.
 عُذْرٌ excuse (in the
 sense of a refusal).
- عَرَبٌ *coll.* the Arabs.
 أَعْرَابِيٌّ a Bedouin.
- عَرَضَ *impf. i* to interfere
 with, thwart, offer.
V to come in one's way.
- عَرَفَ *impf. i* to perceive,
 know, recognize.
- مَعْرِفَةٌ knowledge.
- مَعْرُوفٌ a favour, kind
 deed.
- الْعِرَاقُ name of the count-
 ry known to the an-
 cients as Babylonia.
- عَزَّ *impf. i* to be strong,
 powerful (often paren-
 thetically after الله:
 he is powerful).
- عَزِيزٌ *elat.* أَعَزُّ strong,
 powerful.
- عَزَلَ *impf. i* to depose.
VIII to take one's
 leave, be deposed.

عَزَى *c. acc. et عن rei II*
to console, comfort.

عَسَكْرٌ *pl. عَسَاكِرُ* a body
of troops, army.

عَشَّ *II* to build a nest
(عُش).

عَشَرَ *III* to associate with.

عَشْرٌ *fem. عَشْرَةٌ* ten.

عَشَائِرُ *pl. عَشِيرَةٌ*
tribe, tribesmen.

مَعْشَرٌ assembly, the
whole; those present.

عَصَى *impf. i, c. acc.* to
resist, not obey some
one.

مَعْصِيَةٌ *pl. مَعَايِ* re-
sistance, revolt, sin.

عَضْرٌ member.

عَطَسَ *impf. i or u* to
sneeze.

عَطا *IV c. acc. pers. et rei*
to give sthg. to some
one.

عَطِيَّةٌ *pl. عَطَايَا* gift,
present.

عَظُمَ *impf. u* to be or be-
come great, large; *c. عَلَى*
to appear to be great,
insolent.

عَظُمَ *inf.* greatness.

أَعْظَمَ *elat. عَظِيمٌ* great,
of great account, august.

عَقَارِيْتُ *pl. عَقْرِيتُ* a
wicked, clever demon.

عَفَا *impf. u, c. عَنْ* to
pardon (a person), be
gracious to.

عَقْرَبٌ *pl. عَقَارِبُ* scor-
pion, a bitter enemy.

عَقَلَ *impf. i. or عَقِلَ impf. a*
to be intelligent.

عَقْلٌ intellectual abi-
lity, intelligence; pru-
dence.

عَلَّ *VIII* to fall ill.

عِلَّة illness, sickness.

عَلِمَ *III* to treat.

عَلِمَ *impf.* a perceive,
know, learn (that). *c.* بِ

to know something.

IV c.2 acc. to acquaint,
inform one of sthg.

عِلْمٌ *pl.* عُلُوم know-
ledge, science.

عَلَامَةٌ mark, sign.

عَالِمٌ *elat.* أَعْلَمُ *pl.*

عِلْمَاء possessing know-
ledge, a learned man,
savant.

عَلَّامٌ very knowing.

مُعَلِّمٌ teacher.

عَلَا *impf.* u to be high.

VI to be highly exal-
ted, esp. parenthetically
after *Allah*: He is exalted
(§ 23).

عَلَى *prep.* (§ 96 b) over,
on the ground of, on,

upon, at; with verbs of
entering: *chez*; against,
in the direction of, to-
wards. هُوَ عَلَى شَيْءٍ to be
in a state of, to be ac-
customed to sthg.

أَعْلَى *elat.* عَلِيٌّ high;
also man's name 'Ali.

عَالِيٌّ *elat.* أَعْلَى high,
prominent, excellent.

عَمَّ *impf.* u to be or become
common; to increase.

عَمُّ uncle (on the father's
side); ابْنُ أَلْعَمِّ cousin.

عَامَّةٌ the common
people (plebs), large
crowd.

عَمَرَ *II* to furnish, provide
handsomely.

عُمْرٌ life; in the oath
لِعُمْرِي by my life.

عُمَرُ 'Omar (man's
name).

عَمْرُو (§ 90n pronounce
'Amrun) 'Amr (a man's
name).

عَمِلَ *impf. a* to do, make,
construct.

X to employ one for
for some purpose, to
apoint governor.

أَعْمَالُ *pl.* عَمَلُ work,
act, deeds of piety,
province.

عَمَّالُ *pl.* عَمَّالُ a func-
tionary, vicegerent,
prefect.

عَمِيَ *impf. a* to be or be-
come blind.

IV to disfigure, make
unrecognisable.

أَعْمَى *pl.* عَمًى blind.

عَنْ *prep.* away from, from
(hinderance); about,
concerning; according
to, on the authority of.

عِنَبُ *pl.* أَعْنَابُ vine,
grape.

عِنْدَ *prep.* by the side of,
near, with, by (one).

عَاجَ *med.* و *IX* to be bent,
crooked.

عَادَ *med.* و to return, *c.*
acc. to visit.

عَادَ *med.* و *c.* ب to take
refuge in . . .

X to ask for protec-
tion; to say: أَعُوذُ بِاللَّهِ
(Surah 114) "I take
refuge in God", *c.* مِنْ
from.

عَانَ *med.* و *IV c. acc.*
to help, support.

X to help one's self,
to help on, succour.

مُعَاوِيَةُ Mu'āwiyā, the first
Omayyad Caliph (661
—679).

عِيسَى Jesus.

- عَاشَ *med.* ع. to live.
 عَيْشَةٌ ⁹ life, way of living, (§ 64 c).
 عَدَا *ult.* و. to come early.
 V to breakfast, to refresh oneself early.
 غَرَبَ *impf.* u to set (of the sun).
 مَغْرِبٌ ⁹ place where the sun sets, the West.
 غَرِقَ *IV* to make to sink, drown.
 غَزَالٌ gazelle.
 غَسَلَ *impf.* i to wash.
 غَشَى *impf.* a to cover.
 غَاشِيَةٌ ⁹ pl. غَوَاشٍ saddle-cover, horse-cloth.
 غَضَبَ *impf.* i c. acc. rei et مِن p. to take sthg. from one unlawfully.
 غَضِبَ *impf.* a to get angry, be angry with.
- غَفَرَ *impf.* i c. لِي pers. to pardon, forgive.
 مَغْفِرَةٌ ⁹ pardon, forgiveness.
 غَفَلَ *impf.* u to neglect.
 غَفْلَةٌ ⁹ inattention, negligence.
 غَلَبَ *impf.* i to be all-powerful, victorious.
 غَلَقَ *II et IV* to bolt, bar, shut.
 غُلَامٌ ⁹ pl. غِلْمَانٌ a young man, lad, slave.
 غَنَى *impf.* a, c. عَنْ to be rich.
 أَغْنِيَاءُ ⁹ pl. غَنَى rich.
 غَنَى *II* to sing.
 غَارَ *med.* و. to penetrate far into, go down.
 غَارٌ ⁹ a cave.
 غَامَصَ *med.* و. to dive.

غَاب *med.* ى to be absent,

c. عَنِ to disappear.

غَيْب *pl.* غُيُوب a secret.

غَيْبَة absence, stay among strangers.

مَغِيب *inf.* sunset.

غَار *med.* ى II to alter, change.

غَيْر (§ 133 with gen.) another, somethg. different from, no (with neg.), except; before substs., adjs. and parts. it renders the converse, like our prefix *un-* or *in-*; مِنْ

غَيْر without.

ف *conj.* (§§ 95 e; 152; 161) and so, then, and.

فَتَح *impf.* a to open. VII to open (intr.).

VIII to conquer, acquire for one's self.

فَتَح *inf.* I.

مَفَاتِيحُ *pl.* مِفْتَاح key.

فَتَن *VIII c.* ب to be struck with emotion, bewitched, by.

فَتَى a young man.

فَتَاة a young woman, girl.

فَجَرَ *impf.* u to transgress, act viciously.

فَجَّار *pl.* فُجَّار evil-doer.

فَخَّر *impf.* a to boast of, glory in.

III to give oneself airs towards some one.

فَخَّر *inf.* I.

فَرَّ *impf.* i to flee.

الْفَرَسُ the Persians.

فَارِسُ Persia.

فَرَس a horse, esp. of a good breed.

فَرَش *impf.* u to spread out.

فِرَاشٌ *pl.* فُرُشٌ carpet,
cushion, bed.

فَرَضَ *impf. i, c.* عَلَى *pers.*
to impose sthg. on one
as a duty.

فَرَّغَ *imp. u, c.* مِنْ to be
empty, disengaged,
finished with sthg.

فَرَّقَ *impf. u,* to separate,
part.

III to leave.

VIII to become sepa-
rated, to disperse.

فَزِعَ *impf. a* to get a fright,
be afraid.

فَسَدَ *impf. u* to become
bad, wicked.

فَسَادَ *inf.* the doing
of mischief, evil, wrong.

فَشَا *IV* to divulge, publish,
betray.

فَضَلَ *impf. u* to be or
remain over, to be ex-
cellent.

فَضْلٌ bounty, kind-
ness, favour.

فَطِنَ *impf. a* to be clever.

فُطْنَةٌ intelligence.

فَعَلَ *impf. a* to do.

فِعَالٌ *pl.* فَعْلٌ deed,
act, mode of action.

فَقَدَ *V* to miss, enquire
for, some one.

فُقِيرٌ *pl.* فُقَرَاءٌ poor.

فَكَ *VII* to free oneself,
to become disattached.

فَكَرَ *V* to reflect.

فَوَاكِهُ *pl.* فَاكِهَةٌ fruit.

فَلَحَ *IV* to become happy,
successful, to prosper.

فُلْكَ, فُلُكُ a (large) ship.

فُلَانٌ so and so, Mr. Such-
and- Such.

فَلَوَاتٌ *pl.* فَلَاةٌ desert.

فَمٌ mouth (§ 90 o).

فَاتٌ *med. و c. acc.* to pass

by, to expire (of the time for some one to do sthg.).

فَاقَ *med.* و. to excel, be excellent.

فَوْقَ *prep.* above, higher than.

فُوهَ (§ 900 *pl.* أَفْوَاهُ) mouth.

فِي *prep.* in, into, at, on, among, accompanied by, by; with (before a quality), in relation to, with regard to.

فَيْلَسُوفٌ *pl.* فَلَايِفَةٌ philosopher.

قَبَحَ *X* to find detestable.

قُبُورٌ *pl.* قُبُورٌ grave.

قَبَضَ *impf. i* to take hold of, take into one's hand.

قَبِلَ *impf. a* to accept.

IV to approach, come nearer; be susceptible to.

V to receive.

X to be opposite.

مِنْ قَبْلُ *adv. vel* قَبْلُ

before.

قَبْلَ *prep.* before.

قَبْلَ *prep.* in the presence of, in the

sphere of . . . مِنْ قَبْلِهِ

on his side, of his party.

قَبُولُ *inf.* *I* acceptance.

قَبِيلَةٌ tribe, family (in wide sense).

مُقَابَلَةٌ comparison, relation.

قَتَلَ *impf. u* to kill, make away with.

III c. acc., to fight with, fight.

قَتْلُ *inf.* *I* killing, execution.

قَتِيلٌ *pl.* قَتَلَى killed.

أَبُو قُحَاةَ Abū Qūḥāfa, the father of Abū Bekr.

قَدَر (§ 98 e, 99 d) *particle*.

قَدَرَ *impf. i* to be able to, can, could (also with *folg. impf.*). *c.* عَلَى to have power over.

IV c. عَلَى to make one more powerful than...

قَدْرٌ ⁹ worth, value, due, power. بِقَدْرِ in relation to, in proportion to...

قَدِمَ *impf. a*, to advance, approach.

II to place before, set sthg. before s. o.

IV to approach.

V to go before, precede.

قَدِيمٌ ⁹ *pl.* قَدَمَاءُ ⁹ ancient, old, of a past time.

قَرَّ *impf. i* to stay, persevere.

IV to render stable, *c.*

رَبَّ ⁹ *rei* to confess to sthg.

X to stand fast, hold good.

قَرَارٌ ⁹ continuance, rest.

قَرَأَ *impf. a* to read.

قُرْآنٌ ⁹ Kūr'ān or a passage therefrom.

قَرُبَ *impf. u* to be near at hand.

II to place near, to take as intimate friend, to offer, set before one.

VI to be close together.

قَرِيبٌ ⁹ *pl.* أَقْرَبَاءُ; *elat.*

قَرِيبٌ ⁹ *pl.* أَقَارِبُ (subst.). *c.* مِنْ near, close(to); related.

قُرَيْشٌ ⁹ the tribe of the Kuraish, the Kuraishites.

قُرَيشِيٌّ ⁹ *nom. rel. a* Kuraishite.

قَرْنٌ ⁹ horn; ذُو الْقَرْنَيْنِ the two horned (Alexander bicornis).

قَرْيَةٌ *pl.* قُرَى place, village.

قَسَا *ult.* و to be hard.

قَسَمَ *IV* to swear.

قَصَدَ *impf. i.* to make for, repair to, some one.

مَقْصِدٌ *the end of a journey.*

قَصَرَ to be short.

VI to shorten one's self, to shrink.

قَصْرٌ *pl.* قُصُور castle, fortress.

قَضَ *VII* to let one's self down, dart down (of a bird).

قَضَى *impf. i.* to decide judicially; to accomplish, finish; to discharge a claim.

VII to be finished, brought to an end.

قَضَاءٌ *inf. I* payment.

قَطَّ *adv.* ever, with negat. never.

قَطَعَ *impf. a* to cut off.

VII c. عَن to become parted from; to cease.

قَعَدَ *impf. u* to seat one's self, sit down.

قُفْلٌ *pl.* أَقْفَالٌ lock, padlock.

قَلَّ *impf. i* to be small, few.

IV to make small, take little of.

X to deem small, think little of, despise.

قَلِيلٌ small, few, scant.

قَلَبَ *impf. i* to turn round, to change.

VII to alter (intr.), to change one's mind.

قَلْبٌ *pl.* قُلُوبٌ heart.

قَلَعَ *VIII* to tear away, take away.

قَنَّصَ *impf. i* to hunt, catch.

قَنَّا *VIII* to procure, purchase.

قَادَ *med.* و to lead, guide.

VII to let one's self
be guided.

قَالَ *med.* و to say, tell;
often = ask. *c.* ل to
name.

قَوْلٌ *pl.* اقْوَالٌ speech,
utterance, apothegm.

مَقَالٌ speech.

قَامَ *med.* و to stand up,
proceed (to).

IV to fix, set up, estab-
lish; halt, stop, stay.

X to be upright, faith-
ful.

قَوْمٌ *coll.* people, one's
dependants, nation,
subjects.

قِيَامَةٌ resurrection.

قَوَائِمٌ *pl.* قَوَائِمٌ foot.

مَقَامٌ place, occasion.

قَوِيَ *impf.* ا to be strong.

قُوَّةٌ strength, force;

c. بِ the means to do
sthg.

قَوِيٌّ (*c.* عَلَى) strong,
powerful.

كَانَ (§§95*f*; 145*b* prop. subj.)
as, like as.

كَانَ (it is) as if . . .
كَبُرَ *impf.* u to be great, large.

V to vaunt oneself,
be proud.

كَبُرَ *inf.* I to be advanc-
ed in years.

كَبِيرٌ *elat.* أَكْبَرُ great,
old.

كَتَبَ *impf.* u to write.

III *c. acc.* to corre-
spond with.

كُتِبَ *pl.* كِتَابٌ a writ-
ing, scripture (= writ-
ten revelation), letter,
book.

كَتَمَ *impf.* u to conceal.

K

- ⁹ كَتَبَان *inf.* concealing, keeping close.
- كَثُرَ *to be much or many.*
IV to make many, take much of.
X to consider much or many.
- ⁹ أَكْثَرُ *elat.* كثير much, many (often rather as a subst. in apposition).
- كَذَبَ *impf. i* to lie, tell lies.
II c. acc. pers. vel rei to charge one with falsehood, discredit.
⁹ كَذِبَ *inf. I,* lying, a lie, falsehood.
- كَرَبَ *impf. u,* to cause one trouble, pain.
⁹ كُرْبَةٌ grief, distress, anxiety.
- ⁹ كُرْدُوسُ *pl.* كَرَادِيسُ division (of cavalry), squadron.
- كَرُمَ *impf. u* to be noble, generous.
- ⁹ كَرِيمَ *pl.* كَرَمَاءُ noble, high-souled, highly esteemed.
- ⁹ مَكْرَمَةٌ *pl.* مَكَارِمُ a noble quality, generous action.
- كَرِهَ *impf. a* to dislike.
- كَسَبَ *VIII* to acquire, to attain to sthg.
- كَسَفَ *impf. i* to eclipse.
- كَشَفَ *impf. i, c.* عَنْ to uncover.
- VII* to be uncovered, be carried off.
- ⁹ كَعْبٌ ankle-bone, a die (*pl.* dice).
- كَفَا *III c. acc. pers. et rei* to requite, recompense one for sthg.
- كَفَرَ *impf. u* to be unthankful, to deny.

- ⁹كَافِر *pl.* ⁹كُفَّار unbeliev-
ing.
⁹كَفَن *impf. u* to wrap in a
shroud.
⁹كَفَى *impf. i, c. acc. pers. et*
r. to do sthg. in some
one's place; to protect
s. o. from sthg.
⁹كُل (§ 119 b) totality; be-
fore determ. subst., all;
before indetermin., every.
⁹كَلَّمَا as often as . . .
⁹كَلِم *II c. acc. pers.* to
speak with, address one.
V to speak, talk, make
speeches. *c.* ⁹ب to pro-
nounce, utter.
⁹كَلِمَة word.
⁹كَلَام speech, talk, con-
versation.
⁹كَمْ (§ 15) how much?
⁹كَمَا (⁹ك + مَا) as.
⁹كَمِيل perfect.
- ⁹كَيِن *impf. a* to hide one's
self.
⁹كَنْز *pl.* ⁹كُنُوز treasure.
⁹كَنَا *impf. u* to give one a
surname contg. ⁹أَب.
⁹كَان *med.* ⁹و to be, exist.
 (Sometimes the perf. of
this verb is to be trans-
lated by our present).
c. acc. (§§ 110, 149) to
be something. *c.* ⁹ل to
be translated by "to
have".
⁹مَكَان *pl.* ⁹أَمَكِنَة place.
⁹كَيْف how?
⁹ل (§§ 95 g; 147 b) a corrobo-
rative particle.
⁹ل *prep.* (§§ 95 h; 117;
130; 131; 132) for; is
sign of the dative; on
account of, for . . . sake
(giving purpose, mo-
tive); at (the time of).
⁹ل *conj. c. subj.* (§ 100)

- in order that; *c. mod.*
apoc. § 101 *a.* لَآَنَّ (§ 147)
 because.
 لَا (§§ 101 *b*; 111; 150 *c*)
 not, no. بِلَا *prep. c. gen.*
 without. By means of
 لَا a preceding negation
 is very frequently re-
 sumed.
 وَلَٰكِنْ (often لَٰكِنْ) (often وَلَٰكِنْ)
 nevertheless, but.
 مَلَائِكَةٌ (also مَلَائِكُ) *pl.* ملائكة
 angel.
 لَيْتَ *impf. a* to tarry,
 delay.
 لَبَسَ *impf. a* to put on.
IV. c. 2 acc. to clothe.
 مَلَابِسٌ *pl.* ملابس clothing,
 dress.
 لَحِقَ *impf. a c.* ب or *c. acc.* to
 overtake.
 لَذِذْتُ, 1. *pers.* لَذِذْتُ, *impf. a*
 to be tasty, sweet.
 لَذِيذٌ *elat.* لَذِيذٌ tasty,
 delicious, sweet.
 لَزِمَ *impf. a, c. acc.* to
 remain in . . .
 لِسَانٌ *pl.* لِسَانٌ tongue.
 لَصِقَ *VIII* to cling to.
 لَطَفَ *impf. u* to be fine,
 slender, kind.
 لُطْفٌ *c.* بِ kindness,
 graciousness, towards...
 لَطِيفٌ kind.
 لَعِبَ *impf. a* to play, sport.
 لَعَلَّ (§ 147) may be, perhaps.
 لَعَنَ *impf. a* to curse.
 لَعْنَةٌ a curse.
 لَقِبَ *II c. acc. pers. et* بِ
 to surname, give a nick-
 name to.
 لَقِمَ *impf. a* to swallow,
 gulp down.
 لُقْمَةٌ a morsel.

لَقِيَ *impf. a* to meet, meet
with.

IV c. acc. to throw.

X to throw one's self,
to lie.

لَمْ (§ 101 c) not.

لَبَّأ *conj.* after, when.

لَوْ *part.* if, introduces a
condition, which is not
likely to be fulfilled.

لَامَ *med. و* to blame.

لَوْنٌ *pl.* لَوَانٌ colour, sort,
kind.

لَيْسَ (§§ 50; 110; 144) not
to be, to be non-exis-
tent.

لَيْلٌ *pl.* لَيَالٍ (§ 90 p)
night.

مَا *pron.* (§ 15) what?
(§ 14) that which, what,
somethg. that.

مَا *conj.* (§ 158 b) so
long as.

مَا not (cf. § 150).

مَارِبٌ Ma'rib, a town in
South Arabia.

مِثْلٌ resemblance, like-
ness; the like, same; one
(pers. or thing) like, cf.
§ 145 b.

مِثْلٌ resemblance, na-
ture, quality (of a thing).

مَحَنٌ *impf. a* to put to the
test.

مَحَنَةٌ *inf.*

مَدَائِنٌ, مَدَنٌ *pl.* مَدِينَةٌ
town. مَدِينَةٌ = أَلْمَدِينَةُ
الْمَدِينَةُ Medina.

مَرَّ *impf. u c.* بِ to pass by.
مَرَّةٌ "time". مَرَّةٌ once.

pl. مَرَارًا often.

مَرَارَةٌ bitterness.

أَمْرٌ (§ 90 e) man.

أَمْرَةٌ woman, wife.

- ^{مُرُوۡةٌ} manliness, virtue, manly virtue.
^{مَرَزَبَانٌ} *pl.* ^{مَرَاۡبِئَةٌ} *mar-* grave, prefect.
^{مَرَضٌ} *impf. a* to be or become sick.
^{مَرِيضٌ} sick.
^{مَرَّ} *V* to roll (in the dust).
^{مَرِيَمُ} Miriam, Mary.
^{مَسَحَ} *impf. a c.* ^{بِ} to wipe, wipe off, away.
^{الْمَسِيحُ} Christ, the Messiah.
^{مَسَكَ} *I* to take hold of, sieze.
^{مَسَا} *V* to hold on by sthg.
^{مَسَا} *IV* to enter on the eventide; to do something late.
^{مَشَى} *impf. i* to go, walk;
^{مَشَى} *inf.*
^{مَضَى} *impf. i* to go, betake one's self to.
^{مُضَى} (§ 71 *e*) *inf. I.*
^{مَطَرٌ} *pl.* ^{أَمْطَارٌ} rain, shower of rain.
^{مَطَّلَ} *impf. u* to defer (a payment).
^{مَطْلٌ} *inf.*
^{مَعَ} *prep.* with; besides; alongside of.
^{مِعْدَةٌ} stomach.
^{مَقَّتَ} *impf. u* to hate.
^{مَقْتٌ} hatred.
^{مَكَّةُ} Mecca.
^{مَكَثَ} *impf. u* to tarry, stay.
^{مَلَأَ} *impf. a, c. acc. et* ^{مِنْ} to fill sthg. with . . .
^{VIII} to become filled.
^{مَلَكَ} *impf. i, c. acc.* to rule, govern, possess.
^{II} to appoint as king.
^{مُلْكٌ} dominion, sovereignty, reign, riches.
^{مِلْكٌ} possessions, riches.

مَلِكٌ *pl.* مُلُوكٌ king. مِنْذُ (from مِنْ ذُو) since.

مِلَاكٌ ceremony of مَنَعَ *impf. a, c. 2 acc.* to debar one from sthg., refuse, prevent one doing

مَمْلَكَةٌ *pl.* مَمَالِكٌ king-
dom, sovereignty.
مَلَكَ for مَلَّأ *v.* under
لَأَن.

VIII to protect one's self.

مَنْ + مَنْ = مِّنْ (§ 5
note b).

مَهْرٌ *impf. a, c. ب* to be skilled, clever, expert, wellversed.

مَنْ who? (§ 15); he who, they that; one that, whoso, whoever (§§ 14, 154, 159).

مَهْرٌ wedding-present, price of the bride (paid to her father).

مِنْ *prep.* of (= some of, in partitive sense § 114), belonging to; with the negation it has a strengthening effect, § 141; consisting of; away from, from (separation, point of departure); hence in comparison = than; through (passage).

مَاتَ *med. و* to die.

II to put to death.

مَوْتُ *inf.* death.

مَيِّتٌ dead.

مُوسَى Moses.

مَالٌ *pl.* أَمْوَالٌ goods and chattels, property, flocks.

مَاءٌ (§ 90 q) *pl.* مِيَاءٌ

water.

مَائِدَةٌ *pl.* مَوَائِدُ table,

tray.

مَارَ *med.* ي *II c.* بَيْنَ to distinguish.

نَبَأٌ *II c. acc. pers. et rei* to give one information regarding.

V to give one's self out for a prophet.

نَبَّهَ *VIII* to awake up.

نَبِيٌّ *pl.* أَنْبِيَاءٌ *vel* نَبِيُّنَ prophet.

نُبُوَّةٌ the office, rank, of prophet.

نَجَدَ *impf. u* to be brave, courageous.

نَجْدَةٌ courage, magnanimity.

نَجْمٌ *pl.* نَجُومٌ constellation.

نَجَّاهُ *impf. u* to become free, to save one's self.

IV causative.

نَحْنُ *pron.* we.

نَحَا *V* to turn aside, to draw back, retire.

نَخْلٌ *coll., nom. unit.* نَخْلَةٌ palm.

نَدِمَ *impf. a, c.* عَلَى to repent of sthg., feel sorry.

نَدِمٌ *III* to be one's boon companion.

نَدِمَاءٌ *pl.* نَدِيمٌ boon companion, mess-mate.

نَدَا *III* call out, *c. acc.* to call to some one.

نَذَرَ *IV* to warn.

نَزَعَ *impf. i* to remove.

VIII to strip off, displace.

نَزَلَ *impf. i* to descend, alight, stop, lodge, encamp. *c.* عَلَى to alight at, lodge, stay with...

IV to send down (in

particular, a revelation).

⁹مَنْزِلٌ *pl.* مَنْازِلٌ dwell-
ing-place, abode, halt-
ing-place.

نَسَخَ *impf.* a to copy.

⁹نُسْخَةٌ *pl.* نُسُخٌ a copy.

نَسِيَ *impf.* a to forget.

⁹نَسِيَانٌ *inf.* forgetting.

نِسَاءٌ (§ 90 f) women.

نَشَدَ *III c. 2 acc.* to ad-
jure by God.

نَشَطَ *impf.* a to be lively,
in good spirits.

⁹نَشَاطٌ *inf.*

نَصَبَ *impf.* u to set up.

⁹نَصِيبٌ share, portion.

نَصَمَ *impf.* a to be a true
friend.

نَصَرَ *impf.* u, c. *acc.* to
help, succour.

V (denom.) to become

a Christian, to live as
a Christian.

⁹نَصْرَانِيٌّ *pl.* نَصَارَى
a Christian.

الْمَنْصُورُ al-Manṣūr,
the second Abbaside
Caliph 754—775.

نَضَا *VIII* to draw (the
sword).

نَطَمَ *impf.* a to butt with
the horns.

نَطَقَ *impf.* i to talk.

IV to make, compel
to talk.

نَظَرَ *impf.* u to see, look
at, examine, reflect.

نَعَمَ *impf.* a to be soft, well
off, affluent.

⁹نَعَمٌ *coll.* a herd of
camels.

⁹نَعِيمَةٌ affluence, welfare.

⁹نَعَمْ *part.* yes, yes in-
deed.

نَفَرَ *impf. u vel i c.* مِنْ to
flee from, avoid.

نَفَس *II* to cheer, relieve.

أَنْفَسَ *fem., pl.* نَفَسٌ,

نَفُوسٌ soul (anima appetens), self (§ 12e);

life. قَتَلَ نَفْسَ بَعْضٍ

نَفْسٍ the taking of a
life not for a life, i. e.
without a murder hav-
ing been committed.

نَفَعَ *impf. a* to be of use.

VIII c. بِ make use
of, profit by . . .

مَنْفَعَةٌ *pl.* مَنَافِعُ use,
useful qualities, benefit.

نَفَقَ *III* to play the hypo-
crite.

نَقَمَ *impf. i, c.* مِنْ *pers.*
to reproach one with
sthg.

VIII to avenge one's
self.

نَقِمَةٌ an act of revenge.

نَكَبَ *impf. u* to afflict,
hurt, injure.

نَكَبَةٌ affliction, trouble.

نَكَحَ *impf. i* to marry.

III id.

X id., to wish to marry.

نِكَاحُ أَلَمَّتْ marriage
with one's stepmother.

نَكَدَ *V* to be hard, strait,
troublesome.

نَكَرَ *IV* to deny. *c. acc. r.*

et عَلَى to find strange,
to take offence at sthg.

نَهَدَ *impf. u* to be fat, large.

نَهْدٌ large, aspiring,
generous.

نَهَرَ *pl.* أَنْهَارٌ stream.

نَهَى *impf. a* to forbid.

VIII to arrive at, come
to an end.

نُوحٌ Noah.

نَارٌ *fem. pl.* نيرانٌ fire, hell-fire.

نُورٌ light.

نَوْعٌ *pl.* أنواعٌ kind, species, different (sort of).

نَوَقْلٌ a man's name.

نَاقَةٌ *pl.* نوقٌ female camel.

نَامَ *med.* و, *impf. a* to lie down, sleep.

نَجَرَ *impf. u* to part from some one.

النَّجْرَةُ, هَجْرَةُ the removal of Muḥammed from Mecca to Medina.

أَلْهَدَهَادُ Hadhād, name of a king.

هَدَى *impf. i* to lead by the right way, to guide aright.

أَلْمَهْدِيُّ al-Mahdī, name of the third Abbasside Caliph, 775—785.

هَذَا, *fem.* هَذِهِ (§ 13 b), this, here.

هَرَبَ *impf. u* to flee.

هَرَمَ *impf. i* to put to flight. VII to turn and flee.

هَاشِمٌ Hāšim, man's name;

بَنُو هَاشِمٍ Muḥammed's clan.

هَلْ *part. interrog.*

هُمْ, هُمُ *pron. 3. pers. plur. msc.* they (§ 12 a).

هَمَّ *impf. u* to intend to do sthg.

هَيَّةٌ energy.

أَلْهِنْدُ India, the Hindus.

هُوَ *pron.* he.

هَارَ *med.* و, VII to collapse.

هَانَ *med.* و, to be easy.

X c. ب to despise.

هَوَانٌ insignificance.

هَوَى *impf. a, c. acc.* to fall in love with.

- هَوَاءَ *air, sky.*
- هي *pron. III fem. she.*
- وَ *conj. and, also, even.*
Asseverative particle
w. the genit.: وَاللَّهِ by
God (be it sworn). c.
acc. with (§ 112).
- وَثَنٌ *pl. أَوْثَانٌ an idol.*
- وَجَبَ *impf. i to be neces-*
sary; to be legally in-
cumbent on one.
IV to necessitate.
- مُوجِبٌ *vel مُوجِبَةٌ*
(part. act. IV) pl.
مُوجِبٌ that which
brings about sthg., occa-
sion, cause.
- وَجَدَ *impf. i to find.*
- وَجَّهَ *V to take the direc-*
tion of . . ., set out.
وَجْهٌ pl. وُجُوهُ face,
countenance.
- وَاحِدٌ *one, single.*
- وَحَى *IV c. إِلَى pers. to*
reveal to one, inspire.
- وَدَّ *impf. a to love.*
VI to love mutually.
- وَدَّعَ *impf. يَدَعُ to set, place,*
leave, let.
II to deposit.
- وَدَّعَى *IV c. acc. rei et إِلَى*
pers. to intrust sthg.
to some one.
- وَدِيعَةٌ *pl. وَدَائِعُ pro-*
perty given in trust, a
deposit (of money or
its equivalent).
- وَرِثَ *impf. يَرِثُ to inherit.*
VI to receive as one's
portion.
- وَارِثٌ *heir.*
- وَرَدَ *impf. i to go down,*
arrive.
- وَرَقَّةٌ *Waraka, man's name.*

⁹ وَزِير *pl.* وَزَرَء vizier, minister.

وَسِمَ *impf. a* to be dirty.

وَسَمَ *inf.*

وَسَعَ *impf. يَسَعُ* to be possible, be open (to one).

IV to bring one into a comfortable position; to get riches for s. o.

وَسَنَ *impf. a* to be sleepy.

وَصَفَ *impf. i* to describe.

صَفَةً description.

وَصَلَ *impf. i* to connect, arrive at.

VI to be mutually attached to each other.

وَصَّى *IV* to bequeath by will.

وَصِيّ executor (of a will).

وَضَعَ *impf. يَضَعُ* to lay.

VI c. لِي to be humble,

to appear humbly before . . .

VIII to be humbled, powerless.

وَضِيعٌ low, ignoble, mean.

مَوَاضِعُ *pl.* مَوْضِع place, position, dwelling-place.

وَعَدَ *impf. i* to make an agreement, promise.

VIII to accept a promise, to promise one another.

مِيعَادٌ rendezvous, appointed time.

وَعَظَ *impf. i* to warn, exhort.

VIII to suffer oneself to be corrected.

وَعَاءٌ *pl.* وَعِيَةٌ vessel, receptacle.

وَقَدَ *impf. i* to go forth

to a prince. *c.* عَلَى to come to.

وَفَّقَ *III c. acc.* to agree with, correspond to.

وَفَّى *impf. i* to be complete.

III c. acc. to come to, arrive at.

وَفَّاهُ اللَّهُ تَوَفَّى God has taken him (the Moslem) to himself, has brought him to a blessed end. *Pass.* to die a blessed death.

وَفَّاهُ dying; a blessed end.

وَقْتُ time.

وَقَعَ *impf. يَقَعُ* to fall, fall upon, light upon; *c.* عَلَى to find some one.

IV to excite.

وَقَفَ *impf. i* to stop, stand;

c. عَلَى to go up to one.

وَقَى *V c. acc.* to beware, be afraid, of sthg.

VIII to be afraid.

وَكَّلَ *II* to appoint as overseer. *V* to trust (in).

وَكِيلٌ representative, vice-gerent, agent.

وَكَّدَ *impf. i* to bring forth.

IV c. acc. to beget.

X c. acc. to beget (a son) by a woman.

وَلَدٌ *pl. أَوْلَادٌ* child, son, lad. (In the sing. also *collect.*).

وَلِيمَةٌ feast, marriage feast.

وَلَّى *impf. i, c. acc.* to be near.

II to turn one's back, to turn round; *c.* عَنْ to turn away from.

وَلِيٌّ *pl. أَوْلِيَاءُ* near; esp. 'near to God' = saint, helper.

مَوْلَى *pl. مَوَالٍ* client, slave.

وَهَبَ *impf.* يَهَبُ *c. 2 acc.*
to present some one
with sthg.).

يَا *part. of exclam.* (§ 85)

O!

يَسَّ *impf. a, c.* مِنْ to
despair of . . .

يَتِيمٌ *pl.* أَيَتَامٌ orphan.

يَثْرِبُ Yatrib, name of Me-
dina before Islam.

يَدٌ *fem., pl.* أَيَدٍ (§ 90 r)
hand, power, possession.

يَسَّرَ *impf. i* to play (either
with arrows, by wh. lots
were cast, or with dice).

مَيْسَرٌ play, game, game
of chance.

يَقِظُ *impf. a* to be awake.

IV to wake.

X to have one's self
waked, to awake.

يَمِينٌ on the right, the
right side, right hand.

أَلْيَهُودُ *coll.* the Jews.

يُوسُفُ Joseph.

يَوْمٌ *pl.* أَيَّامٌ (§ 90 s) day,
pl. length of reign. يَوْمَ
on the day that... (§ 129).

يَوْمًا one day; *with suff.*

e. g. يَوْمَكَ thy day
(§ 125). أَلْيَوْمَ (§ 118 a)

to-day. يَوْمَئِذٍ (= يَوْمَ

إِذٍ) in that day, then.

يُونَانِيٌّ a Greek.

CORRIGENDA.

pp. 56, 57 for headings as printed read: § 65 Nomina Relativ

§ 66 Nomina Deminutiva.

p. 68 heading read: § 78 Nom. Diptota.

p. 93 l. 4, for 'you' read 'them'.

p. 40* 4, read وَمُنْذِرِينَ.

p. 42*, 7 read بِأَيْ.

p. 42*, 15 read صِرَتْ.

p. 54*, 2 read أَرْسَطَاطَالَيْسُ.

p. 55*, 7 read أَمْرَتَهُمْ.

Verlag von Reuther & Reichard in Berlin W. 9.

PORTA LINGUARUM ORIENTALIU

SAMMLUNG VON LEHRBÜCHERN

FÜR DAS

STUDIUM DER ORIENTALISCHEN SPRACHEN

VON

C. Brockelmann (*Königsberg*), R. Brünnow (*Vevey*), Fr. Delitzsch (*Berlin*), Ad. Erman (*Berlin*), A. Fischer (*Leipzig*), K. Marti (*Bern*), Ad. Merx (*Heidelberg*), † A. Müller (*Halle*), Th. Noeldeke (*Strassburg*), † J. H. Petermann (*Berlin*), F. Prätorius (*Halle*), C. Salemann (*St. Petersburg*), † V. Shukovski (*St. Petersburg*), † A. Socin (*Leipzig*), G. Steindorff (*Leipzig*), C. Steuernagel (*Halle*), H. Zimmern (*Leipzig*) u. A.

Die *Porta linguarum orientalium*, unter Mitwirkung der hervorragendsten Fachmänner herausgegeben, ist bestimmt als

Hilfsmittel für das Studium der orientalischen Sprachen

zunächst die erste Einführung in dasselbe zu vermitteln, und zwar unter gleichzeitiger Rücksichtnahme auf den Gebrauch bei akademischen Vorlesungen sowie auf das Selbststudium.

Grammatiken. Die Grammatiken bieten den besonderen Vorzug, daß sie dem Anfänger alles zur Kenntnis der einzelnen Sprache Erforderliche in einem Buche bieten, nämlich:

1. Eine kurze, aber vollständige *Grammatik*, in welcher, soweit tunlich, für die verschiedenen Sprachen ein gleicher Lehrgang befolgt und, bei den semitischen Sprachen, auf Übereinstimmung und Abweichung hingewiesen wird. In den neueren Bänden ist die *Syntax* berücksichtigt.

2. Eine *Chrestomathie*. Zur Sprachvergleichung und um eine sonst nötige versio interlinearis zu vermeiden sind in einigen

älteren Teilen der Sammlung die vier ersten Kapitel der Genesis nach den alten Übersetzungen an den Anfang gestellt, während in den neueren Teilen Leseübungen und aus einzelnen Formen bestehende Übungsstücke der eigentlichen Chrestomathie vorangeschickt sind.

3. Ein *Wörterbuch*, welches die in der Grammatik und im Übungsbuche vorkommenden Wörter erklärt.

4. Eine kurze Übersicht über die *Literatur*, welche, sorgfältig zusammengestellt, Anregung zu tiefer eindringender Arbeit gibt.

Chrestomathieen und Glossare. Wo das Bedürfnis vorliegt, bringt die Porta auch für sich abgeschlossene *Chrestomathieen* und umfangreichere *Wörterverzeichnisse*.

Bis jetzt weist die Porta folgende Bände auf:

Vergleichende Grammatik: Vergleichende Grammatik der semi-

tischen Sprachen. Elemente der Laut- und Formenlehre von *H. Zimmern*. Mit einer Schrifttafel von *J. Euting*. (XVII) 1898. M. 5.50, geb. M. 6.30.

Arabisch: Arabische Grammatik, Paradigmen, Literatur, Chrestomathie und Glossar von *A. Socin*. (IVa.) Fünfte Auflage bearbeitet von *C. Brockelmann*. 1904. M. 7.—, geb. M. 7.80.

■ Schlüssel zum Übersetzen der in der Grammatik enthaltenen deutschen Übungsstücke. M. 1.50.

Arabic Grammar, Paradigms, Literature, Chrestomathy and Glossary by *A. Socin*. Second ed. (IVb.) 1895. M. 8.—.

■ Key to the translation of the English Exercises in the Grammar of *A. Socin*. 1899. M. 1.50.

Arabische (Prosa-)Chrestomathie mit Glossar von *R. Brünnow*. (XVI.) [Zweite, neubearbeitete Auflage von *A. Fischer* in Vorbereitung].

Delectus veterum carminum arabicorum, carmina selegit et edidit *Th. Noeldeke*, Glossarium confecit *A. Mueller*. (XIII.) 1890. M. 7.—, geb. M. 7.80.

Arabische Bibel-Chrestomathie, herausgegeben und mit einem Glossar versehen von *Georg Jacob*. (IX.) [Fehlt z. Z.]

Aethiopisch: Grammatica aethiopica cum Paradigm., Litteratura, Chrestomathia et Glossario scripsit *Frans Prætorius*. (VIIb.) 1886. M. 6.—, geb. M. 6.80. [Die deutsche Ausgabe fehlt z. Z.]

Hebräisch: Hebräische Grammatik mit Paradigmen, Literatur, Übungsstücken und Wörterverzeichnissen von *C. Steuernagel*. (I.) Zweite, vielfach verbesserte Auflage 1906. M. 3.50, geb. M. 4.—.

Als Ergänzung hierzu:

Methodische Anleitung zum hebräischen Sprachunterricht.

Im Anschluß an des Verfassers Hebräische Grammatik von *C. Steuernagel*. M. 1.—.

Samaritanisch: Grammatica samaritana, Litteratura, Chrestomathia cum Glossario edidit *J. H. Petermann*. (Vol. III.) M. 4.—, geb. M. 4.80.

Verlag von Reuther & Reichard in Berlin W. 9.

Aramäisch (Chaldäisch): *Grammatica chaldaica, Litteratura, Chrestomathia cum Glossario* edidit *J. H. Petermann*. Editio secunda emendata. (II.) M. 4.—, geb. M. 4.80.

Kurzgefasste Grammatik der biblisch-aramäischen Sprache, Literatur, Paradigmen, kritisch berichtigte Texte und Glossar von *K. Marti*. (XVIII.) 1896. M. 3.80, geb. M. 4.40.

Targumisch: Chrestomathia targumica edidit adnotat. critica et glossario instruxit *Ad. Merz*. (VIII.) 1888. M. 7.80, geb. M. 8.30.

Syrisch: Syrische Grammatik mit Literatur, Chrestomathie und Glossar von *C. Brockelmann*. (V.) Zweite, vermehrte und verbesserte Auflage. 1905. M. 8.—, geb. M. 8.80.

Assyrisch: Assyrische Grammatik mit Paradigmen, Übungsstücken Glossar und Literatur von *Friedr. Delitzsch*. (Xa.) 1889. [Vergriffen, neue Auflage im Druck.]

Assyrian Grammar with Paradigms, Chrestomathy, Glossary and Literature by *Friedr. Delitzsch*. (Xb.) 1889. M. 8.—.

Aegyptisch: Aegyptische Grammatik mit Schrifttafel, Literatur, Lese-
stücken und Wörterverzeichnis von *Ad. Erman*. (XV.) Zweite, ver-
besserte Auflage. 1902. M. 16.—, geb. M. 18.80.

Aegyptische Chrestomathie zum Gebrauch auf Universitäten und
zum Selbstunterricht von *Ad. Erman*. (XIX.) 1904. M. 12.50,
geb. M. 13.30.

Aegyptisches Glossar. Die häufigeren Worte der aegypt. Sprache
zusammengestellt von *Ad. Erman*. (XX.) M. 13.—, geb. M. 14.—.

Bei gleichzeitiger Abnahme beider Bände (XIX und XX zusammen) M. 23.—, geb. (2 Bde.) M. 24.80.

Koptisch: Koptische Grammatik mit Chrestomathie, Wörterverzeichnis
und Literatur von *G. Steindorff*. (XIV.) Zweite, gänzlich um-
gearbeitete Auflage. 1904. M. 14.—, geb. M. 14.80.

Chrestomathie Koptischer Dialekte von *G. Steindorff*. (XXI.)
[In Vorbereitung.]

Koptisches Glossar von *G. Steindorff*. (XXII.) [In Vorbereitung.]

Armenisch: Grammatica armeniaca, Litteratura, Chrestomathia cum
Glossario edidit *J. H. Petermann*. (VI.) M. 4.—, geb. M. 4.80.

Persisch: Persische Grammatik mit Paradigmen, Literatur, Chresto-
mathie und Glossar von *C. Salemann* und *V. Shukovski* (XII.) 1889.
M. 7.—, geb. M. 7.80.

Türkisch: Türkische Grammatik mit Paradigmen, Literatur, Chresto-
mathie und Glossar von *August Müller*. (XI.) 1889. M. 8.—, geb. M. 8.80.

Das wichtige Unternehmen sei hiermit Allen, welche für Sprachen und Literatur des Orients ein Interesse haben, an-
gelegentlichst empfohlen. Anträge auf Erweiterung der Samm-
lung werden von der Verlagsbuchhandlung stets gern entgegen-
genommen und in reiflichste Erwägung gezogen.

Verlag von Reuther & Reichard in Berlin W. 9.

Lexicon Syriacum

auctore

Carolo Brockelmann

praefatus est

Th. Nöldeke.

Lex. 8°. VIII, 512 Seiten. Mk. 28.—, in solid. Halbfranzband Mk. 30.—.

Urteile:

„Mit der ganzen Anordnung und Methode des Lex. kann man sich durchaus einverstanden erklären. Es ist nur ein Vorteil hinsichtlich der Übersichtlichkeit, dass alle Eigennamen und alle fremdsprachigen Elemente, die in der Lit. ausdrücklich als solche erscheinen, ausgeschieden sind. Ebenso ist es zu billigen, dass die abgeleiteten Formen, die nicht den Wert eines selbständigen Worts haben, unter Hinweis auf die in Betracht kommenden §§ der Grammatik Nöldekes nicht besonders aufgeführt werden. Andererseits ist es sehr dankenswert, dass durch reichliche Verweise bei jedem Worte auf alles das aufmerksam gemacht wird, was massgebende Fachgelehrte zu seiner Erklärung oder Ableitung mitgeteilt haben, so dass man jederzeit die Möglichkeit hat, sich leicht das gesamte Material zu vergegenwärtigen. Auch die Ausstattung ist lobenswert etc. etc.“

[Prof. Dr. V. Ryssel im Lit. Zentralbl.]

„It was, therefore, left to a zealous student like Dr. Br. to fill a lacuna which has long been distinctly felt, and he has acquitted himself in his task in a fashion that should earn him the thanks of everybody interested in this branch of philology etc.“

[Languages Aug. 96.]

Die Herren Dozenten des Syrischen erhalten das Werk für ihre Hörer bei Bestellung von mindestens 3 Exx. zum Preise von 3 Mk. 22.— gebunden. Derartige Bestellungen müssen aber direkt an uns gerichtet werden mit Angabe der Buchhandlung, durch welche die Exx. geliefert werden sollen. Trotz des in Anbetracht des Umfanges mässigen Preises glauben wir durch diese Vergünstigung vielen Wünschen studentischer Kreise zu entsprechen.

Homonyme Wurzeln im Syrischen

Ein Beitrag zur semitischen Lexikographie

von

Friedrich Schulthess.

1900. Gr. 8°. XII, 104 Seiten. Mk. 4.—.

Herr Prof. Th. Nöldeke schliesst seine Anzeige in der Z. d. Deutschen Morgenl. Gesellsch. LIV. Heft 1 mit folgenden Worten: „— ich fürchte, dieser Artikel über ein Buch, das, abgesehen von den Indices, noch nicht 100 Seiten zählt, ist schon unverhältnismässig lang geworden.“ Freilich ist der Inhalt sehr reich, und ich muss den Wunsch aussprechen, dass die wertvolle Arbeit von denen, die sich mit semitischer Sprachvergleichung ernstlich abgeben, recht sorgfältig studiert werden möge.“

*) Über 11 Seiten [D. V.]



17413-

1.50

1.50

1.50

1.50

1.50

1.50

1.50

1.50

1.50

Stanford University Libraries



3 6105 119 708 076

